

Center of Computer

Researches



Ghaemiyeh

Isfahan



WWW. Ghaemiyeh.com
WWW. Ghaemiyeh.org
WWW. Ghaemiyeh.net
WWW. Ghaemiyeh.ir

*An Enlightening Commentary
into*

The Holy Qur'an

13

Compiled by:

*Ayatullah Sayyid Kamal Fakhir Imam
and
A Group of Muslim Scholars*

IMAM ALI Islamic Research Center

Isfahan IRAN

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

An Enlightening Commentary into the Light of the Holy Quran Compiler

:Writer

Sayyid Kamal Faghih Imani

:Published in print

Amir-ul-Mu'mineen Ali (as) Public Library

:Digital Publisher

Ghaemiyeh center of computerized researches

Contents

Δ	Contents
۱۸	An Enlightening Commentary into the Light of the Holy Quran Compiler Cover ۱۳
۱۸	Book ID
۱۸	Point
۲۱	Table of Contents
۴۴	Introduction
۴۵	Transliteration of Arabic Letters
۴۶	(Part ۲۰, Sura An-Naml (The Ant
۴۶	Point
۴۶	:The Feature of the Sura
۴۷	:The Virtue of the Sura
۴۸	Section ۱: Moses Commissioned with Apostleship
۴۸	Point
۴۹	Commentary, verses: ۱-۳
۵۲	Commentary, verses: ۴-۵
۵۲	Point
۵۴	some traditions upon Losers
۵۶	Commentary, verse: ۶
۵۶	Point
۵۷	:Note
۵۹	Commentary, verses: ۷-۹
۶۳	Commentary, verses: ۱۰-۱۱
۶۶	Commentary, verses: ۱۲-۱۳
۷۰	Commentary, verse: ۱۴

73	Section 2: Solomon inherits from David
73	Point
73	Commentary,verse: 15
77	Commentary,verse: 16
77	Point
81	.some points
91	Commentary,verse: 17
94	Commentary,verse: 18
96	Commentary,verse: 19
98	Commentary,verses: 20-22
103	Commentary,verses: 23-24
105	Commentary,verses: 25-26
109	Commentary,verses: 27-28
111	Commentary,verses: 29-31
114	Section 3:Solomon and the Queen of Sheba
114	Point
114	Commentary,verses: 32-33
116	Commentary,verse: 34
117	Commentary,verse: 35
117	Point
118	.some points on Letter Writing
120	Commentary,verses: 36-37
120	Point
123	.some points
125	Commentary,verses: 38-39
128	Commentary,verse: 40

۱۲۸	Point
۱۳۱	.some points
۱۳۴	(The Virtues of Amir-ul-Mu'mineen and Ahl-ul-Bayt (a.s
۱۳۶	Commentary,verse: ۴۱
۱۳۸	Commentary,verses: ۴۲-۴۳
۱۴۰	Commentary,verse: ۴۴
۱۴۵	Section ۴: Saleh and Lot
۱۴۵	Point
۱۴۵	Commentary,verses: ۴۵-۴۶
۱۴۹	Commentary,verse: ۴۷
۱۴۹	Point
۱۵۱	.some traditions Upon Bad Omen
۱۵۲	Commentary,verse: ۴۸
۱۵۴	Commentary,verse: ۴۹
۱۵۶	Commentary,verses: ۵۰-۵۱
۱۵۹	Commentary,verses: ۵۲-۵۳
۱۶۱	Commentary,verses: ۵۴-۵۵
۱۶۴	Commentary,verse: ۵۶
۱۶۶	Commentary,verses: ۵۷-۵۸
۱۶۸	Section ۵: Allah's Chosen Servants
۱۶۸	Point
۱۶۸	Commentary,verse: ۵۹
۱۷۰	Commentary, verse: ۶۰
۱۷۳	Commentary, verses: ۶۱-۶۲
۱۷۹	Commentary, verse: ۶۳
۱۸۱	Commentary, verse: ۶۴

١٨٣	.....	Commentary, verses: ٦٥-٦٦
١٨٦	.....	Section ٦: The Resurrection, Sure
١٨٦	.....	Point
١٨٦	.....	Commentary, verses: ٦٧-٦٨
١٨٨	.....	Commentary, verses: ٦٩-٧٠
١٩٠	.....	Commentary, verse: ٧١-٧٤
١٩٣	.....	Commentary, verse: ٧٥
١٩٥	.....	Commentary, verses: ٧٦-٧٧
١٩٨	.....	Commentary, verses: ٧٨-٧٩
٢٠٠	.....	Commentary, verses: ٨٠-٨١
٢٠٥	.....	Commentary, verse: ٨٢
٢١٢	.....	Section ٧: The coming of the Day of Judgment
٢١٢	.....	Point
٢١٢	.....	Commentary, verses: ٨٣-٨٤
٢١٢	.....	Point
٢١٧	.....	A Few Traditions as Examples
٢٢٠	.....	Commentary, verse: ٨٥
٢٢١	.....	Commentary, verse: ٨٦
٢٢٦	.....	Commentary, verse: ٨٧
٢٢٩	.....	Commentary, verse: ٨٨
٢٣٣	.....	Commentary, verses: ٨٩-٩٠
٢٣٧	.....	Commentary, verse: ٩١
٢٣٩	.....	Commentary, verse: ٩٢
٢٤١	.....	Commentary, verse: ٩٣
٢٤٥	.....	(Sura Al-Qaṣaṣ (The Narratives
٢٤٥	.....	Point

٢٤٥	.....	Section ١: The Narrative of Moses
٢٤٥	.....	Point
٢٤٦	.....	Commentary, verses: ١-٣
٢٤٩	.....	Commentary, verse: ٤
٢٤٩	.....	Point
٢٥٣	.....	Pharaoh ordered his men to kill the boys
٢٥٤	.....	Commentary, verses: ٥-٦
٢٥٤	.....	Point
٢٥٨	.....	:(some traditions Upon the Advent of Mahdī (a.s
٢٥٨	.....	Point
٢٥٩	.....	Traditions about Raj'at
٢٦٢	.....	?Who The Oppressed and Oppressors Are
٢٦٣	.....	Kinds of Mustad'af
٢٦٤	.....	:The General Style of All Oppressors
٢٦٦	.....	Commentary, verse: ٧
٢٦٦	.....	Moses' mother cost him into the River
٢٦٨	.....	The midwife does not inform the birth of Moses
٢٦٩	.....	The carpenter could not inform the informers
٢٧١	.....	Pharaoh had only a daughter
٢٧٢	.....	Commentary, verse: ٨
٢٧٤	.....	Commentary, verse: ٩
٢٧٤	.....	The event of Pharaoh's daughter
٢٧٧	.....	Commentary, verses: ١٠-١١
٢٧٧	.....	Point
٢٧٩	.....	Moses sister watched the affairs from a distance
٢٨٠	.....	Commentary, verse: ١٢

٢٨٣ Commentary, verse: ١٣

٢٨٥ Section ٢: Moses saved by Allah from being murdered

٢٨٥ Point

٢٨٥ Commentary, verse: ١٤

٢٨٧ Commentary, verse: ١٥

٢٩٠ Commentary, verse: ١٦

٢٩٣ Commentary, verse: ١٧

٢٩٣ As a gratitude to Allah, Moses helped the oppressed

٢٩٨ Commentary, verse: ١٨

٣٠٠ Commentary, verse: ١٩

٣٠٠ Moses had killed the Coptic man for the help of the Israelite man

٣٠٢ Commentary, verses: ٢٠-٢١

٣٠٢ The believer of the people of Pharaoh helped Moses

٣٠٥ Section ٣: Moses weds Laban's daughter

٣٠٥ Point

٣٠٥ Commentary, verse: ٢٢

٣٠٥ Moses stored to go toward Madyan

٣٠٧ Commentary, verses: ٢٣-٢٤

٣٠٧ Point

٣٠٨ Moses consumed the plants of the desert

٣١٠ He left the castle of Pharaoh for his home

٣١٣ Commentary, verse: ٢٥

٣١٣ A woman must ply outside of the house with modesty

٣١٤ Commentary, verse: ٢٦

٣١٤ Point

٣١٧ The girl found Moses' strength when he put the shepherd aside

٣١٨	.....	Commentary, verse: ٢٧
٣١٨	.....	Point
٣١٩	.....	..some points
٣٢٧	.....	The Importance of Marriage
٣٢٨	.....	Choosing a Spouse
٣٣٠	.....	Commentary, verse: ٢٨
٣٣٢	.....	Section ٤: Moses Commissioned with Apostleship
٣٣٢	.....	Point
٣٣٢	.....	Commentary, verse: ٢٩
٣٣٢	.....	Point
٣٣٣	.....	Moses spent ten years in strangerhood
٣٣٤	.....	Commentary, verse: ٣٠
٣٣٤	.....	Allah speaks with Moses through a tree
٣٣٨	.....	Commentary, verse: ٣١
٣٣٨	.....	Moses saw the different shapes of the snake
٣٤٠	.....	Commentary, verses: ٣٢-٣٣
٣٤٠	.....	Moses was ordered to draw his arm to himself
٣٤٣	.....	Commentary, verses: ٣٤-٣٥
٣٤٣	.....	Moses confessed the virtue of his brother
٣٤٥	.....	Commentary, verse: ٣٦
٣٤٥	.....	Moses informed Aaron of his prophecy
٣٤٧	.....	Commentary, verse: ٣٧
٣٤٧	.....	Moses reported the failure of the unjust
٣٤٩	.....	Commentary, verse: ٣٨
٣٤٩	.....	The news of Moses' victory spread in Egypt
٣٥٢	.....	Commentary, verse: ٣٩

۳۵۳	..... ?How can a man claim divinity
۳۵۴	..... Commentary, verse: ۴۰
۳۵۵	..... Commentary, verses: ۴۱-۴۲
۳۵۵	..... 'The leaders are divided into two groups: the leaders of 'light' and the leaders of 'Fire
۳۵۹	..... Section ۵: Moses' Mission Referred to
۳۵۹	..... Point
۳۵۹	..... Commentary, verse: ۴۳
۳۵۹	..... Allah gave torah to Moses after their destruction
۳۶۱	..... Commentary, verse: ۴۴
۳۶۱	..... The Qur'an informs of the future events
۳۶۳	..... Commentary, verse: ۴۵
۳۶۵	..... Commentary, verse: ۴۶
۳۶۵	..... (The earth always contains the godly Hujjat (proof
۳۶۷	..... Commentary, verse: ۴۷
۳۶۷	..... Allah punishes no nation before sending a prophet for them
۳۶۹	..... Commentary, verse: ۴۸
۳۶۹	..... Moses' two miracles: Rod and white hand
۳۷۱	..... Commentary, verse: ۴۹
۳۷۲	..... Commentary, verse: ۵۰
۳۷۲	..... Man should be on the line of Divine guidance
۳۷۴	..... Section ۶: Guidance from Allah had been continuous
۳۷۴	..... Point
۳۷۴	..... Commentary, verse: ۵۱
۳۷۷	..... Occasion of Revelation and Commentary: verse ۵۲
۳۷۷	..... Some Christians came to the Prophet and believed
۳۷۹	..... Commentary, verses: ۵۳-۵۴

- ٣٧٩ They were expecting the Prophet of Islam
- ٣٨٢ Commentary, verse: ٥٥
- ٣٨٤ Commentary, verse: ٥٦
- ٣٨٤ Point
- ٣٨٧ Some evidences upon the belief of Abūtālib
- ٣٨٩ Commentary, verse: ٥٧
- ٣٩١ Commentary, verse: ٥٨
- ٣٩٣ Commentary, verse: ٥٩
- ٣٩٣ Point
- ٣٩٤ The news of the raise of the Prophet of Islam spread in Arabia peninsula in a short time
- ٣٩٥ Commentary, verse: ٦٠
- ٣٩٧ Section ٧: Unity of Allah
- ٣٩٧ Point
- ٣٩٧ Commentary, verse: ٦١
- ٣٩٧ Point
- ٣٩٨ Divine lasting merits are preferable to fleeting joys
- ٤٠٠ Commentary, verses: ٦٢-٦٤
- ٤٠٠ Point
- ٤٠٢ In Hereafter, every sinful person try to put his own sin on another's shoulder
- ٤٠٤ Commentary, verses: ٦٥-٦٧
- ٤٠٤ Point
- ٤٠٥ Pagans will have no answer but an absolute silence
- ٤٠٧ Commentary, verses: ٦٨-٧٠
- ٤٠٧ Point
- ٤٠٨ The authority of all things depends on His providence
- ٤١٠ He is the Judge in both words

- ٤١٢ Commentary, verse: ٧١
- ٤١٤ Commentary, verse: ٧٢
- ٤١٤ Only Allah is eligible for being worshipped
- ٤١٥ Commentary, verse: ٧٣
- ٤١٧ Commentary, verse: ٧٤
- ٤١٨ Commentary, verse: ٧٥
- ٤١٨ Point
- ٤١٩ In Hereafter there will remain but the truth
- ٤٢٠ Section ٨: Korah's (Qārūn) Ruin
- ٤٢٠ Point
- ٤٢٠ Commentary, verse: ٧٦
- ٤٢٠ Point
- ٤٢١ Korah was a close relative of Moses
- ٤٢١ His wealth was the cause of his disobedience
- ٤٢٣ Allah does not like the proud exultant
- ٤٢٤ Commentary, verse: ٧٧
- ٤٢٤ Point
- ٤٢٧ Not the totality of bounties belong to us
- ٤٣٠ Commentary, verse: ٧٨
- ٤٣٠ Point
- ٤٣١ Korah said he knew what to do better than others
- ٤٣٥ Commentary, verse: ٧٩
- ٤٣٥ Korah was an example of this quality
- ٤٣٧ Commentary, verse: ٨٠
- ٤٣٩ Commentary, verse: ٨١
- ٤٤٢ Commentary, verse: ٨٢

۴۴۳	Point
۴۴۴	some points
۴۴۹	Section ۹: The Apostle (Muhammad) Promised triumph
۴۴۹	Point
۴۴۹	Commentary, verse: ۸۳
۴۵۳	Commentary, verse: ۸۴
۴۵۵	The Occasion of Revelation of verse ۸۴
۴۵۶	Commentary, verse: ۸۵
۴۶۰	Commentary, verse: ۸۶
۴۶۲	Commentary, verse: ۸۷
۴۶۴	Commentary, verse: ۸۸
۴۷۰	(Sura Al-‘Ankabūt (The Spider
۴۷۰	Point
۴۷۰	The Virtue of Sura ‘Ankabūt
۴۷۱	Section ۱: Every soul shall be tried
۴۷۱	Point
۴۷۲	The Occasion of Revelation and Commentary: verses ۱-۳
۴۷۸	Commentary, verses: ۴-۵
۴۸۱	Commentary, verse: ۶
۴۸۳	Commentary, verse: ۷
۴۸۵	The Occasion of Revelation: verse ۸
۴۸۵	Commentary, verse: ۸
۴۸۵	Point
۴۸۹	Some Other Traditions
۴۹۱	Commentary, verse: ۹
۴۹۲	Commentary, verse: ۱۰

٤٩٥ Commentary, verse: ١١

٤٩٦ Commentary, verse: ١٢

٤٩٨ Commentary, verse: ١٣

٥٠٤ Section ٢: Noah and Abraham's Mission

٥٠٤ Point

٥٠٤ Commentary, verses: ١٤-١٥

٥٠٨ Commentary, verse: ١٦

٥٠٩ Commentary, verse: ١٧

٥١٢ Commentary, verse: ١٨

٥١٣ Commentary, verse: ١٩

٥١٥ Commentary, verse: ٢٠

٥١٨ Commentary, verses: ٢١-٢٢

٥٢١ Section ٣: Abraham and Lot

٥٢١ Point

٥٢١ Commentary, verse: ٢٣

٥٢٣ Commentary, verse: ٢٤

٥٢٥ Commentary, verse: ٢٥

٥٢٨ Commentary, verse: ٢٦

٥٣٠ Commentary, verse: ٢٧

٥٣٥ Commentary, verses: ٢٨-٣٠

٥٣٥ Point

٥٤٠ :some traditions upon Sodomy and its Punishment

٥٤١ Section ٤: The Mission of Abraham, Lot, Shu'ayb and Moses

٥٤١ Point

٥٤١ Commentary, verse: ٣١

٥٤٢ Commentary, verses: ٣٢

۵۴۶	.....	Commentary, verse: ۳۳
۵۴۹	.....	Commentary, verses: ۳۴-۳۵
۵۵۱	.....	Commentary, verse: ۳۶
۵۵۳	.....	Commentary, verse: ۳۷
۵۵۴	.....	Commentary, verse: ۳۸
۵۵۶	.....	Commentary, verse: ۳۹
۵۵۸	.....	Commentary, verse: ۴۰
۵۶۱	.....	Commentary, verse: ۴۱
۵۶۵	.....	Commentary, verses: ۴۲-۴۳
۵۶۷	.....	Commentary, verse: ۴۴
۵۶۹	.....	REFERENCES
۵۷۵	.....	Index
۶۲۷	.....	A Presentation to Muslims
۶۳۲	.....	The Rank and Importance of the Qur'ān
۶۳۵	.....	Imam Mahdi (a.s
۶۴۴	.....	About center

An Enlightening Commentary into the Light of the Holy Quran Compiler Cover ۱۳

Book ID

All rights reserved by the Amir-ul-Mu'mineen Ali (a.s.) Library

Title: An Enlightening Commentary into the Light of the Holy Quran Compiler. A Group
"of Muslin Scholars and Copyright ۱۹۹۸ Kamal Faghih Imani

ISBN: ۹۶۴-۵۶۹۱-۴۵-۱

Translator: Mr. Sayyid Abbas Şadr-Sameli Editor: Ms. Celeste Smith Published by: The
Scientific and Religious Research Center

Amir-ul-Mu'mineen Ali (as) Public Library, under the direction of

Ayatullah Allamah Mujahid Al-Haj Sayyid Kamal Faghih Imāni. Address: Shekar
Shekan Crossroads, Ahmadabad Street, Post Office Box ۸۱۴۶۵/۵۱۵۱

Esfahan, Islamic Republic of Iran, Telephone: ۲۲۸۱۰۰۰ , ۲۲۸۲۰۰۰, ۲۲۹۶۴۷۸ Far ۹۸ - ۳۱۱ -
۲۲۹۷۰۲۸

Number of copies in this Print: ۶,۰۰۰

.First Edition: ۱۹۹۷ A.D., ۱۳۷۵ / ۱۴۱۷ A.H

.Second Edition: ۱۹۹۸ A.D., ۱۳۷۶ / ۱۴۱۸ A.H

.Third Edition: ۱۹۹۸ A.D., ۱۳۷۷ / ۱۴۱۹ A.H

.Fourth Edition: ۱۹۹۹ A.D., ۱۳۷۸ / ۱۴۲۰ A.H

.Fifth Edition : ۲۰۰۳ A.D., ۱۳۸۱ / ۱۴۲۳ A.H

.Sixth Edition : ۲۰۰۵ A.D., ۱۳۸۴ | ۱۴۲۶ A.H

p: ۱

Point

Faghih Imani, Kamal فقيه ایمانی, کمال, گردآورنده

[نورالقرآن فی تفسیر القرآن. انگلیسی. برگزیده]

(انلایتینگ کامنتری این تو د لایت او د هولی قرآن)

/An enlightening commentary in to the light of the Holy Qur'an

;Compiled by Kamal Faghih Imani and a group of Muslim scholars

translated by Abbas Sadr-Ameli. – Isfaham: Golbahar, ۲۰۰۷ = ۱۳۸۵

ISBN ۹۶۴-۵۶۹۱-۵۳-۲ فهرست نویسی بر اساس اطلاعات فیبا (دوره)

ISBN ۹۶۴-۵۶۹۱-۶۵-۶ انگلیسی.

(جلد ۱۳)

۱. تفاسیر شیعه -- قرن ۱۴. ۲. قرآن -- سوره ها و آیه ها --

ترجمه ها. الف. صدرعاملی, عباس, Sadr - Ameli, Abbas, مترجم. ب. عنوان: An enlightening commentary in to the light of the holy Qur'an ج. عنوان: نور القرآن فی تفسیر القرآن. انگلیسی.

۹۸BP ۱۷۲۶ / ۲۹۷ / ۷ف / ۹۰۴۹۵۲

۱۳۸۵

کتابخانه ملی ایران ۱۸۹۶۲-۸۴م

Please note the Internet Site Address

For the English Commentary of the Light of Holy Qur'ān

www.maaref-foundation.com/light.htm

E-mail: enlightening_commentary@yahoo.com

All rights reserved by the Amir-ul-Mu'mineen Ali (a.s.) Library

Title: An English Commentary into the Light of the Holy Qur'ān

" Compiler: A Group of Muslim Scholars and " Copyright ۱۹۹۸ Kamal Faghīh Imani

Translator: Mr. Sayyid ‘Abbās Ṣadr-‘āmelī

Published by: The Scientific and Religious Research Center

Amir-ul-Mu'mineen Ali (a.s.) Public Library, under the direction of

.Ayatullah Allamah Mujāhid Al-Haj Sayyid Kamāl Faghīh Īmānī

Address: Shekar Shekan Crossroads, Ahmadabad Street, Post Office Box ۸۱۴۶۵/۵۱۵۱

Esfahan, Islamic Republic of Iran, Telephone: ۲۲۸۱۰۰۰, ۲۲۸۲۰۰۰, ۲۲۹۶۴۷۸

Fax: ۹۸-۳۱۱-۲۲۹۷۰۲۸

Number of Copies in this Print: ۶,۰۰۰

.First Edition: ۲۰۰۷ A.D. , ۱۳۸۵ / ۱۴۲۸ A.H

p: ۲

Table of Contents

Introduction	۱۵
Transliteration.....	۱۶
Part ۲۰, Sura An-Naml, No. ۲۷	۱۷
The feature of the Sura	۱۷
Section ۱: Moses Commissioned with Apostleship	۱۹
Commentary, verses ۱-۳	۲۰
Commentary, verses ۴-۵	۲۳
Some Traditions upon Losers	۲۵
Commentary, verse ۶	۲۷
Note	۲۸
Commentary, verses ۷-۹	۳۰
Commentary, verses ۱۰-۱۱	۳۴
Commentary, verses ۱۲-۱۳	۳۷
Commentary, verse ۱۴	۴۰
Section ۲: Solomon inherits from David	۴۳
Commentary, verse ۱۵	۴۳
Commentary, verse ۱۶	۴۷
Some points	۵۱
Commentary, verse ۱۷	۶۱

Commentary, verse 18 64

Commentary, verse 19 66

p: 3

Commentary, verses ۲۰-۲۲.....	۶۸
Commentary, verses ۲۳-۲۴.....	۷۳
Commentary, verses ۲۵-۲۶.....	۷۵
Commentary, verses ۲۷-۲۸.....	۷۹
Commentary, verses ۲۹-۳۱.....	۸۱
Section ۳: Solomon and the Queen of Sheba.....	۸۴
Commentary, verses ۳۲-۳۳.....	۸۴
Commentary, verse ۳۴.....	۸۶
Commentary, verse ۳۵.....	۸۷
Some points on letter writing.....	۸۸
Commentary, verses ۳۶-۳۷.....	۹۰
Some points.....	۹۳
Commentary, verses ۳۸-۳۹.....	۹۵
Commentary, verse ۴۰.....	۹۸
Some points.....	۱۰۱
The virtue of Amir-ul-Mu'mineen and Ahl-ul-Bayt.....	۱۰۴
Commentary, verse ۴۱.....	۱۰۶
Commentary, verses ۴۲-۴۳.....	۱۰۸
Commentary, verse ۴۴.....	۱۱۰
Section ۴: Saleh and Lot.....	۱۱۵

Commentary, verses ۴۵-۴۶.....۱۱۵

Commentary, verse ۴۷.....۱۱۹

Some traditions upon Bad Omen.....۱۲۱

Commentary, verse ۴۸.....۱۲۲

Commentary, verse ۴۹.....۱۲۴

p: ۴

Commentary, verses ۵۰-۵۱۱۲۶

Commentary, verses ۵۲-۵۳۱۲۸

Commentary, verses ۵۴-۵۵۱۳۰

The End of Part ۱۹

Commentary, verse ۵۶۱۳۳

Commentary, verses ۵۷-۵۸۱۳۵

Section ۵: Allah's Chosen Servants۱۳۷

Commentary, verse ۵۹۱۳۷

Commentary, verse ۶۰۱۳۹

Commentary, verses ۶۱-۶۲۱۴۲

Commentary, verse ۶۳۱۴۷

Commentary, verse ۶۴۱۴۹

Commentary, verses ۶۵-۶۶۱۵۱

Section ۶: The Resurrection, Sura۱۵۴

Commentary, verses ۶۷-۶۸۱۵۴

Commentary, verses ۶۹-۷۰۱۵۶

Commentary, verses ۷۱-۷۴۱۵۸

Commentary, verse ۷۵۱۶۱

Commentary, verses ۷۶-۷۷۱۶۳

Commentary, verses ۷۸-۷۹۱۶۶

Commentary, verses 80-81.....168

Commentary, verse 82.....173

Section v: The coming of the Day of Judgment.....180

Commentary, verses 83-84.....180

A few Traditions as Examples.....185

p: 5

Commentary, verse ٨٥	١٨٨
Commentary, verse ٨٦	١٨٩
Commentary, verse ٨٧	١٩٣
Commentary, verse ٨٨	١٩٤
Commentary, verses ٨٩-٩٠	١٩٩
Commentary, verse ٩١	٢٠٣
Commentary, verse ٩٢	٢٠٥
Commentary, verse ٩٣	٢٠٧

The End of Sura An-Naml

Sura Al-Qaṣaṣ, No. ٢٨.....٢٠٩

The Virtue of Revelation of٢٠٩

Section ١: The Narrative of Moses٢١١

Commentary, verses ١-٣.....٢١٢

Commentary, verse ٤.....٢١٥

Pharaoh ordered his men to kill the boys٢١٩ –

Commentary, verses ٥-٦.....٢٢٠

Some traditions upon the advent of Mahdī٢٢٤

Traditions About Raj‘at.....٢٢٥ –

Who the oppressed and oppressors are?٢٢٧

Kinds of Mustaq‘af٢٢٨ –

The general style of all oppressors.....۲۲۹

Commentary, verse ۷.....۲۳۱

p: ۶

Moses' mother cost him into the River	۲۳۲ –
The midwife does not inform the birth of Moses	۲۳۳ –
The carpenter could not inform the informers	۲۳۴ –
Pharaoh had only a daughter	۲۳۵ –
Commentary, verse ۸	۲۳۶
Commentary, verse ۹	۲۳۸
The event of Pharaoh's daughter	۲۳۹ –
Commentary, verses ۱۰-۱۱	۲۴۱
Moses sister watched the affairs from a distance	۲۴۳ –
Commentary, verse ۱۲	۲۴۴
Commentary, verse ۱۳	۲۴۷
Section ۲: Moses saved by Allah from being murdered.....	۲۴۹
Commentary, verse ۱۴	۲۴۹
Commentary, verse ۱۵	۲۵۱
Commentary, verse ۱۶	۲۵۴
Commentary, verse ۱۷	۲۵۷
As a gratitude to Allah, Moses helped the oppressed ۲۵۷ –	
Commentary, verse ۱۸	۲۶۲
Commentary, verse ۱۹	۲۶۴
Moses had killed the Coptic man for the help of the Israelite man ...	۲۶۵ –

Commentary, verses 20-21266

The believer of the people of Pharaoh helped Moses.....266 –

Section 3: Moses weds Laban's daughter269

Commentary, verse 22269

Moses started to go toward Midyan.....270 –

p: 7

Commentary, verses ۲۳-۲۴	۲۷۱
Moses consumed the plants of the desert	۲۷۲ –
He left the castle of Pharaoh for his home	۲۷۳ –
Commentary, verse ۲۵	۲۷۵
A woman must ply outside of the house with modesty	۲۷۵ –
Commentary, verse ۲۶	۲۷۸
The girl found Moses’ strength when he put the shepherd aside	۲۷۹ –
Commentary, verse ۲۷	۲۸۰
Some points.....	۲۸۱
The importance of marriage.....	۲۸۹
Choosing the spouse	۲۹۰
Some traditions.....	۲۹۰
Commentary, verse ۲۸.....	۲۹۲
Section ۴: Moses Commissioned with Apostleship.....	۲۹۴
Commentary, verse ۲۹.....	۲۹۴
Moses spent ten years in strangerhood.....	۲۹۵ –
Commentary, verse ۳۰	۲۹۸
Allah speaks with Moses through a tree.....	۲۹۸ –
Commentary, verse ۳۱	۳۰۰
Moses saw the different shapes of the snake	۳۰۱ –

Commentary, verses 32-33302

Moses was ordered to draw his arm to himself.....303 –

Commentary, verses 34-35.....305

Moses confessed the virtue of his brother306 –

p: 8

	Commentary, verse ۳۶	۳۰۷
Moses informed Aaron of his prophecy		۳۰۷ –
	Commentary, verse ۳۷	۳۰۹
Moses reported the failure of the unjust		۳۱۰ –
	Commentary, verse ۳۸	۳۱۱
The news of Moses’ victory spread in Egypt		۳۱۲ –
	Commentary, verse ۳۹	۳۱۵
How can a man claim divinity?		۳۱۵ –
	Commentary, verse ۴۰	۳۱۶
	Commentary, verses ۴۱–۴۲	۳۱۷
The leaders are divided into two groups: the leaders of ‘light’ and the leaders of –		
	‘Fire’	۳۱۸
Section ۵: Moses’ Mission Referred to		۳۲۱
	Commentary, verse ۴۳	۳۲۱
Allah gave torah to Moses after their destruction		۳۲۲ –
	Commentary, verse ۴۴	۳۲۳
The Qur’ān informs of the future events		۳۲۴ –
	Commentary, verse ۴۵	۳۲۵
	Commentary, verse ۴۶	۳۲۷
The earth always contains the godly Hujjat (proof)		۳۲۸ –

Commentary, verse ۴۷ ۳۲۹

Allah punishes no nation before sending a prophet for them۳۳۰ –

Commentary, verse ۴۸.....۳۳۱

Moses' two miracles: Rod and white hand.....۳۳۲ –

Commentary, verse ۴۹.....۳۳۳

Commentary, verse ٥٠ ٣٣٤

Man should be on the line of Divine guidance ٣٣٥ Section ٤: Guidance –
from Allah had been continuous ٣٣٦

Commentary, verse ٥١ ٣٣٦

Occasion of Revelation and Commentary verse ٥٢ ٣٣٨

Some Christians came to the Prophet and believed ٣٣٨ –

Commentary, verses ٥٣–٥٤ ٣٤٠

They were expecting the Prophet of Islam ٣٤١

Commentary, verse ٥٥ ٣٤٢

Commentary, verse ٥٦ ٣٤٥

Some evidences upon the belief of Abūtālib ٣٤٨ –

Commentary, verse ٥٧ ٣٥٠

Commentary, verse ٥٨ ٣٥٢

Commentary, verse ٥٩ ٣٥٤

The news of the raise of the Prophet of Islam spread in Arabia peninsula in a short –
time ٣٥٥

Commentary, verse ٦٠ ٣٥٦

Section ٧: Unity of Allah ٣٥٨

Commentary, verse ٦١ ٣٥٨

Divine lasting merits are preferable to fleeting joys ٣٥٩ –

Commentary, verses ٦٢–٦٤ ٣٦١

In Hereafter, every sinful person try to put his own sin on another's shoulder –

.....۳۶۳

Commentary, verses ۶۵-۶۷.....۳۶۵

Pagans will have no answer but an absolute silence.....۳۶۶ –

p: ۱۰

Commentary, verses ٦٨-٧٠	٣٦٨
The authority of all things depends on His providence ٣٦٩ –	
He is the Judge in both words	٣٧٠ –
Commentary, verse ٧١	٣٧١
Commentary, verse ٧٢	٣٧٣
Only Allah is eligible for being worshipped	٣٧٣ –
Commentary, verse ٧٣	٣٧٤
Commentary, verse ٧٤	٣٧٤
Commentary, verse ٧٥	٣٧٧
In Hereafter there will remain but the truth	٣٧٨ –
Section ٨: Korah’s (Qārūn) Ruin	٣٧٩
Commentary, verse ٧٤	٣٧٩
Korah was a close relative of Moses	٣٨٠ –
His wealth was the cause of his disobedience	٣٨٠ –
Allah does not like the proud exultant	٣٨١ –
Commentary, verse ٧٧	٣٨٢
Not the totality of bounties belong to us	٣٨٤ –
Commentary, verse ٧٨	٣٨٤
Korah said he knew what to do better than others	٣٨٧ –
Commentary, verse ٧٩	٣٩٠

Korah was an example of this quality ۳۹۰ –

Commentary, verse ۸۰ ۳۹۲

Commentary, verse ۸۱ ۳۹۴

Commentary, verse ۸۲ ۳۹۸

Some points ۳۹۹

p: ۱۱

Section ۹: The Apostle (Muhammad) promised triumph.....	۴۰۴
Commentary, verse ۸۳	۴۰۴
Commentary, verse ۸۴	۴۰۸
The Occasion of Revelation	۴۱۰
Commentary, verse ۸۵	۴۱۱
Commentary, verse ۸۶	۴۱۵
Commentary, verse ۸۷	۴۱۷
Commentary, verse ۸۸	۴۱۹
The End of Sura Al-Qaṣaṣ	
Sura Al-‘Ankabūt, No. ۲۹, The Feature of Sura	۴۲۵
The Virtue of Sura ‘Ankabūt	۴۲۵
Section ۱: Every soul shall be tried	۴۲۶
Occasion of Revelation and Commentary, verses ۱-۳	۴۲۷
Commentary, verses ۴-۵.....	۴۳۳
Commentary, verse ۶	۴۳۵
Commentary, verse ۷.....	۴۳۷
The Occasion of Revelation, verse ۸.....	۴۳۹
Commentary, verse ۸.....	۴۳۹
Some other Traditions.....	۴۴۳
Commentary, verse ۹.....	۴۴۵

Commentary, verse 10 446

Commentary, verse 11 449

Commentary, verse 12 450

Commentary, verse 13 452

Section 2: Noah and Abraham's Mission 457

Commentary, verses 14-15 457

Commentary, verse 16 461

Commentary, verse 17 462

Commentary, verse 18 465

Commentary, verse 19 466

Commentary, verse 20 468

Commentary, verses 21-22 471

Section 3: Abraham and Lot 474

Commentary, verse 23 474

Commentary, verse 24 476

Commentary, verse 25 478

Commentary, verse 26 481

Commentary, verse 27 483

Commentary, verses 28-30 486

Some Traditions upon Sodomy and its punishment 491

Section ۴: The Mission of Abraham, Lot, Shu‘ayb and Moses	۴۹۲
Commentary, verse ۳۱	۴۹۲
Commentary, verse ۳۲	۴۹۴
Commentary, verse ۳۳	۴۹۷
Commentary, verses ۳۴-۳۵	۵۰۰

Commentary, verse ۳۶	۵۰۲
Commentary, verse ۳۷	۵۰۴
Commentary, verse ۳۸	۵۰۵
Commentary, verse ۳۹	۵۰۷
Commentary, verse ۴۰	۵۰۹
Commentary, verse ۴۱	۵۱۲
Commentary, verses ۴۲-۴۳	۵۱۶
Commentary, verse ۴۴	۵۱۸
The End of Sura Al-‘Ankabūt	
References	۵۲۰
Index	۵۲۳
A Presentation to Muslims	۵۵۰
The Rank and Importance of the Qur’ān	۵۵۳
Imām Mahdī (a.s.)	۵۵۵
The List of Publications of the Library	۵۵۸

In the Name of Allah, The Beneficent, The Merciful

To begin the book with the beginning of a Sura, in this volume of the commentary of the rest verses of part ١٤th of the Holy Qur'ān, which are at the threshold of Sura An-Naml, accompanied with their commentary explanations are involved here and then .the commentary of the whole verses of part ٢٠ is offered

Again here we mention that for being familiar with more information about the source and purpose of providing this endeavour, and that how the dear reader or readers of it can utilize the text of this commentary best, we may recommend you to study the introduction detailed at the beginning of book No. one (part one) which will surely be .helpful

As usual, again and again we ask Allah, the Almighty, to help us, as ever before, and to .assist us to complete this sacred endeavour successfully

May He (s.w.t.) guide and succour all of us by the light of the Qur'ān to pave its .Straight Path further and further, for we are always in need of His favours

The Scientific and Religious Research Center

Amir-ul-Mu'mineen Ali (a.s.) Public Library

Sayyid 'Abbās Sadr-Āmilī

The Translator

Transliteration of Arabic Letters

Long Vowels	Short Vowels	Diphthongs
آ ā	ا a	أى aī
و ū	و u	أو aū
ى ī	ي i	أو au
Letters		
ب b	ط t	ت t
ت t	ظ z	ز z
ث θ	ع ʿ	ح h
ج j	ق q	خ x
ح h	ف f	د d
خ x	ك k	ذ ḏ
د d	ل l	ر r
ذ ḏ	م m	ز z
ر r	ن n	س s
ز z	و w, ū, aū	ش š
س s	و w	ص ṣ
ش š	ه h	ض ḍ
ص ṣ	ي y	ط ṭ
ض ḍ	ه ه	ظ ظ
ط ṭ	ى y	ع ع
	ة ē	ق ق
		ك ك
		ل ل
		م م
		ن ن
		و و
		ه ه
		ي ي
		ة ē

:The Feature of the Sura

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

In The Name of Allah, The Beneficent, The Merciful

(No. ٢٧ (Revealed at Mecca

Verses in ٧ Sections ٩٣

This Sura contains ٩٣ verses, and due to verse No. ١٨, which is about ants and Solomon (a.s.), it is called An–Naml (The Ant); but it is also called Sulaymān, and Tā, Seen

The whole verses of this Sura were revealed in connection with different events and occasions, and the holy phrase: /bismillah–ir–rahmān–ir–rahīm/ is repeated two times in it, one of them is at the beginning of the Sura and the other one is in verse No. ٣٠ at the onset of Solomon’s letter to Sheba, the Queen

The struggles of four Divine prophets (Moses, Solomon, Ṣālih, Lūt) against different tribes of their times have been referred to in this Sura, the most detailed of them is that of Solomon which resulted to Sheba’s faith in Monotheism

Another portion of the verses of this holy Sura is about Solomon’s speaking with the birds, such as hoopoe and some insects like ants, and the attendance of some jinns in the army and court of Solomon, and, finally, bringing the throne of Sheba from Yemen to Syria in a short moment

A tradition stated by Imam Sādiq (a.s.) announces: “Whoever recites the triple suras which begin with Tā Seen (Sura Ash-Shu‘arā, An-Naml, and Qaşaş) in the night before Friday, he will be one of the friends of Allah and he will be nigh to Him and he will be [involved in His Grace and support.](#)” (If he fulfils his religions duties sincerely.)[\(1\)](#)

p: ١٨

Section ١: Moses Commissioned with Apostleship

Point

Moses goes in search of fire for his family but is attracted by the Divinely lit fire and was called to the office of apostleship and commanded to proceed toward Pharaoh and his people – Moses given the Miracle of his Rod – and his Radiant hand

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

In The Name of Allah, The Beneficent, The Merciful

(١) طس تِلْكَ آيَاتُ الْقُرْآنِ وَكِتَابٍ مُبِينٍ

(٢) هُدًى وَبُشْرَى لِلْمُؤْمِنِينَ

(٣) الَّذِينَ يُقِيمُونَ الصَّلَاةَ وَيُؤْتُونَ الزَّكَاةَ وَهُمْ بِالْآخِرَةِ هُمْ يُوقِنُونَ

١. “ Tā, Seen. These are the verses of the Qur’ān and the Book (that makes things) “ ,manifest

٢. “ ,A guidance and glad tidings for the believers “

٣. “ Those who establish prayer and give Zakat (the poor-rate), and of the Hereafter, “ ,they are sure

The Arabic word /mubīn/ is derived from /'ibānah/ which is both intransitive and transitive and means 'clear' and 'to make clear' both

One of Allah's way of treatment is that He lets revelation, with its superiority and high rank, available for human beings

The Qur'ānic word /zakāt/ contains two main meanings; one of them is the proper meaning which is known 'as poor-rate', and the other is the general meaning which is 'helping the needy' in any form and manner it may be. In this holy verse, the latter one is meant, because this Sura had been sent down in Medinā, where the formal order of Zakāt (alms) was issued

However, at the beginning of the Sura we encounter the abbreviated letters of the Qur'ān, and regarding to the fact that immediately next to that the magnificence of the Qur'ān is referred to, it seems that one of its secrets is that this great Book and its clear verses are formed by the simple alphabetic letters. It requires that such a Creator, Who has brought such a beautiful sacred relic into being out of such simple items, be praised. We have, of course, discussed in detail in this field at the beginning of Sura Al-Baqarah, No. ۲, Sura 'Āl-i-'Imrān, No. ۳, and Sura Al-'A'rāf, No. ۷

:Next to the abbreviated letters: (Tā, Seen.), the verse continues, saying

”,These are the verses of the Qur'ān and the Book (that makes things) manifest ...“

The application of the word /tilka/ in this verse is for stating the greatness of these heavenly verses; and the Qur'ānic word /mubīn/ used for the Qur'ān, is an emphasis indicating that the Qur'ān is both clear and makes the facts clear

Some of the commentators have said that probably the words ‘Qur’ān’ and ‘Kitābin Mubīn’ (The Book Manifest) refer to two separate things and the latter indicates to /lauḥ-i-maḥfūz/ (Protected Tablet), but the apparent of the verse shows that both of them speak of one thing: one of them in the form of utterances and recitation, and the other in the form of a ‘written Book

In the second noble verse, there have been stated two other qualities for the Qur’ān. It is the Holy Qur’ān which causes ‘guidance’, and the means of good tidings for the :believers. It says

”,A guidance and glad tidings for the believers “

Those who establish prayer and give Zakat (the poor-rate), and of the Hereafter, “
”.they are sure

Thus, their belief in both origin and resurrection is firm, and their link with Allah and His servants is strong. Therefore, the above qualities point to both their complete .faith and their practical inclusive program

There may arise a question here that if these believers have chosen a straight path from the point of basic doctrines and practice both, why is it necessary that the Qur’ān comes for their guidance? Regarding to the fact that guidance consists of different stages, each of which is a preparation for the higher stage and higher .stages, the answer of this question is made clear

Moreover, the continuation of this guidance is itself an important matter. It is the same thing that, by saying: “Guide us (O’ Lord) on the Straight Path” in our all daily prayers, we ask Allah that He makes us fix in this way and He continues it, because .without His grace this continuation is impossible

Besides that, taking the advantages of the verses of ‘the Qur’ān’ and ‘the Book manifest’ is possible only for those who carry the soul of ‘seeking the truth’ in them, though they have not obtained the complete guidance yet. If we see that, in one occurrence, the Qur’ān has been introduced as the origin of the piety of the pious ones, (Al-Baqarah, No. ٢, verse ٢) and in another one as the source of guidance for the Muslims (An-Nahl, No. ١٦, verse ١٠٢), and here it is as the cause of guidance for the ‘believers’, one of its reasons is that a person will not go after the reality unless, at least, a stage of piety, submission, and belief in realities exists in his heart, and a disbeliever does not enjoy the light of this ‘manifest Book’ because the eligibility of place is also conditioned

Besides all of these, the combination of ‘guidance’ and ‘glad tidings’ is possible only for ‘the believers’ and such a ‘glad tidings’ is not available for others

This makes it clear that if in some verses of the Qur’ān guidance has vastly and expansively been defined for all people, like Sura Al-Baqarah, No. ٢, verse ١٨٥ which says: “... a guidance for mankind in”, its purpose is all those who have an appropriate ground in them for accepting the Truth, else, the arrogant, obstinate, and fanatic persons are some blind hearted ones that if, instead of one sun, thousand suns shine on them, they get the least advantage of them

p: ٢٢

(٤) إِنَّ الَّذِينَ لَا يُؤْمِنُونَ بِالْآخِرَةِ زَيَّنَّا لَهُمْ أَعْمَالَهُمْ فَهُمْ يَعْمَهُونَ

(٥) أُولَئِكَ الَّذِينَ لَهُمْ سُوءُ الْعَذَابِ وَهُمْ فِي الْآخِرَةِ هُمُ الْآخْسَرُونَ

Verily those who do not believe in the Hereafter, We have made their (ugly) deeds “ .٤
”.fair-seeming unto them, so they wander bewildered

These are those for whom shall be a grievous chastisement, and in the Hereafter “ .٥
”.they shall be the greatest losers

Commentary, verses: ٤-٥

Point

These holy verses refer to the states of those who are not believers. One of their
:most dangerous states is mentioned as follows

Verily those who do not believe in the Hereafter, We have made their (ugly) deeds “
”.fair-seeming unto them, so they wander bewildered

In the view of such people, pollution is purity, indecency is beautiful, meanness is
.honour, and wretchedness and misery are considered happiness and victory by them

Yes, such is the condition of those who go astray and persist on it. It is evident that
when a person commits an ugly and wrong action, gradually its ugliness decreases in
his view and he will fall into the habit of it. When he is accustomed to it, he brings forth
some justifications for it. Later that evil thing may appear as a beautiful thing, or even
as a duty, in his view. There are many felonious and polluted persons who are really
.proud of their deeds and consider them as a positive fact

This change in values, and the confusion of the criterions in one's view, the result of which is being bewildered and misguided in life, is the worst state that a person may receive

It is interesting that this ornamentation of deeds has been attributed to Allah, and this is because He is the cause of all causes in the world of existence, and the effect of any thing relates to Allah. Yes, Allah has put this peculiarity in the repetition of action, that one gradually falls into habit of it and his sense of discrimination varies, while his responsibility does not disappear, nor can it be counted as a rejection and deficiency (for the Lord. (Be careful

Then the Qur'ān refers to the consequence of those evil deeds that are made fair-seening to them, and states the fate of such persons as follows

”... ,These are those for whom shall be a grievous chastisement “

In this world, they will be hopeless and bewildered, and in the Hereafter they will encounter a terrible chastisement. The verse continues saying

”.and in the Hereafter they shall be the greatest losers ...“

The reason of that they are ‘the greatest losers’ is the same thing that is mentioned in Sura Al-Kahf, No. ١٨, verses ١٠٣ and ١٠٤ which announce: “Say: ‘Shall We inform you of the greatest losers in (their) deeds?’” “Those whose effort is lost in this world's life, while they think that they are working good deeds

What a loss is greater than this that one considers his ugly deeds beautiful and does his best to commit them thinking that he is doing a positive task, but at the end he sees he has provided naught for him but misery and wretchedness

:By the way, the losers are of different groups

Khāsir'. The one whose whole life and capitals are ruined: "... Say: 'The losers' –_۱ surely are those who shall have lost themselves and their families on the Day of (Resurrection, ...)" (Sura Az-Zumar, No. ۳۹, verse ۱۵)

In Loss'. The one who is not a true believer and does not do righteous deeds: "By' –_۲ Time." "Surely man is in loss," "Save those who believe and do good deeds, ..." (Sura (Al-'Aşr, No. ۱۰۳, verses ۱-۳)

Clear Loss'. The one who worships Allah not earnestly: "... so that if such a one who' –_۳ worships Allah only by tongue, so that if good befalls him he is satisfied therewith, and if a trial afflicts him he turns back his face; he loses this world and (also) the (Hereafter; that is indeed the manifest loss." (Sura Al-Hajj, No. ۲۲ verse ۱۱)

The Utmost Losers'. Those who are deviated and think that they are on the right' –_۴ path: "Those whose effort is lost in this world's life, while they think that they are (working good deeds." (Sura Al-Kahf, No. ۱۸, verse ۱۰۴)

Some Islamic traditions indicate that the losers are those who: do not pay alms (Zakāt), persist on committing sins, and have the power of saying the right but they do not say it. These are the most unjust ones, because they want to improve their .worldly life by spoiling the religion

:some traditions upon Losers

The Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) said: "The loser is one whose yearning is for other .۱ (than Allah." (Madīnat-ul-Balāqah, Vol. ۲, P. ۴۹۲)

The Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) said: "A loser is he who neglects improving the .۲ (affairs of (his) Resurrection." (Madīnat-ul-Balāqah, Vol. ۲, P. ۴۹۲)

Imam Amir-ul-Mu'minīn Ali (a.s.) said: "He who has reckoned his own self has . ۳
(gained, and he who has neglected it has lost." (Qiṣār-ul-Ḥikam, No. ۲۰۸, Al-Mu'jam

The same Imam (a.s.) said: "How much a loser is he who has no (good) share in . ۴
(Hereafter!" (Qurar-ul-Hikam, Vol. ۲, P. ۷۴۶

Amir-ul-Mu'minīn Ali (a.s.) said: "The utmost loser among people is he who has . ۵
(ability of saying the Truth, but he does not say." (Qurar-ul-Ḥikam, Vol. ۱, P. ۱۹۵

Amir-ul-Mu'minīn Ali (a.s.) wrote a letter to Masqalat-ibn-Hubarat-ish-Shaybānī, . ۶
who was the Governor of Ardehīr Khurrah (Iran) from his side (a.s.), as follows: "I
have come to know concerning you a matter which if you have done it you have
displeased your Allah and disobeyed your Imam. You are distributing among the
Arabs (Bedouins) of your kin who tend towards you the property of the Muslims which
they collected by dint of their spears and horses and on which their blood was shed. ...
and do not reform your world by ruining your religion, since then you will be among
[losers by the way of \(your\) deeds. ..."](#) [\(1\)](#)

p: ۲۶

(٦) وَإِنَّكَ لَتَلَقَّى الْقُرْآنَ مِنْ لَدُنْ حَكِيمٍ عَلِيمٍ

”And most surely you receive the Qur’ān from One All-Wise, All-Knowing “ .٦

Commentary,verse: ٦

Point

.The knowledge of the holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) is a divine and intuitive knowledge

The receiver of the Divine revelation is the Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) and Qur’ān is
.the sign of the knowledge and wisdom of Allah

In the verse under discussion, as a complementary to the former explanations about the greatness of the content of the Qur’ān, and a preparation for the stories of the prophets, which immediately begins after it, the Qur’ān says

”And most surely you receive the Qur’ān from One All-Wise, All-Knowing “

The Qur’ānic words /ḥakīm/ and /‘alīm/ both refer to the awareness of Allah, but the word /ḥikmat/ (wisdom) usually states the practical aspects, while /‘ilm/ (knowledge) points to the theoretical aspects. In other words, the Qur’ānic word /‘alīm/ refers to the infinite knowledge of Allah, and the application of the word /ḥakīm/ informs of the .view, order, and aim of creation of this world, as well as sending down the Qur’ān

Such Qur’ān, which has been sent down from the side of such Lord, should be a manifest Book, makes things clear, works as a guidance and glad tidings for the .believers, and its stories should be free from any superstition and distortion

The important true problem in man's life is that he must comprehend the facts as they really are and have an explicit proper position before them. Imagination, predictions, wrong desires, and false likes and dislikes must not hinder man to see and understand the realities in their true form. So the most important definition which has been introduced for philosophy is: 'perceiving the facts of things as they are

That was why that one of the most important things that the immaculate ones used to ask for from Allah was that they said: "O Allah! Show me (the facts of) the things as they are, (so that I can recognize the values of different things and treat them rightly

This circumstance is not possible without having Faith, because restive low desires and egocentric wishes are the greatest barriers of this way, and removing the hindrances is not possible save with piety and controlling the sensual desires

It is for this reason that in these noble verses we recite: "Verily those who do not believe in the Hereafter, We have made their (ugly) deeds fair-seeming unto them, so (they wander bewildered.)" (1

We can see the actual and manifest example of this meaning clearly in the life of a group of mammonists of our time. They are proud of some things, and consider them as a part of civilization that, indeed, are nothing but shame, pollution, and disgrace

.They think of libertinism as a sign of freedom –

.They know the nakedness and indecency of women as a reason for civilization –

.?They take part in the competition of luxury as a sign of ‘personality –

.Being polluted in kinds of corruptions is the epiphany of liberty for them–

.They consider murder, crime, and destruction as the evidence of power–

They count destruction and usurpation of others’ capitals, as they call, –
.reestablishing those properties

They use the common communication means along side of the worst anti-ethical –
.?programs and call it as a reason for ‘respecting the people’s demand

.?They tread on the rights of the deprived as a sign of ‘honouring the human’s rights –

They call captivity in the grips of addictions, lusts, disgraces, and indecencies ‘a kind –
.?of liberty

In their view, treachery, dishonesty, and gaining wealth, in any way that it can be, –
.are considered as a reason for their talent and competency

In their culture, observing the principles of justice and respecting others’ rights is –
the sign of inefficiency and lack of competency, while falsehood, perjury, hypocrisy,
.and deceit are the sign of policy

Shortly speaking, their evil and shameful deeds seem so fair to them that not only
they do not feel shame of them but also they boast for them. It is evident, then, that
how the feature of such a society will be and what direction is the path which will end
to it

(٧) إِذْ قَالَ مُوسَىٰ لِأَهْلِهِ إِنِّي آنستُ نَارًا سَاتِيكُمْ مِّنْهَا خَبْرٌ أَوْ آتِيكُمْ بِشَهَابٍ مِّمَّنْ لَّعَلَّكُمْ تَصْطَلُونَ

(٨) فَلَمَّا جَاءَهَا نُودِيَ أَنْ بُورِكَ مَنْ فِي النَّارِ وَمَنْ حَوْلَهَا وَسُبْحَانَ اللَّهِ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ

(٩) يَا مُوسَىٰ إِنَّهُ أَنَا اللَّهُ الْعَزِيزُ الْحَكِيمُ

Remember) When Moses said unto his family: ‘Verily I perceive a fire; soon will I) “ .٧
”bring you news of it, or I will bring you a flaming brand, that you warm yourselves

So when he came to it, a voice was heard: ‘Blessed is whoever is in the fire and “ ٨
whoever is about it, and

”.Glory be to Allah, the Lord of the World

”;O’ Moses! Verily, I am Allah, The Mighty, The Wise“ .٩

Commentary, verses: ٧-٩

The word ‘Moses’ has been mentioned in the Qur’ān for ١٣٦ times and his story has been told in ٢٤ suras. Thus, the explanation concerning the children of Israel is studied .in about ٩٠٠ verses of the Qur’ān

Moses accompanied with his wife who was pregnant, and they were going from Madyan towards Egypt. On one side, the darkness of the night in the cold stormy weather of the desert, and, on the other side, the childbirth of his wife, forced Moses .to search. The verses under discussion are about this event

Here it points to the most sensitive moments of Moses’ life, that is when the first light of revelation enlightened his

heart and he was acquainted with the message and the speech of Allah. The verse
:says

”... ;Remember) When Moses said unto his family: ‘Verily I perceive a fire) “

soon will I bring you news of it, or I will bring you a flaming brand, that you warm ... “
”.yourselves

This event happened by the same night when Moses was in a dark desert on the way toward Egypt, accompanied with his wife, Shu‘ayb’s daughter, and he lost the way. Then a terrible storm began to blow and at the same time his wife felt the pains of childbirth. Moses thought he severely needed to make a fire in order to use its
.warmth, but there was nothing in that desert for it

As soon as he saw the light of a flame from distance, he became happy and took it as a sign of the existence of someone or some ones there. He told them that he would go and bring them either some news from it, or a burning firebrand so that they might
.warm themselves by it

It is noteworthy that Moses says he brings ‘them’ news or a flaming band, (the pronoun of which plural). This may show that there had been a child or children with him too, because his marriage had happened in Madyan ten years before that. Or it may be for the sake that, in that horrible desert, that idea could give some further
.calmness to his addressees

In the next verse, the Qur’ān indicates that Moses left his family there, and moved toward the place where he had seen a fire. When he reached the fire he heard a
:voice, as the verse says

So when he came to it, a voice was heard: ‘Blessed is whoever is in the fire and “
”.whoever is about it, and Glory be to Allah, the Lord of the World

The commentators of the Qur'ān have delivered different ideas concerning who might be the person mentioned in the phrases: "Whoever is in the fire" and "whoever is about it". What seems more probable is that, the objective of 'the one in the fire' is Moses who was so close to the fire found inside the green tree that as if he were inside the tree; and the objective of 'the one about it' is the near-stationed angels of Allah who, at that particular moment, had surrounded that sacred land

Or, on the contrary, the objective of those in the fire, is the Divine angels, and the objective of 'the one about it' is Moses (a.s)

However, some Islamic narrations indicate that when Moses (a.s.) approached the fire, he stopped and watched it carefully. He saw that from the inside of a green branch of the tree a flaming brand was shining. Every moment the flame was becoming brighter and brighter and the tree was growing more green and more beautiful. Neither the heat of the fire was to burn the tree, nor the moist of the tree caused the fire to die. He wondered. He bowed to take some fire with the small piece of wood he had in his hand, but the fire came toward him. He terrified and went back. Sometimes he tried to go toward the fire and sometimes the fire itself came toward him. Suddenly a voice was heard, giving him the glad tidings of revelation

The purpose is that Moses approached the fire so nigh that he was proportionate to the phrase 'whoever is in the fire

The third commentary which has been stated upon this phrase is that the purpose of "whoever is in the fire" is the Light of Allah which was shown by the burning firebrand; and the purpose of the phrase "whoever is about it" is Moses who was nigh to it. However, in order that there would not appear here any misconception concerning materiality of Allah, at the end of the verse, the sentence: "Glory be to Allah, the Lord of

the World” makes it clear that He is free from any defect, deficiency, materiality and .material accidents

:Again a voice was heard which addressed Moses, saying

”;O’ Moses! Verily, I am Allah, The Mighty, The Wise“

This sentence was for the sake that no doubt might remain in Moses’ mind and he would know that it was the Lord of the Worlds Who was speaking with him, not the flaming brand, nor the tree, the Lord Who does not fail, Who is ‘Mighty’ and Who is the .Possessor of Wisdom and Device

This meaning, in fact, is a premise for the statement of the miracle which will be referred to in the next holy verse, since miracle originates from two attributes of Allah: ‘Power’ and ‘Wisdom’. However, before discussing about the next verse, this question arises here that how did Moses understand and was assured that this voice ?was Allah’s, not other than that

In answer to this question, it can be said that this voice, being accompanied with a clear miracle, viz., glittering a fire from inside the branch of a green tree, was a .manifest reason that it was a Divine matter

Moreover, as we will find out by the next verse, after this voice Moses was ordered a command which contained the miracles of ‘Rod and white hand’, and these two .miracles were two other evidences for the reality of this voice

Besides all of these things, principally, the Divine voice must have a particular quality which makes it separate from any other voice, and when one hears it, it affects on his .heart so deeply that he never doubts that it is the voice of Allah

(١٠) وَأَلْقِ عَصَاكَ

فَلَمَّا رَأَاهَا تَهْتَزُّ كَأَنَّهَا جَانٌّ وَلَّى مُدْبِرًا

وَلَمْ يُعَقِّبْ يَا مُوسَى لَا تَخَفْ إِنِّي لَا يَخَافُ لَدَيَّ الْمُرْسَلُونَ

(١١) إِلَّا مَنْ ظَلَمَ ثُمَّ بَدَّلَ حُسْنًا بَعْدَ سُوءٍ فَإِنِّي غَفُورٌ رَحِيمٌ

And cast down your staff? So when he saw it moving as if it were a serpent, he “ ١٠ .
turned back retreating and did not return. (It was told him:) ‘O’ Moses! Fear not; surely
”;the messengers shall not fear in My presence

Save he who has been unjust, then he does good instead after evil, for verily I am “ ١١ .
”;the Forgiving, the Merciful

Commentary, verses: ١٠-١١

In view of the fact that the mission of prophethood, especially before a cruel and unjust one like Pharaoh, needed the outward and inward power and might as well as a firm proof of legitimacy, here Moses was commanded to throw down his Rod to show it. The verse says

“... ’!And cast down your staff“

Moses (a.s.) Threw down his Rod and suddenly it changed into a serpent. The verse continues saying

So when he saw it moving as if it were a serpent, he turned back retreating and did ... “
”... .not return

This is also probable that, at the beginning, the staff changed into a small snake and, in later stages, it became a great serpent. Here, Moses was again addressed and he was told not to be afraid. It says

It was told him:) ‘O’ Moses! Fear not; surely the messengers shall not fear in My presence ...“

Moses should be aware that here is the position of nearness and Allah’s secure sanctuary, the Mighty, the High; this rank is a place where there is not any fear or terror. That is, O’ Moses! You are at the presence of Allah, the Most High, and His presence is with absolute security. A similar meaning to this one is recited in Sura Qaṣaṣ, No. ٢٨, verse ٣١ which says: “... O’ Moses! Come you forward and fear you not; for surely you are in security

Through next verse the Qur’ān has stated an exception for the holy phrase “... surely the messengers shall fear not in My presence” when it says

Save he who has been unjust, then he does good instead after evil, for verily I am “the Forgiving, the Merciful

.Allah accepts the penitence of those who repent and He gives them security, too

Concerning the circumstance of this exception the Late Ṭabarsy, the writer of Majma‘-ul-Bayān, says: “But those people, except the prophets, who have done wrong and then repent remorsefully and decide not to return again, should know that He is the Forgiving, the Acceptor of repentance

The reason why the prophets have been mentioned as an exception is that they never commit any wrong and, because of the rank of infallibility, they are far from any sins and evils. Therefore, there they are not inside the exception, and prophets are like others only in the principle of doing duties. This kind of exception has also been referred to by Qurtabī in his commentary, Vol. ٤, P. ٨. The author of Jawāmi‘-ul-Jāmi‘, the commentary, Vol. ٤, P. ٤٥, concerning the meaning of this

sentence says as follows: “Whoever, except the prophets, does injustice, then he is remorseful of his ugly deeds and repents

and decides not to repeat them any more, surely Allah will forgive his injustice and He
”is merciful to him

Some other great commentators have said that there is not any retrenched matter in this verse and the fact is that those, other than the prophets, are not secured. Then there is an exception where it implicitly says: save those who, after their fault and .sins, repent and improve, and such ones will be in the Divine security, too

p: ۳۶

(١٢) وَأَدْخِلْ يَدَكَ فِي جَيْبِكَ تَخْرُجَ بَيْضَاءَ مِنْ غَيْرِ سُوءٍ فِي تِسْعِ آيَاتٍ إِلَىٰ فِرْعَوْنَ وَقَوْمِهِ إِنَّهُمْ كَانُوا قَوْمًا فَاسِقِينَ

(١٣) فَلَمَّا جَاءَتْهُمْ آيَاتُنَا مُبْصِرَةً قَالُوا هَذَا سِحْرٌ مُّبِينٌ

And put your hand in your bosom, and it will come forth white (shining) without “ .١٢ harm, (this miracle is) among the nine signs to Pharaoh and his people; verily they are ”.a transgressing people

”.’So when Our clear signs came to them, they said: ‘This is a manifest sorcery “ .١٣

Commentary,verses: ١٢-١٣

These nine signs or miracles are the miracles that Moses (a.s.) brought before Pharaoh, else he (a.s.) had some other miracles, too. By the way his every miracle can be counted two miracles, because when his Rod became a serpent, it was one miracle, and when the serpent changed back into Rod, it was another miracle, but the :Qur’ān has considered one side of it a miracle. Moses’ nine miracles are as follows

١- (The white hand (or the shining of the hand of Moses

٢- Conversion of the Rod into a giant serpent

٣- The violent storm for the enemy

٤- (Locust (which dominated their farms and their trees

٥- One plant-pest agent which exterminated cereals, called in Arabic /qummal

٦. The forges which emerged from the Nile River and made people’s lives miserable .and full of difficulties

Nose-bleeding or 'blood' which signifies the universal counteraction of nose . ۷
(bleeding or the turning of the Nile into the colour blood (Al-'A'rāf, ۱۳۳

(Famine and draught (Al-'A'rāf, ۱۳۰ . ۸

(The splitting of the sea (Al-Baqarah, ۵۰ . ۹

Other miracles of Moses (a.s.) are: the gushing of ۱۲ springs from stone (Al-Baqarah, (۶۰), the descending of /mann/ and /salwā/ (explained under Sura Al-Baqarah, verse ۵۷

Imam Ṣādiq (a.s.) said: "The purpose of /min qayri sū'/ (without harm) it that this
(whiteness of the hand was not because of sickness of leprosy.)

:Anyhow, the second miracle of Moses (a.s.) was given to him, as the verse says

And put your hand in your bosom, and it will come forth white (shining) without harm "
" ...

This whiteness of hand which is an interesting shining and luminosity, and not as the result of leprosy, itself denotes to the existence of a miracle and an extraordinary event

In order to grant some more grace to Moses and give further possibility to deviated persons to be guided, the Qur'ān, implicitly says to Moses (a.s.) that his miracles are
:not limited to these two ones, but

this miracle is) among the nine signs to Pharaoh and his people; verily they are a) ..."
".transgressing people

You are sent to Pharaoh and his people equipped with these nine miracles, as well as
.other great ones, because they are a transgressing people and they need guidance

From the apparent of this verse, it is understood that these two miracles have been among nine known miracles of Moses (a.s.). In commenting on Sura Al-'Isrā', No. ۱۷, verse ۱۰۱ it

The Commentary of Nūr-uth-Thaqalayn –۱

was concluded before that there are seven other miracles for Moses, five of which are: storm, plant-pests, locusts, forges, and turning of the Nile water into the colour of blood. When each of these events came to Pharaohs as a warning and they encountered with some difficulty, they used to come to Moses and asked him to .remove the pest

There were two more miracles: draught and scanty of fruits, which are mentioned in Sura Al-'A'rāf, No. ۷, verse ۱۳۰. It says: "And certainly We afflicted the clan of Pharaoh .with draught and scanty of fruits, so that they may take admonition

At last, Moses was equipped with the strongest weapon of miracle and went towards :Pharaoh and his people. He invited them to the religion of truth. The Qur'ān says

”.'So when Our clear signs came to them, they said: 'This is a manifest sorcery “

We know that this accusation was not charged only on Moses (a.s.) but, in order to adjust their oppositions against prophets, and in order that they produce a barrier in the way of others, the arrogant fanatic people brought forth the accusation of sorcery for the prophets which itself is a clear sign for the greatness of their extraordinary work. It is in the case that we know that prophets are some pure, pious and truth-seeking men, while sorcerers are some deviated and corrupted persons and are .qualified with all qualities that a deceitful one may have

Moreover, sorcerers had always been able to do some limited affairs, but prophets, whose customs and the content of their godly invitations made their legitimacy .manifest, had no similarity to sorcerers

(١٤) وَجَحَدُوا بِهَا وَاسْتَيْقَنَتْهَا أَنفُسُهُمْ ظُلْمًا وَعُلُوًّا فَانظُرْ كَيْفَ كَانَ عَاقِبَةُ الْمُفْسِدِينَ

And they denied them unjustly and proudly though their hearts acknowledged “ ١٤ .
”them; consider, then how was the end of the mischief-makers

Commentary,verse: ١٤

There are different sorts of infidelity and denial: ١- Disbelief may be as a result of following the fathers and customs and carnal desires. Most of disbelievers are of this kind. ٢- Disbelief can be because of mere ignorance and conjectures: “... but only fancies and mere conjectures.”

Disbelief may be hidden by hypocrisy for the one who is apparently Muslim but –٣ inwardly he is a disbeliever. ٤- Disbelief may emerge out of apostasy. When a person turns back from Islam, or denies some principles of the religion, such as Hajj, prayer, Zakāt, and other main ordinances of the religion, or produces an innovation in the religion, he is a disbeliever. ٥- Disbelief of the denial kind can come into being for the person who heartily is assured in the legitimacy of the truth, but denies it arrogantly and because of enmity. The verse under discussion states this kind of disbelief. So it indicates that those accusations that they brought against Moses (a.s.) were not for the sake that they were really in doubt, but they denied the miracles unjustly and :because of self-superiority. The Qur’ān says

p: ٤٠

;And they denied them unjustly and proudly though their hearts acknowledged them “
” ...

It is understood from this sentence that Faith has a reality besides knowledge and certainly, and blasphemy may exist because of denial and negation while there is
.knowledge and awareness

In other words, the reality of the correct Faith is an ‘outward and inward submission’ before the truth. Thus, if a person is certain of something but he does not surrender to it inwardly or outwardly, he has not faith, but he is a disbeliever of the denial kind. This
.is a vast matter that now we suffice only to this short explanation here

Imam Sādiq (a.s.) in a tradition, explaining five kinds of disbelief, counts one of them this kind of disbelief and that one of its branches is ‘denial’, and he said: “That is something that one denies while he knows that it is surely the truth which has been
(proved with him”, then he recited this verse. (1)

It is interesting that the Qur’ān considers the motivation of the denial of the people of
.Pharaoh in two things: injustice and pride

Their ‘injustice’ may refer to usurpation of others’ rights, and their pride refers to their self-superiority over the Children of Israel. It means that they saw if they surrendered to the signs and miracles of Moses, they both would find their unlawful interests in danger and that they would stand in the same row with their slaves, the
.Children of Israel, and none of them were tolerable for them

Or the purpose of the Qur’ānic word ‘unjustly’ is the injustice they did to themselves or to the Divine verses, and, the purpose of the word ‘proudly’ is oppression over
others, as

p: ۴۱

”Sura Al-’A’rāf, No. ٧, verse ٩ says: “... for they used to be unjust unto Our Signs

However, at the end of this verse, as a lesson and gazing-stock, with a short and very expressive sentence, the Qur’ān points to the evil end of the people of Pharaoh that
:they were drowned and destructed, where it says

”consider, then how was the end of the mischief-makers ...“

The Qur’ān does not uncover the matter here, because they had read the painful story of this disbelieving people in other verses of the Qur’ān and by this short
.sentence they may understand what they must understand

By the way, from among their ugly qualities entirely, the Qur’ān has emphasized on ‘making mischief’ which has a comprehensive concept. It includes both mischief in belief, speech and action, and mischief in individual and society. In fact, all their evil
,’deeds are gathered in the word ‘mischief

p: ٤٢

Solomon inherits David – knowledge of the language of the Birds granted to Solomon
– the Queen of Sheba

(١٥) وَلَقَدْ آتَيْنَا دَاوُدَ وَسُلَيْمَـنَ إِذْ عَمِلَا وَقَالَا الْحَمْدُ لِلّٰهِ الَّذِي فَضَّلَنَا عَلٰى كَثِيْرٍ مِّنْ عِبَادِهِ الْمُؤْمِنِيْنَ

And certainly We gave David and Solomon knowledge and they both said: ‘Praise “ ١٥ .
”.’ belongs to Allah, Who has favoured us above many of His believing servants

Commentary, verse: ١٥

The knowledge which has been given to David and Solomon may be the knowledge of Judgment; its reference is the verse which says: “... and We gave him wisdom and a clear judgment”, (١) and also with reference to the verse which says: “... and unto each (of them) We gave wisdom and knowledge. ...” (٢)

And it may be the knowledge of speaking with the birds, with reference to the verse which says: “... We have been taught the language of the birds, ...” (٣), or it may be the :knowledge of making the coat of mail, as the Qur’ān says

p: ٤٣

Sura Sād, No. ٣٨, verse ٢٠ –١

Sura Al-’Anbiyā’, No. ٢١, verse ٧٩ –٢

The Current Sura, verse ١٦ –٣

﴿And We taught him the art of making the coat of mail ...﴾ ﴿...﴾

But it is better to render the Qur'ānic word /'ilm/ in a general sense, that is the .knowledge of administration of the country

However, this verse speaks about two other great Divine prophets: David and .Solomon. Of course, there is only a hint to David but Solomon is explained more

Mentioning a part of the life story of these two prophets next to the story of Moses (a.s.) is for the sake that these two prophets were from among the prophets of the Children of Israel, too. The difference between their history and the history of other prophets is that these were more successful to establish a great government because of mental and social receptivity of the atmosphere of the Children of Israel, and they could expand the Divine religion by the help of their governmental power. Therefore, the style of explanation of the life story of other prophets, who encountered the severe opposition of their nations and sometimes they were expelled from their home and city, is not seen here, and the explanations are totally different. This clearly shows to what extend the difficulties may be solved and the path can become level if .the Divine callers succeed to form a government

However, here the words are about knowledge, ability, power, and dignity. It speaks about the submission of the birds and other creatures and, finally, about the severe struggle against idolatry through the way of logical invitation and, then, enjoying the power of government. And these things are the qualities that separate the life story of .these two prophets from that of other prophets

It is interesting that the Holy Qur'ān here has begun the statement with the issue of the 'merit of knowledge' which is

p: ۴۴

:the foundation of a righteous and powerful government. It says

And certainly We gave David and Solomon “

”... knowledge

A great deal of commentators have tried very much to find out what kind of knowledge it is that Allah bestowed on David and Solomon, and it is stated here ambiguously and not definitely, and as it was precisely said at the beginning of the commentary of the verse, some commentators, relying on some other verses of the Qur’ān, have considered it ‘the knowledge of judgment’: “...and We gave him wisdom and clear judgment.” (Sura Sād, No. ٣٨, verse ٢٠), “... and unto each (of them) We gave wisdom and knowledge ...” (Sura Al-’Anbiyā’, No. ٢١, verse ٧٩). And some commentators also with frame of reference to the verses under discussion, which speak of ‘the language of the birds’ have counted this knowledge as the knowledge of speaking with birds, while some others, with frame of reference to the verses that talk of the knowledge of ‘making the coat mail’, have specified this knowledge to it

However, it is clear that ‘knowledge’, here, has a vast meaning which includes the knowledge of monotheism, religious belief, religious laws, knowledge of judgment, and all knowledge and information which have been necessary for the formation of such extensive and powerful government. Its reason is that the establishment of a divine government basing on justice which is an equipped and free government, is not possible without enjoying a complete knowledge. Thus, the Qur’ān specifies the rank of knowledge in the human society and in establishment of government as the first stone of the foundation of this building

:And next to this sentence, from the tongue of David and Solomon, it continues saying

and they both said: ‘Praise belongs to Allah, Who has favoured us above many of ...“
”.’His believing servants

It is interesting that immediately after stating the great merit of ‘knowledge’ it speaks of ‘thanksgiving’ in order to make it clear that there is a thanksgiving for every blessing, and the reality of thanksgiving is that every blessing should be used in the same way that it has been created for; and these two great prophets did their best
.from their knowledge in formation of a Divine government

By the way, they introduced the criterion of their own superiority to others by having ‘knowledge’, not by having power and government, and they also applied thanksgiving for having knowledge not for other merits, because all values belong to
.’‘knowledge’ and all powers originate from ‘knowledge

This point is also noteworthy that they did thank for governing over a faithful people,
.since governing over a corrupted group, who are disbelievers, is not an honour

There arises a question here that why did they say in their thanksgiving that ‘He had favoured them above many of His believing servants’ and they did not say over all believing people, though they were prophets who were above all the people of their
?time

Using this kind of meaning may be for observing the principles of discipline and
.humility that one, in any rank, must not think of oneself above all

Or it is for the sake that they did not consider only a particular part of time but they considered the whole times, and we know that there have been some greater
.prophets than them during the history of man

(١٦) وَوَرِثَ سُلَيْمٌ-أَنْ دَاوُدَ وَقَالَ يَا أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ عَلَّمْنَا مَنطِقَ الطَّيْرِ وَأَوْتَيْنَا مِنْ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ إِنَّ هَذَا لَهُوَ الْفَضْلُ الْمُبِينُ

And Solomon inherited David and he said: ‘O people! We have been taught the “ ١٦ language of the birds, and we have been granted of everything; verily this is the ”.’manifest favour

Commentary,verse: ١٦

Point

The purpose of the Arabic word /wariθa/ in this verse is to inherit both wealth and government, not the knowledge and prophethood, because prophethood is not something to be inherited, and the knowledge of prophets is not heritable either since .it is not something to be acquired

:In this verse, at first it points to inheriting Solomon from his father David. It says

”... And Solomon inherited David “

Here, commentators have some different ideas as for the meaning of heritage and :that what that is

Some believe that it is only the heritage of knowledge because, according to their own .thought, prophets do not leave any heritage of their own properties

Some others have mentioned inheritance is confined to property and government, .because this word recalls that concept to the mind, before anything else

And same commentators have rendered it into the language of speaking with the .birds

But regarding to the fact that the verse is general and, in the later Qur’ānic sentences the words are also about both knowledge and all other merits, there is no reason to limit the

concept of the verse. Thus, Solomon had been the heir of all merits of his father. The traditions narrated from Ahl-ul-Bayt (a.s.) have reasoned to this verse before those who said that prophets do not leave any heritage and laid emphasis on the tradition which says: “We prophets do not leave any heritage”. They have reasoned that since the said tradition contrasts to the Book of Allah, it is invalid

We read in a tradition narrated from Ahl-ul-Bayt (a.s.) that when 'Abūbakr decided to take Fadak from Fatimah (a.s.) she (a.s.) heard of that decision and came to 'Abūbakr and said: “Is there any thing in the Book of Allah that you inherit from your father but I do not inherit from my father? This is a wonderful thing! Have you forgotten the Book of Allah and put it behind you when it says: ‘And Solomon inherited David?’” (1)

:Then the Qur'ān in this verse adds

and he said: ‘O people! We have been taught the language of the birds, and we ... “’have been granted of everything; verily this is the manifest favour

Some claim that the application of ‘language and speaking’ for non-human beings is not correct save as metaphor; but if a non-human being also utters some sounds and words which are meaningful and indicate some matters, there is no evidence not to call it ‘speaking’, since ‘speech’ is often any words that communicate a truth and a concept

Of course, we do not want to say that those special sounds that sometimes some animals produce because of anger, wrath, or pleasure and consent, or as the result of pain, or as a sign of affection unto their children are called language. No, these are some sounds that they bring forth out of their mouth at the time of a special mood.

But, as we see in the verses of the

Qur'ān, Solomon communicates some matters with hoopoe and he (a.s.) sends a message by the hoopoe and then he asks its answer from this bird

This shows that besides the sounds that they produce because of their moods, animals can speak in some particular conditions by the command of Allah. Another clear example is the explanation about the speech of the ant which will be mentioned later concerning the future verses of this Sura

Of course, the vast concept of /nuṭq/ (speech) has been used in the Qur'ān which, indeed, states the spirit and conclusion of it, and it is 'the statement of what is in mind', whether it is done by means of words and speech; or through other means, like the verse which says: "This is Our Book that speaks against you with justice..." (1) But we do not need to render the word /nuṭq/ in connection with the speech of Solomon and the birds into this sense; because according to the apparent of the above verses, Solomon was able to understand the special words that birds used for transferring their matters and he could speak with them

Contrast to the limitations that some commentators have cited for the Qur'ānic sentence: "... we have been granted of every thing ...", it has a vast meaning and it concludes all physical and spiritual means which were necessary for the formation of that Divine government and, basically, without it this statement will be imperfect

By the way, Allah has given some special knowledge to some particular persons and He has mentioned them in the Qur'ān

Adam had the knowledge of all things: "And He taught Adam all the names, ..." (Sura –1
(Al-Baqarah, No. ۲, verse ۳۱)

p: ۴۹

Sura Al-Jāthiyah, No. ۴۵, verse ۲۹ –۱

Khidr knew the inward knowledge and interpretation (so that Moses could be his –۲ student: “... ‘Shall I follow you that you teach me right conduct ...’ (Sura Al-Kahf, No. (۱۸, verse ۶۶

Yūsuf was taught the knowledge of interpretation of dreams: “... this is of what my –۳ (Lord has taught me. ...” (Sura Yūsuf, No. ۱۲, verse ۳۷

David was taught by Allah the knowledge of making the coat of mail: “And We –۴ (taught him the art of making the coat of mail ...” (Sura Al-’Anbiyā’, No. ۲۱, verse ۸۰

Solomon knew the language of birds: “...We have been taught the language of the –۵ (birds, ...” (Sura An-Naml, No. ۲۷, verse ۱۶

Āsif Burkhiyā (Solomon’s assistant) had the knowledge by which he could bring the’ –۶ royal throne (of the Queen of Sheba) from one country to another country: “One with whom was some knowledge (of a part) of the (Divine) Book said ...” (Sura An-Naml, (No. ۲۷, verse ۴۰

Ṭālūt knew the knowledge of army: “... ‘Verily Allah has chosen him over you, and –۷ He has increased him abundantly in knowledge and stature, ...” (Sura Al-Baqarah, No. (۲, verse ۲۴۷

The holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) and other prophets had the knowledge of Unseen: “... so –۸ He does not reveal His secrets to any,” “Except to whom He chooses as an apostle, ...” ((Sura Al-Jinn, No. ۷۲, verses ۲۶–۲۷

It is for this reason that it has been said that the prophets’ knowledge is ‘an intuitive .knowledge’ and it is bestowed on them through inspiration by Allah

:The Relation between Religion and Politics –۱

Contrast to what some short sighted persons think, religion is not only a collection of advice or affairs concerning to the private and personal life. Religion is a collection of some general and common laws of life and common programs which conclude the whole life of men and social issues in particular

The appointment of prophets to their missions is for the settlement of justice and equity. (Sura Al-Hadīd, No. ۵۷, verse ۲۵)

Religion is for breaking the chains of captivity of men and providing the freedom of human beings. (Sura Al-'A'rāf, No. ۷, verse ۱۵۷)

Religion is the cause of securing the oppressed from the grips of oppressors and tyrants, and putting an end to the course of their sovereignty

Finally, religion is a collection of education, and training men along the path of purification and making them complete. (Sura Al-Jumu'ah, No. ۶۲, verse ۲)

It is evident that earning these great aims without having a government is impossible. Who can establish justice with mere ethical recommendations so that he stops the domination of the oppressors over the oppressed

Who can break and take the chains of captivity from the hands and feet of those who are afflicted in it without being supported by a power

In a society where the means of spreading culture and propagation are in the hands of the vicious and mischief-makers, who can settle the correct principles of education, and foster the morals in the hearts

That is why we say that 'religion' and 'politics' are two inseparable elements. If religion separates from politics it

totally loses its arm of execution, and if politics separates from religion it will be .changed into a destructive element which moves along the path of its interests

If the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.) succeeded to spread this Divine religion quickly in the world, it was because, at the first opportunity, he started to form a government and .by means of the Islamic government he pursued the divine aims

Some other divine prophets who could do like that and succeeded, were able to spread the Divine call better, while some others of them who were in difficulties and the conditions did not let them to form a government, did not succeed to progress .very much

:The Divine Government and its Means -۲

It is interesting that in the life story of Solomon and David we clearly see that they succeeded to quickly root out the effects of polytheism and idolatry and to establish a government whose main means, according to the concerning verses, was knowledge and awareness in various fields. It was a system that Allah's Name was at the top of its programs. This system used to apply all the eligible powers and used even the .ability of a bird for reaching its aims

.It was a system that could control all devils and dominated over the oppressors

And, finally, it was a system which had both enough military force and elements of information, and some persons who had sufficient awareness and skill in different fields, and it had gathered all of these elements under the camp of belief and .Monotheism

:The Birds' Speech -۳

In the above verse and the verses which will come later in the story of hoopoe and Solomon, the birds' speech and the kind of their sense and understanding are .referred to explicitly

No doubt that birds, like other animals, in different circumstances make some various sounds that, with careful observation, we can recognize their states and situations by the kind of that sound and say which sound indicates to their anger, which one to their content, which sound is the reason of their hunger, and which one shows their whining. We can understand with which sound the animal calls its children and with which sound it warns them of coming a horrible event. This part of the birds' sound .contains no doubt and all of us are, more or less, acquainted with it

But the holy verses of this Sura apparently intend to say something beyond this matter. They talk about a kind of animal speaking in a secret way which carries some more minute subjects in it. They talk about understanding and a debate between birds and a human being. This meaning is surprising for some persons, but regarding to the various matters that the scientists have written in their books and the personal observation, and experiences that some other persons had concerning birds, it is not so surprising

We know some matters even more surprising than this in relation with the talent of .animals, and birds in particular

Some of them are so skilful in making houses and nests for them that they exceed our .engineers

Some of birds possess so much exact information about their future offspring and their needs and difficulties and they act so minutely concerning their salvation that is .surprising for all of us

Their foresight about the circumstance of weather, even from some months before, their awareness of earthquakes before they occur and even before that our .seismographs record the slightest quakes are well known

The training with which some animals are trained in our time, and the extraordinary jobs they do and many people have seen them in many circuses all denote to their wonderful intelligence. The marvelous acts of ‘ants’ and their wonderful civilization; .the marvels of the life of bees and their amazing finding the traces are famous

The recognition of the emigrating birds, which sometimes pave the distance between North Pole and South Pole, and their awareness of the circumstances of the ways .along this extraordinary long traveling are wonderful

The amazing information about Salmon-trout, when they emigrate in groups in deep seas, are generally some subjects that scientifically are certain and are reasons for the existence of an important stage of apprehension, or instinct, or whatever we may .call, in these animals

The existence of some extraordinary senses in animals, such as the system of radar in a bat, very strong sense of smell in some insects, the extraordinary extensive power of sight in some birds, and so on, are also some other evidences for the fact .that they are not weaker than us in anything

Keeping these things in mind, it does not seem wonderful that they have a special speech, too, and can speak with the person who is aware of the method of their .talking

In the verses of the Qur’ān, there are also some different points which refer to this meaning. For example, Sura Al-’An‘ām, No. ٦, verse ٣٨ says: “And there is no creature (that walks) on the earth nor a bird that flies with its two wings, but they are ”... .communities the like of you

In Islamic narrations there are a lot of traditions which refer to the animals’ speech and that of the birds, and even for each of them there have been cited some popular .statements whose explanation is very long

Imam Sādiq (a.s.) in a narration said that Imam Amir-ul-Mu'minīn Ali (a.s.) once told Ibn-'Abbās: "Verily Allah taught us the birds' speech as He taught Solomon, son of David, as well as the speech of every living creature in the land and sea." (1)

:The Explanation of a Tradition -۴

There has been recorded a tradition in some different books of Sunnites from the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.) which denotes: "We prophets do not leave any heritage, and whatever we leave must be used as alms (in the way of Allah)." Sometimes this very tradition has been cited in a form that its first sentence is omitted, like this: ".("Whatever we leave must be used as alms (in the way of Allah

The document of this tradition in those books is often ended to Abūbakr who took the rein of Muslims' affairs after the Prophet (p.b.u.h.), and when Haḍrat Fatimah (a.s.) or some other wives of the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) demanded Abūbakr their inheritance, .relying upon this narration, he did not give them any inheritance

This tradition is recorded by 'Muslim' in his Ṣaḥīḥ, Vol. ۳, P. ۱۳۷۹۰, by Bukhārī, in Kitāb-ul-Farā'id, chapter ۸, P. ۱۸۵, and some others have recorded it in their own books

It is worthy to note that in the latter document, through a tradition narrated by 'Āyishah, we read as follows: "(After the death of the Prophet (p.b.u.h.)), Fātimah and 'Abbās came to 'Abūbakr and demanded their heritage remained from the Prophet (p.b.u.h.). At that time they demanded their land in 'Fadak' and their share 'remained from Kheybar'. 'Abūbakr said: 'I heard from the Messenger of Allah who said: 'We do not leave any heritage, and whatever we leave is alms'. ' When

p: ۵۵

The commentaries of Aṣ-Ṣāfi, and Nūr-uth-Thaqalayn, the explanation of the verse -۱

Fatimah heard this statement she angrily left 'Abūbakr and she never spoke with him,
(even for one word, until the end of her life." (Ṣaḥīḥ Bukhārī, Part ٨, P. ١٨٥)

This tradition, of course, from different dimensions is objectionable and can be
:investigated, but what can be said in short here is as follows

This tradition is not consistent with the verses of the text of the Qur'ān, and – ١
according to the laws and principles we have, every tradition which does not adapt to
'the Book of Allah' is invalid and it cannot be taken as the tradition originated from the
(.Prophet (p.b.u.h.) or other immaculate ones (a.s

In the above-mentioned holy verse, we read that Solomon inheritance David, and the
apparent of the verse is general and it concludes properties, too. Concerning Yahyā
and Zechariah we read in the Qur'ān: "(One that) shall be my inheritor and the
(inheritor of the posterity of Jacob; ..." (١

Especially in respect to Zechariah, many commentators have emphasized on financial
aspects

Moreover, the apparent of the verses about inheritance in the Qur'ān is general and
envelops all. Maybe, it was for the same reason that Qurtabī, the famous Sunnite
Commentator, had to take the tradition as the strong verb and the most, not as a
general one. He has said that: this is like the sentence that Arabs say: "We community
of Arabs are the most hospital ones among people, (while it is not a general
(ordinance)." (٢

But it is clear that this statement nullifies the value of this tradition, because if we take
this excuse for the case of

p: ٥٦

Sura Maryam, No. ١٩, verse ٦ – ١

Tafsīr Qurtabī, Vol. ٧, P. ٤٨٨, – ٢

Solomon and Yahyā, other aspects that are concluded in it are not certain either

The above mentioned tradition is in contrast with other narrations which show that –
'Abūbakr decided to return Fadak to Fātimah, but some others hindered it, as it is
:cited in Sīrah Ḥalabī

Fatimah, the Prophet's daughter, came to 'Abūbakr while he was on the pulpit. She“
said: “O 'Abūbakr! Is the matter in the Book of Allah that your daughter inherits from
you but I do not inherit from my father?” 'Abūbakr wept and shed tears. Then he
came down of the pulpit, and wrote a later indicating that Fadak was turned back to
Fatimah (a.s.). At this time 'Umar entered and said: “What is this?” 'Abūbakr said: “I
wrote a letter to return the inheritance of Fatimah from her father to her.’ 'Umar said:
“If you do this, where from do you obtain the expenditure of the fight with the
enemies, now that Arabs have stood against you?” Then 'Umar caught the letter and
(tore it.”(1)

How could there be an explicit prohibition issued by the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) and Abubakr
would dare to oppose it? And why did 'Umar rely upon the needs of fight and did not
?rely on Prophet's tradition

Careful studying the above-mentioned narration shows that the Prophet's prohibition
was not in contemplation, the important thing, here, was the political issues of the
time. These are the things that remind one the statement of Ibn-'Abil-Hadīd Mu'tazily
who said: “I asked my teacher, Ali-ibn-Fāriqī, ‘Was Fatimah (a.s.) right in her claim?’
He answered: ‘Yes.’ I said: ‘Why did not 'Abūbakr give Fadak to her while he counted
her a truthful one?’ My teacher smiled with a very

p: ۵۷

meaningful smile and expressed a beautiful smooth statement, though he did not
:customarily joke. He said

If today he gave Fadak to her, she would come the following day and claimed the
caliphate for her husband, and she would unsettle him of his position, and he had
[\(neither any excuse to say nor any thing to agree with.\)](#)⁽¹⁾

(A Famous Tradition from the Prophet (p.b.u.h –۳

In many books of great sects of Islam, there is recorded a famous tradition which
[\(says: “The scholars are the heirs of the prophets.”\)](#)^(۲)

It is also narrated from the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) who said: “Verily the prophets did not
leave any Dīnār nor Dirham (drachma) as heritage.” (’Usūl-i-Kāfī, Vol. ۱ Chapter: ‘The
(Attribute of knowledge’, tradition No. ۹

It seems from these two traditions that the main aim has been to make it clear that
the capital and the honour of the Divine prophets had been their knowledge. The most
important thing that they left behind was the issue of guidance, and those who
earned some larger share from this knowledge are the essential heirs of prophets,
without that they seek for the properties remained from the prophets. Later this
tradition has been paraphrased and has been misused by corruption in transmission,
and probably the Arabic phrase /mātaraknāhu ṣadaqatun/ (whatever we leave must
be used as alms (in the way of Allah)), which had been understood from some
.narrations, has been added to it

To shorten our discussion, we conclude this statement with an explanation from
Fakhr-i-Rāzī, the famous commentator of

p: ۵۸

The explanation of Nahj-ul-Balāqah, by ’Ibn-’Abil-Ḥadīd, Vol. ۱۶, P. ۲۸۴ –۱
Sahīḥ Tarmathī, Chapter knowledge, Tradition No. ۱۹; and Sunan Ibn-i-Mājih, the –۲
introductory to tradition No. ۱۷

Sunnites, who has cited about Sura An-Nisā', No. ٤, verse ١١. He says that one of the allotments that has been set for this verse (the verse of children's heritage) is what is the majority of the jurists of Sunnites believe and it indicates that prophets (a.s.) do not leave any thing as heritage, while Shi'ite have (generally) opposed this matter. It has been narrated that when Fatimah (a.s.) demanded her heritage, they deprived her from it attaching to the Prophet's tradition which says: "We prophets do not leave any heritage, and whatever we leave must be used as alms (in the way of Allah)" At this time Fatimah (a.s.) reasoned to the generality of the above mentioned verse (the verse of children's heritage) as if she wanted to point to this fact that the whole Qur'ān cannot be appropriated with a single narration

Then, Fakhr-i-Rāzī adds: "Shi'ites say that supposing that allotment of the Qur'ān be permissible with a single narration, it is not permissible here because of following three reasons

This contrasts the explicit text of the Qur'ān which says that Zechariah asked Allah .١ to give him a child who could inherit from him and the posterity of Jacob. And also the Qur'ān says that Solomon inherited from David. These verses cannot be rendered into the heritage of 'knowledge' and 'religion', since this is a kind of figurative heredity and these prophets taught knowledge and religion to their children, not that they took it from themselves and transferred it to them. The real heritage is considered only in .(wealth (that it be taken from one and be given to another

Another matter is that how is it possible that 'Abūbakr could be aware of this .٢ subject, which he did not need, but Fatimah (a.s.), Abbās, and Ali (a.s.), who were of the greatest virtuous and knowledgeable ones and were dealing with the issue of the Prophet's heritage, were not aware of it? How

could it be possible that the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) taught this tradition to the one who did
?not need it and restrained it from the one who needed it

The Arabic phrase /mā taraknāhu ṣadaqah/ (whatever we leave must be used as .۳
alms (in the way of Allah) is next to the Arabic phrase /lā nuwarriθ/ which means: the
properties we have set apart for the purpose of alms do not come inside the circle of
"... .heritage, not other than that

Then, Fakhr-i-Rāzī gives a short answer to the above-mentioned known reasoning
and says: "After speaking with Abūbakr, Fatimah (a.s.) became content with that
speaking. Besides, the consensus has reached to this that the word of Abūbakr is
(right." (۱

But it is clear that the answer of Fakhr-i-Rāzī is not sufficient for the abovementioned
reasoning, because, as was narrated from the Sunnite famous sources, Fatimah (a.s.)
not only was not contented but she was so angry that she did not speak even for a
.word with Abūbakr until the end of her life

Moreover, how could there be a consensus upon this subject while Ali, Fātimah (a.s.)
?and Abbās, who had been trained in the center of revelation, had opposed it

p: ۶۰

(١٧) وَحَشَرَ لِسُلَيْمٍ - اِنْ جُنُودُهُ مِنَ الْجِنِّ وَالْإِنْسِ وَالطَّيْرِ

فَهُمْ يُوزَعُونَ

And gathered together unto Solomon his hosts of jinn and men and birds and they “ ١٧ .
” .were kept in order and ranks

Commentary,verse: ١٧

In different occasions the Qur’ān has talked about jinn and one of the suras of the
:Qur’ān is also called Jinn. Now, here, it refers to some of their qualities

Jinn is a creature which has sensation and has been addressed by Allah, where the
(Qur’ān says: “O’ assembly of the jinn and mankind!...” (١)

Some of Jinn are believers while some others of them are disbelievers. They are male
and female and naturally they have venereal desire. Some of them worked for
Solomon as builders and divers, as the Qur’ān says: “And the Satans, (including) every
(builder and diver.” (٢)

It is understood from the verses of the current Sura and those of Sura Saba’, No. ٣٤,
that the government of Solomon had not an ordinary circumstance but it was formed
by some extraordinary events and various miracles, some of which are mentioned in
this Sura (like Solomon’s governing over Jinn and birds), recognition of the talk of ants,
and speaking with ‘Hoopoe’, and another part of it has been mentioned in Sura Saba’,
.No. ٣٤

p: ٤١

Sura Al-’An‘ām, No. ٤, verse ١٣٠, and Sura Ar-Rahmān, No. ٥٥, verse ٣٣ -١

Sura Şād, No. ٣٨, verse ٣٧ -٢

In fact, Allah showed His Might in making appear this great government and the forces it possessed; and we know that, from the view point of a monotheist, these affairs are easy, simple and untroubled for Allah, the Mighty

:By this verse, the Qur'ān says

”... And gathered together unto Solomon his hosts of jinn and men and birds “

The number of his forces was so large that, in order to regulate the army, it was ordered that the primary rows of forces should stop until when the last rows could :move and reach others. The verse continues saying

”.and they were kept in order and ranks ...“

The Qur'ānic word /yūza‘ūn/ is derived from /waza‘a/ in the sense of ‘to restrain, to hold back’. When this word is used in respect to army it means that the first part of the .army should be stopped until the ending part of it joins, and they would not be divided

The Arabic word /waza‘/ is also applied in the sense of ‘avarice, and intensive interest’ .so that it hinders man from other affairs

It is understood from this application that the forces of Solomon were both abundant .and they worked under a special order

The Qur'ānic word /ḥušira/ is derived from /ḥašr/ which means: ‘bringing out the crowd of army from the resting place’, and causing them to start toward the battle-field, and the like. It is understood from both this meaning and the meaning used in the next verse that Solomon had led an army to a place, but it is not quite clear that which one it is among Solomon’s military expeditions. Taking the content of the next verse in mind, which speaks about reaching Solomon to the

land of ants, some say that it had been a region near Tā'if, while some others have
.said it had been a land near Syria

However, since the statement of this matter had not any effect from the point of
.ethical and educational aspects, it has not been spoken of

By the way, some commentators have discussed whether the whole human beings, jinn, and birds were the army of Solomon, or a part of them formed his army. This discussion seems rather needless, because undoubtedly Solomon did not govern the whole earth and the realm of his government was Syria, Jerusalem, and probably some other lands around there. It is also understood from the later verses that Solomon had not any dominion over Yemen at that time, and he gained his authority
.over there after the event of 'hoopoe' and the submission of the Queen of Sheba

The Qur'ānic phrase /tafaqqad-aṭ-ṭayr/, mentioned in the coming verses, shows that among the birds, which were in the obedience of Solomon, there was a hoopoe that when Solomon did not see it over there he asked about it. If all birds were included and there were thousands of hoopoes among them, this meaning could not be
(correct. (Be careful

p: ٩٣

(١٨) حَتَّىٰ إِذَا أَتَوْا عَلَىٰ وَادِ النَّمْلِ قَالَتْ نَمْلَةٌ يَا أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ -مُلُ

ادْخُلُوا مَسَاكِنَكُمْ لَا يَحْطَمَنَّكُمْ سُلَيْمٌ -أَنْ وَجُنُودُهُ

وَهُمْ لَا يَشْعُرُونَ

Until when they came to the Valley of Ants, an ant said: ‘O you ants! Get into your “ .١٨
”.’habitations, so that Solomon and his hosts may not crush you, being unaware

Commentary,verse: ١٨

The Arabic word /naml/ philologically means ‘creeping with small feet’. The Qur’ānic word /namlatun/, because of its Arabic nunnation, can be meant ‘a big ant which is a commander’. In this case, there is commandership and administrationship in the life of ants. This nunnation can be meant as the sign of uncertainty of the ant. In this case, the message of the verse is that if an undefined one gives a sympathetic warning that .warning must be attended to

However, Solomon with this great army started and went until they reached the valley of ants. Here, an ant, addressing other ants, said that they should go into their dwellings, so that Solomon and his army might not crush them while they are :unaware. The verse says

Until when they came to the Valley of Ants, an ant said: ‘O you ants! Get into your “
”.’habitations, so that Solomon and his hosts may not crush you, being unaware

There are some explanations to say that how this ant became aware of the presence
of Solomon and his hosts in that

land, and how it announced this happening to other ants, which will be referred to
.later

By the way, it is understood from this sentence that the justice of Solomon was made
manifest to even the ants because the sentence implicitly means if the hosts are
aware of the existence of the ants they will not tread that weak animal, then if they
.tread the ants it is because they do not know it

p: ۶۵

(١٩) فَتَبَسَّمَ ضَاحِكاً مِنْ قَوْلِهَا وَقَالَ رَبِّ أَوْزِعْنِي أَنْ أَشْكُرَ نِعْمَتِكَ الَّتِي أَنْعَمْتَ عَلَيَّ وَعَلَى وَالِدَيَّ وَأَنْ أَعْمَلَ صَالِحاً تَرْضَاهُ
وَأَدْخِلْنِي بِرَحْمَتِكَ فِي عِبَادِكَ الصَّالِحِينَ

Then he smiled, laughing at its words, and said: ‘My Lord! Dispose me that I may “ .١٩
be thankful for Your bounty, which You have bestowed on me and my parents, and
that I may do righteousness such as You are pleased with, and admit me, by Your
”.’mercy, among Your righteous servants

Commentary,verse: ١٩

One of the principles and conditions of leadership and administration is tolerance. Solomon (a.s.) heard that the ant said about him and his troops that they were unaware, but he (a.s.) did not show it and he only smiled. Criticism and a right speech must be heard from any one and it must be received, because accepting criticism is a value. Solomon admired the word of the ant and smiled. Commentators are divided as for what was the cause of Solomon’s smile. It appears that the self of this event was a wonderful matter that an ant called other ants to beware of the great army of Solomon and that it attributed that army of being unaware. This amazing affair :caused Solomon’s laugh, as the verse says

”... ,Then he smiled, laughing at its words “

Some of commentators have said that this smile was a smile of joy, because Solomon understood that even ants confessed to the justice of Solomon and his troops and .accepted their piety

Some others have said that his joy was for the reason that Allah had given him such a power that at the time of the great anxiety and excitement of the army he was not neglectful of the sound of an ant either

However, here Solomon turned to the presence of Allah and asked a few things as follows

and said: ‘My Lord! Dispose me that I may be thankful for Your bounty, which You ... “
”... ,have bestowed on me and my parents

Solomon asked Allah to teach him how he could thank for the great bounties that He had granted him and his parents to be able to use them in the way that He had commanded and was the cause of His pleasure so that he would not deviate from the right path, since being thankful for those abundant favours is not possible save with His succour and aid

:The next thing he asked for was as follows

”... ,and that I may do righteousness such as You are pleased with ...“

This statement points to this matter that what was important for Solomon was not the remaining of that great army and his government with those vast organizations, it was important for him to do such righteous deeds that caused His pleasure. And in view of the fact that the Arabic word /’a‘mala/ is a verb in present tense, which is used in that language for the continuation of the action, it is an evidence that he asked Allah for the continuation of this succour

:Finally, the third thing he asked was that he said

”?and admit me, by Your mercy, among Your righteous servants ...“

(٢٠) وَتَفَقَّدَ الطَّيْرَ فَقَالَ مَا لِيَ لَا أَرَى الْهُدْهُدَ أَمْ كَانَ مِنَ الْغَائِبِينَ

(٢١) لَأُعَذِّبَنَّهُ عَذَابًا شَدِيدًا أَوْ لَأَذْبَحَنَّهُ أَوْ لِيَأْتِيَنَّ بِسُلْطَانٍ مُبِينٍ

(٢٢) فَمَكَتْ عُيْرٌ بَعِيدٌ فَقَالَ أَحَطْتُ بِمَا لَمْ تُحِطْ بِهِ وَجِئْتُكَ مِنْ سَبَإٍ بِنَبَأٍ يَقِينٍ

And he reviewed the birds; then he said: ‘How is it with me that I do not see the “ .٢٠
”?hoopoe? Or is it that he is of the absentees

Certainly will I chastise him with a terrible chastisement, or will I slaughter him, or “ .٢١
”.(he brings me a clear reason (for his absence

But the hoopoe tarried not long, then he (came and) said: ‘I have comprehended “ .٢٢
that which you have not comprehended, and I have come to you from Sheba with a
”.’sure tiding

Commentary, verses: ٢٠–٢٢

Through this group of verses, the Qur’ān has pointed to another height of the amazing life of Solomon, and reiterates the event of hoopoe, and the Queen of Sheba. At first it speaks about Solomon (a.s.) and hoopoe, whom he (a.s.) sought after but he :did not see it. The verse says

”... ;And he reviewed the birds “

This phrase clearly indicates that Solomon (a.s.) was carefully observing the circumstances of the country and his government in a manner that even the absence .of a bird was not concealed before his eyes

No doubt that the purpose of the bird, here, is the hoopoe, since in the continuation of
:the statement the Qur’ān adds

”... ?then he said: ‘How is it with me that I do not see the hoopoe ...“

”?Or is it that he is of the absentees ...“

Concerning the fact that how Solomon recognized that hoopoe was not present among the gathering of birds, some commentators have said: that it was for the sake that, at the time of his traveling, birds did cast a shadow over his head and, because of the existence of an opening (hole) in that vast canopy, he found out the absence of
.the hoopoe

Some others have considered a mission for the hoopoe in his organizations and they have said that the hoopoe was commissioned to find the places where there was
.water and when the bird had gone to search for water, he (a.s.) found it absent

However, this statement that at first he said: “... I do not see the hoopoe ...” and then he added “... Or is it that he is of the absentees ...” may point to this matter that whether the hoopoe is absent without having a plausible excuse or it has been absent
.with a plausible excuse

An way, an organized, ordered, and powerful government has to put all movements, activities, and actions and reactions that happen in its country and realm under consideration; and it must not neglect even the presence and absence of a bird, an
.ordinary agent, and this is a great lesson

Finally, some other commentators have said that the objective of hoopoe, here, is a particular ‘Hoopoe’. Their reference is the existence of Alif and Lām at the beginning of the Arabic word, ‘Al-Hudhud’, as well as the hoopoe’s power of anthropology and
its theological ability. The explanation of

(this meaning will be offered later. (the commentary of Furqān, and Fi-Zilāl

Once Abūḥanifah asked Imam Sādiq (a.s.): “Why did Solomon ask only about hoopoe among all birds?” The Imam (a.s.) said: “Its reason is for the fact that a hoopoe sees the existence of water inside the earth, the same as we see oil in a crystal container.”

((Majma‘-ul-Bayān, the Commentary

As for the punishment of the hoopoe, some commentators have mentioned a few examples; including separating it from its fellow, pulling off its feathers, putting it under sunshine, banishing it from Solomon’s court, or putting it in the same cage with
(an enemy. (The commentaries of Rūh-ul-Bayān and Kanz-ud-Daqa’iq

One point, however, must be noted that reviewing and being kind to inferiors, visiting their work, and asking about their affairs are among the Islamic, ethical, social, educational, and administrative principles

Then, in order not to judge in its absence, and in the mean-while the absence of the hoopoe does not affect other birds, still less the persons who undertook some sensitive and important jobs, Solomon added

Certainly will I chastise him with a terrible chastisement, or will I slaughter him, or he “
”.(brings me a clear reason (for his absence

The purpose of the Arabic word /sultān/, here, is a reason which causes one’s authority and ability to prove one’s mind, and the Arabic word /mubīn/ is an emphasis .on the matter that this faulty one must certainly bring a clear reason for his own fault

Solomon (a.s.), in fact, without judging in its absence, threatened the offender by the necessary chastisement if the fault is proved. He even considered two stages for his threat in order that it could be proportional to the kind of the sin: the stage of .punishment without execution, and the stage of execution

By the way, he showed that he surrendered to proof and logic even in front of a weak .bird and he would never rely on his power and abilities

”... ,But the hoopoe tarried not long “

The hoopoe returned and, addressing Solomon, said that it had known something which he (a.s.) did not know and it was an assured news from the land of Sheba. The :verse says

then he (came and) said: ‘I have comprehended that which you have not... “
”.’comprehended, and I have come to you from Sheba with a sure tiding

As if the hoopoe has seen the signs of anger in Solomon’s face. Then, in order to remove his distress, the bird shortly and closely announced of an important matter that Solomon, even with his whole knowledge, was not aware of it. Then, when the anger of Solomon was lightened, Hoopoe began explaining it, which will be described .through later verses

It is worthy nothing that Solomon’s troops, and even the birds that obeyed him, had felt such a freedom, security, and daring in Solomon’s justice that, without any fear Hoopoe frankly and explicitly says: “... ‘I have comprehended that which you have not
”... ,comprehended

The Hoopoe’s treatment with Solomon was not like the treatment of the flattering men of courts with the tyrannical kings, who, for communicating a fact at first flatter and make

themselves so low before them as an insignificant atom. Then they humbly state their aim inside many sorts of flatteries and never try to deliver a definite statement; so .they always use some delicate allusions lest the king's feeling be a little injured

Yes, the hoopoe clearly said that its absence was not unreasonable and he had .brought Solomon some news that he was not aware of it

By the way, this meaning is a great lesson for all human beings that there may be a small creature, like hoopoe, which knows a matter that the most knowledgeable man of the people of the time is unaware of it; and no one should be proud of his .knowledge even he is Solomon with that vast knowledge of prophecy

p: ۷۲

(٢٣) إِنَّـى وَجَدْتُ امْرَأَةً تَمْلِكُهُمْ وَأُوتِيَتْ مِنْ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ وَلَهَا عَرْشٌ عَظِيمٌ

(٢٤) وَجَدْتُهَا وَقَوْمَهَا يَسْجُدُونَ لِلشَّمْسِ مِنْ دُونِ اللّهِ وَزَيَّنَ لَهُمُ الشَّيْطَانُ أَعْمَالَهُمْ فَصَدَّهُمْ عَنِ السَّبِيلِ فَهُمْ لَا يَهْتَدُونَ

Verily I found a woman ruling over them, and she has been given of everything, “ .٢٣
”and she possesses a magnificent throne

I found her and her people prostrating to the sun instead of Allah, and Satan has “ .٢٤
made their deeds fair-seeming to them and he has barred them from the (right) way,
”so they are not guided aright

Commentary, verses: ٢٣-٢٤

However, Hoopoe explained the event of going to the land of Sheba and its Queen
:under the name of Bilqiys, as follows

Verily I found a woman ruling over them, and she has been given of everything, and “
”she possesses a magnificent throne

By these three short sentences, the hoopoe told Solomon nearly all qualifications of the country of Sheba and that how it was governed. First of all, it said that it was a habitable country with all kinds of merits and potentialities. The next matter was that a woman was ruling over there who had a very glorious court, perhaps even more glorious than the organizations of Solomon, since though the hoopoe had certainly seen Solomon’s throne it mentioned that of the Queen as ‘a magnificent throne’. By this speech, the hoopoe made Solomon understand that he should not think that the

entire world was in the realm of his government and that the great throne and
.magnificence was allocated only to him

By hearing this news, Solomon began contemplating, but the hoopoe did not give him
:time and added another amazing matter, when it said

”... ,I found her and her people prostrating to the sun instead of Allah “

The Hoopoe explains that Satan has dominated over them and has so ornamented
their deeds to them that they boast of worshipping the sun, and thus Satan has
hindered them from the right way and they have so engaged in idolatry that I do not
:believe they return easily from that way. The verse continues saying

and Satan has made their deeds fair-seeming to them and he has barred them ... “
”.from the (right) way, so they are not guided aright

In this way, the hoopoe made clear the spiritual and religious situation of those people
and announced that they had earnestly fallen in idolatry, and their government
encouraged them to adorning the sun, so people usually follow the religion of their
.kings

Their idol temples and their other circumstances show that they insist on paving this
wrong way: they like it and they boast of it. In the conditions that both the whole
.people and government are wrongly on one line, their guidance is very improbable

That marvellous story indicates that some animals possess a high understanding,
such as hoopoe who understood and realized some concepts, like: man and woman,
crown and throne, government and ownership, monotheism and idolatry, sun and
prostration, Satan and his ornamentations, right and wrong, guidance and
.misguidance

(٢٥) أَلَا يَسْجُدُوا لِلَّهِ الَّذِي يُخْرِجُ الْخَبَاءَ فِي السَّمَاوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ وَيَعْلَمُ مَا تُخْفُونَ وَمَا تُعْلِنُونَ

(٢٦) اللَّهُ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا هُوَ رَبُّ الْعَرْشِ الْعَظِيمِ

So that they prostrate not themselves to Allah, Who brings forth what is hidden in “ .٢٥
” .the heavens and the earth and knows what you hide and what you reveal

Allah, there is no god but He! Is the Lord of ‘Arsh, the Mighty (throne of Supreme “ .٢٦
” .(Authority

Commentary, verses: ٢٥-٢٦

The Arabic word /xab’/ means ‘concealed and hidden’. Ali (a.s.) Says: “(The value of)
(man is hidden under his tongue.” (١)

The growth of plants, as well as falling rains, are the clear examples of bringing forth
.those which are hidden in the heavens and the earth

The ears (of corn) are hidden inside a corn and the Might of Allah brings it forth from
inside of it. All the things that alter from potentiality to actuality are the extensions of
:this very verse. However, it says

So that they prostrate not themselves to Allah, Who brings forth what is hidden in “
” .the heavens and the earth and knows what you hide and what you reveal

The Qur’ānic word /xab’/, which means anything hidden and concealed, here points to
the omnipotence of Allah’s knowledge due to the unseen of heavens and earth. Thus,
the

p: ٧٥

verse means why they do not prostrate themselves to the Lord Who knows the
.unseen of the heavens and the earth and the secrets hidden in them

Some commentators have rendered it to rain (respecting the heavens) and plants
(respecting the earth), this in fact, is from the kind of statement of a clear extension

Alike them are those commentators who have commented this phrase upon ‘bringing
,’out the creatures from the unseen of nonexistence into existence

It is interesting that the holy verse firstly speaks of the knowledge of Allah unto ‘the
secrets hidden in the heavens and the earth’, and then it refers to the secrets
.concealed in the hearts of people

Why the hoopoe, among all attributes of Allah (s.w.t.), emphasized on the issue of His
knowledge due to unseen and seen in the macrocosm and microcosm, it may be in
relation to the fact that Solomon, with all his abilities and knowledge, was not aware
of the country of Sheba and its qualities, and it says that we must seek the grace of
.the Lord for Whom nothing is concealed

Or it is in relation to the known matter which is said that hoopoe has a special sense
by which it can understand the existence of water inside the land that contains it.
Then it speaks of Allah Who is aware of all the things which are concealed in the world
.of existence

:At last, the hoopoe concludes his saying with the following statement

Allah, there is no god but He! Is the Lord of ‘Arsh, the Mighty (throne of Supreme “
”.(Authority

p: ۷۶

Thus, the hoopoe emphasized on ‘unity of worship’ and ‘Unity of Lordship’ of Allah
.and the negation of any polytheism, and then put an end to his speech

By the way, what is cited in this part of the verse contains a lot of points which can be
.effective in the life of all human beings and in the process of all governments

The chief of a government, or an administrator, must be so careful and aware of – ١
the order of his organizations that he recognizes and realizes even the absence of an
.ordinary and insignificant member, and pursues its affairs

He must be careful of the offence of a single member and, in order not to affect – ٢
.others, he must apply the necessary precautions

No one should be judged in his absence, or to pass a judgment by default. The one – ٣
.should be allowed to defend himself if possible

The amount of forfeit must proportionate to the crime. So, for every crime a – ٤
.suitable punishment must be decided, and hierarchy should be observed, too

Everybody, even the greatest powers of the society, must submit to reason and – ٥
.logic though the reason is uttered by a very insignificant person

There must exist so much freedom and explicitness in the atmosphere of the – ٦
society that, at the necessary time, even an ordinary person can tell the chief of the
government: “I have comprehended that which you have not comprehended.”[\(١\)](#)

Sometimes some ordinary persons or the smallest ones get information of – ٧
something that the greatest scientists and the most powerful ones are unaware of it,
.and we must never be proud of our knowledge

p: ٧٧

In the society of human beings, the reciprocal needs are so much so that – ۸
.sometimes some great men, such as Solomon, are dependant on a bird

Though there are many eligibilities in women, and even this very story shows that – ۹
the Queen of Sheba possessed an extraordinary understanding and perspicacity, the
leadership of a government is not consistent with the situation of their spirit and body;
so the hoopoe also surprised of it and said: “Verily I found a woman ruling over them,
[\(...](#)” [\(۱](#)

People often have the same religion that their rulers have. Therefore, we read in – ۱۰
this story that the hoopoe says: “I found her and her people prostrating to the sun ...”
(.The words are first about the prostration of the Queen and then that of the people

p: ۷۸

Current Sura, verse ۲۳ – ۱

(٢٧) قَالَ سَنَنْظُرُ أَصَدَقْتَ أَمْ كُنْتَ مِنَ الْكَاذِبِينَ

(٢٨) اذْهَبْ بِكِتَابِي هَذَا فَالْقِهِ إِلَيْهِمْ ثُمَّ تَوَلَّ عَنْهُمْ فَانظُرْ مَاذَا يَرْجِعُونَ

Solomon, after hearing hoopoe's information,) said: 'Soon we will see whether) " .٢٧
".you have told the truth or whether you are of the liars

Go you with this letter of mine, and throw it down unto them, then turn away from " .٢٨
".them, and (wait to) see what (answer) they return

Commentary,verses: ٢٧-٢٨

The Divine prophets' communication and writing letters to disbelievers and polytheists has a long background, and the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.) did it, too. He (p.b.u.h.) wrote some letters to the rulers of several countries, such as Iran and Byzantine. In order to reach to some leading and cultural aims, sending messages, advisors, cultural counselors, officers, and taking the lead in these affairs had been .the conduct of the divine prophets

Of course, when confronting some complicated systems and governments, we cannot encounter them simply, and, thus, recognizing them secretly and far from the eyes is .the deepest kind of cognitions

Therefore, Solomon carefully listened to the words of the hoopoe and began thinking. Solomon might mostly thought that that news was right, and there was no reason for it to be a lie so great. But since it was not a simple issue and it related to the fate of a country and a great nation, he should not suffice

only to the statement of a single informer, and he ought to investigate more about
:this sensitive subject. Thus, the Qur'ān announces

Solomon, after hearing hoopoe's information,) said: 'Soon we will see whether you) "
".have told the truth or whether you are of the liars

This statement clearly proves that for important matters, which relate to the fate of
people, one must pay attention to the information received from a simple member
.and soon it must be sufficiently researched about

Solomon did neither accuse nor condemn hoopoe, nor did he verify its speech without
:any proof, but he took it as the cause of a research. He said

Go you with this letter of mine, and throw it down unto them, then turn away from "
".them, and (wait to) see what (answer) they return

p: ٨٠

(٢٩) قَالَتْ يَا أَيُّهَا الْمَلَأُ إِنَّ سِي أُلْقِيَ إِلَيَّ كِتَابٌ كَرِيمٌ

(٣٠) إِنَّهُ مِنْ سُلَيْمٍ - إِنْ وَإِنَّهُ بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

(٣١) أَلَّا تَعْلَمُوا عَلَيَّ وَأُتُونِي مُسْلِمِينَ

When the Queen of Sheba received the letter,) she said: ‘O chiefs! Verily there) “ ٢٩
”has been thrown unto me a noble letter

Verily, it is from Solomon; and verily it is: ‘In the Name of Allah. The Beneficent, “ ٣٠
”.’the Merciful

”Exalt not yourselves against me, and come to me in submission “ ٣١

Commentary, verses: ٢٩-٣١

Guidance and preaching must be delivered kindly and mercifully; beginning with the
.’holy phrase: ‘In the Name of Allah, the Beneficent, the Merciful

Solomon (a.s.) wrote a very short and comprehensive letter and, giving it to the
hoopoe, he told the bird to throw it down unto them and then return and wait in a
.corner to see what reaction they would have

It is understood from the Qur’ānic phrase “Throw it down unto them” that the hoopoe
should throw it down when the Queen of Sheba was sitting in the gathering among
her people so that there would remain no room for forsaking and denying it. This also
makes it clear that there is no proof for the commentary of some commentators who
have said the hoopoe entered the castle of the Queen of Sheba and her room and
threw the letter on her chest or her throat, though it is not so inconsistent with the
sentence mentioned in the next verse

”which says: “...Verily there has been thrown unto me a noble letter

The Queen of Sheba opened the letter and was informed of its content. Since she had formerly heard of the fame of Solomon and the content of the letter indicated that he had taken a severe decision about the country of Sheba, she fell into a deep thought; and since she used to consult with the chiefs of her entourage, she invited them. As
:the Qur’ān says

When the Queen of Sheba received the letter,) she said: ‘O chiefs! Verily there has) “
”.been thrown unto me a noble letter

Had the Queen of Sheba truly not seen the bringer of the letter? But, with the content of the letter, she felt the nobility of the letter and she never thought that it might be a
.fabricated letter

Or she saw the letter with her own eyes, and its surprising circumstance proved that there was a reality over there and it was not an ordinary thing. Whatever it was, she
.relied on the letter with certainty

The matter that the Queen says that the letter is a noble and worthy one, may be for the magnificent content of it, or for its beginning which began with the name of Allah,
(and its ending was correctly signed and sealed;△

or its sender had been a noble person, each of which has been guessed by the

p: ٨٢

An Islamic tradition denotes that the seal of a letter shows its nobility. (The Qur’ānic –) commentaries of Majma‘-ul-Bayān, Al-Mīzā, and Qurtubī) Another tradition indicates when the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.) decided to write a letter to the king of Iran, he was told that they did not accept any letter without sealing. Then the holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) ordered that a ring should be made and on its bezel had to be carved “Lā ’ilāha ’illallāh, Muhammad Rasūl-ul-lāh”. Then he sealed the letter with it. (Qurtubī, the
(explanation of the verse

commentators. Or all of them may be found in this consistent concept, because there
.is no contradictory between them

It is true that they were sun-worshippers, but we know that many of the idolaters
believed in Allah, too, and called Him as the Lord of lords. They counted His respect
.and glorification important

:Then, the Queen of Sheba referred to the content of the letter when she said
Verily, it is from Solomon; and verily it is: ‘In the Name of Allah. The Beneficent, the “
”.’Merciful

”.Exalt not yourselves against me, and come to me in submission “

It is not probable that Solomon had written the letter with these very Arabic phrases;
therefore the above-mentioned phrases can be paraphrased, or they are the
.summary of Solomon’s letter that the Queen of Sheba reiterated for her people

It is interesting that the content of this letter was indeed not more than three
sentences: one sentence was the name of Allah, and the statement of His attributes
.of mercifulness and compassionateness

The second sentence was a recommendation for controlling the low desire and
abundance of self-superiority, which is the origin of many personal and social
.corruptions

And the third one was to submit to the truth. And if we carefully notice them, there
.was nothing more which was necessary to be mentioned

Solomon wants the Queen with her throne to be brought to him – He who had the knowledge of a part of the Book offers to bring the Queen with her throne within the twinkling of the eye – the Queen surrenders and embraces the Truth

(٣٢) قَالَتْ يَا أَيُّهَا الْمَلَأُ أَفْتُونِي فِي أَمْرِي مَا كُنْتُ قَاطِعَةً أَمْرًا حَتَّى تَشْهَدُونِ

(٣٣) قَالُوا نَحْنُ أَوْلَا قُوَّةً وَأَوْلُوا بِأَسْسَادٍ شَدِيدِ وَالْأَمْرُ إِلَيْكِ فَانظُرِي مَاذَا تَأْمُرِينَ

She said: ‘O chiefs! Pronounce to me respecting my affair; no affair have I “ .٣٢
”.’decided except in your presence

They said: ‘We possess force and we possess great might. The affair rests with “ .٣٣
”.you; so see what you will command

Commentary, verses: ٣٢–٣٣

The Queen of Sheba, Bilqiys, was a wise intelligent one and possessed a high standard of the ability of recognition. She had also some men and counselors with whom she used to propound the news and events of the locality. Therefore, after being aware of the content of Solomon’s letter and informing it to her people, she, addressing them, said as follows

She said: ‘O chiefs! Pronounce to me respecting my affair; no affair have I decided “
”.’except in your presence

By this action of hers, she wanted to attract their attentions to her and, thus, strengthen her situation among them. By the meantime, she wanted to estimate and .study the amount of their agreement with her decisions

The Arabic holy word /ʾaftūnī/ is derived from /fatwā/ which originally means ‘the proper and correct judgment in complicated affairs’. By this means, the Queen of Sheba both told them the complexity of the issue, and made them attentive to this matter that they should take care of expressing their views, so that they might not go .a wrong way

The Qur’ānic word /tašhadūn/ is derived from /šuhūd/ in the sense of ‘presence’, a .presence which is accompanied with cooperation and consultation

:Then, in the next verse it says

They said: ‘We possess force and we possess great might. The affair rests with you; “ .so see what you will command

Thus, they not only showed their submission to her and to her commands, but also their willing to relying on power and their participation in the battlefield, since Bilqiys .was the commander of the armed forces of her time

p: ٨٥

(٣٤) قَالَتْ إِنَّ الْمُلُوكَ إِذَا دَخَلُوا قَرْيَةً أَفْسَدُوهَا وَجَعَلُوا أَعِزَّةَ أَهْلِهَا أَذِلَّةً وَكَذَلِكَ يَفْعَلُونَ

She said: ‘Verily the kings, when they enter a township, despoil it, and make the “ .٣٤
”.’noblest of its inhabitants the meanest; and thus they (always) do

Commentary,verse: ٣٤

We should not rely only on our power; we must also keep the potentialities of others in mind. Those who were around Bilqiys said: “We possess force and we possess great might”. But Bilqiys warned them not to take the power of Solomon so little. Then, when the Queen understood their willing for fighting, while she had not inwardly any inclination for this job, in order to quench this thirst and to encounter this matter :calculatedly, she said as follows

She said: ‘Verily the kings, when they enter a township, despoil it, and make the “
”... ;noblest of its inhabitants the meanest

This sentence means that the kings may kill a group of people, captivate another group, and finally they make others homeless, and they spoil their properties as much .as they can

:Then for the sake of some further emphasis, she said

”.’and thus they (always) do ...“

In fact, the Queen of Sheba, who was a king herself, knew the kings well that their program was summarized in too things: ‘despoil’, and ‘making the noblest into meanest’, because the kings used to think only over their own interests, not over the interests of nations and exalting them. These two things always contrast to each .other

(٣٥) وَإِنِّي مُرْسِلَةٌ إِلَيْهِمْ بِهَدِيَّةٍ فَنَاظِرَةٌ بِمَ يَرْجِعُ الْمُرْسَلُونَ

And verily I am going to send a present unto them, and (wait to) see with what “ ٣٥ .
”.(answer) the messengers return

Commentary,verse: ٣٥

Point

The tyrants and the kings knew that the Divine prophets did not seek for money, yet they tried to attract them and make them quiet thereby. So, the Queen of Sheba added implying that before anything else, they should test Solomon and those around him to see, indeed, what was their condition. Was Solomon a king, or a prophet? Was he a destroyer, or a reformer? Did they use to drug nations to meanness, or to honour? So, for this aim they might use of some presents. That was why she said

And verily I am going to send a present unto them, and (wait to) see with what “
”.(answer) the messengers return

Kings are often interested in presents very much, and their weakness is found in this very point. They can be made submit by precious presents. The Queen announced if Solomon submit by these presents, it will be known that he is a ‘king’, and we will stand against him, applying our power, because we are powerful. But if he shows heedlessness to us and insists on his statements and suggestions, it makes it clear .that he is the messenger of Allah and we must treat him wisely

The Qur’ān has not mentioned anything about the kind of presents that the Queen of Sheba sent for Solomon; it has only shown their greatness by applying the word ‘present’ as an undefined noun, but commentators have mentioned many

.matters in this regard, some of which are not free from exaggeration and legend

Some of the commentators have cited that she sent five hundred selected slaves and five hundred particular slave-maids for Solomon, while slave-men were clothed with beautiful dresses and having ear-rings in their ears with bracelets on their bands; and slave-girls were clothed with men clothing and ornamented with beautiful hats. Then she had written in her letter addressing Solomon that if he was a prophet he would recognize slave-men and slave-girls from each other. She mounted them on worthy horses which were ornamented very heavily, and sent them accompanied with a .considerable amount of jewelry

By the way, she told her representative that if he observed that Solomon's look was wrathful to him as soon as he arrived, he should know that it was the manner of the kings; but if Solomon received him kindly and with good temper, he should know that .Solomon was a prophet

:some points on Letter Writing

Whatever was said in the abovementioned verses about the content of Solomon's letter to the people of Sheba can be a sample for the style of letter writing, and this is sometimes of the important matters of life. This letter begins with the Name of Allah, the Beneficent, the Merciful, and the essential subject is said through two calculated .sentences

It is understood from Islamic history and narrations that our Islamic great leaders always emphasized that letters should be written shortly, free from useless matters, .and completely calculated

Through a circular, Amir-ul-Mu'mineen, Ali (a.s.) wrote to his employees and representatives that they should make their

pen-points sharp and make the lines of their writings close (to each other), and avoid writing unnecessary matters in their letters, because the Muslim properties could not [\(bear any loss.\)](#)⁽¹⁾

Making the pen-points sharp causes that the words be written in a small form, and the lines being close to each other, and omitting unnecessary things from the letter results not only economy in wealth and private properties but also saving the time of both writer and reader, and sometimes abundance causes that the main purpose of the letter be confused among the additional and ceremonial sentences so that both the writer and the reader of it may not obtain their goal. Principally, someone's letter is a sign for showing his personality and it is like one's messenger. Ali (a.s.) says: "Your messenger is the interpreter of your intelligence while your letter is more eloquent in [\(expressing your true self.\)](#)"⁽²⁾

Imam Sādiq (a.s.) says: "One's letter is an evidence for the standard of his wisdom and the situation of his insight, and his messenger is an indication to the level of his [\(understanding and his intellect.\)](#)"⁽³⁾

This delicate point should also be noted that some Islamic narrations denote that the reply to a letter must be similar to the reply of a greeting. Imam Sādiq (a.s.) in a tradition says: "Answering a letter is obligatory in the same manner that answering a [\(salutation is obligatory.\)](#)"⁽⁴⁾

p: ۸۹

Bihār, Vol. ۷۶, P. ۴۹ –۱

Nahj-ul-Balāqah, saying No. ۳۰۱ –۲

Bihār-ul-Anwār, Vol. ۷۶, P. ۵۰ –۳

Wasā'il, Vol. ۸, P. ۴۳۷ –۴

(٣٦) فَلَمَّا جَاءَ سُلَيْمٌ - ان قَالَ اْتَمِدُّوْنَ بِمَالٍ فَمَا ءَاتَانِي اللّٰهُ خَيْرٌ مِّمَّا ءَاتَاكُمْ بَلْ اَنْتُمْ بِهَدِيَّتِكُمْ تَفْرَحُوْنَ

(٣٧) اَرْجِعْ اِلَيْهِمْ فَلَنَاْتِيَنَّهُمْ بِجُنُوْدٍ لَا قِبَلَ لَهُمْ بِهَا وَلَنُخْرِجَنَّهُمْ مِنْهَا اَذَلَّةً وَهُمْ صَاغِرُوْنَ

And when (the messenger of the Queen) came to Solomon, he (Solomon) said: “ .٣٦
‘What! Aid you me with wealth? But what Allah has given me is better than what He
”.’has given you. Nay, it is you (and not I) who exult in your present

Go back to them: so we will certainly come unto them with (such) hosts which they “ .٣٧
shall not be able to meet, and certainly will we expel them out therefrom in disgrace,
” .while they will feel humbled

Commentary, verses: ٣٦-٣٧

Point

The motive of the Divine prophets is not gaining worldly materials. The friends of Allah do not sell themselves for money. They are kin, alert and act decisively. They see the corruptible plans behind the presents and they avoid them while rebuking their .senders

However, the officials of the Queen of Sheba, carrying the caravan of presents, left Yemen toward Syria, where Solomon lived. They imagined that Solomon would .become happy by seeing those abundant presents and might praise them

But when they confronted Solomon, there appeared a surprising scene in front of them. Not only Solomon did not receive them well, but also he said whether they wanted to

help him with their wealth, while wealth was nothing in comparison with knowledge, guidance and prophethood. He added it was worthy for them to become happy with presents, but it was worthless for him. The verse says

And when (the messenger of the Queen) came to Solomon, he (Solomon) said: “What! Aid you me with wealth? But what Allah has given me is better than what He has given you. Nay, it is you (and not I) who exult in your present

Thus, Solomon (a.s.) made the criterion of their values belittle, and manifested that there were other criterions for the values that comparing with which the criterions current among mammonists are very weak and worthless

Then, in order to show his decisiveness in the issue of right and wrong, Solomon, (sending back the presents with them), told the special official of the Queen of Sheba as follows

Go back to them: so we will certainly come unto them with (such) hosts which they “shall not be able to meet, and certainly will we expel them out therefrom in disgrace, while they will feel humbled

The application of the word /’ađillah/ (in disgrace) is for the first case and the word /şāqarūn/ (humbled) is for the second case. This indicates that not only they will be expelled from their land, but they also will be encountered it with humiliation and degradation, in a manner that they will lose all their castles, properties, and glorious ranks, because they, resorting to guiles, do not submit to the true religion

This threat, of course, for the representatives who observed the Solomon’s situation closely and visited his troops, was an earnest and considerable threat

Regarding to what was said in previous verses by which Solomon wanted them two things: ‘abandoning self superiority’ and ‘submitting to the truth’ and that they did not reply to these two great things and they resorted to sending presents as a reason for .not accepting them, that was why he threatened them by military force

If the Queen of Sheba and her entourage had demanded a proof, evidence, miracle and the like, Solomon would have considered them rightful to investigate more. But .sending presents showed that they were in a denial position

We surely know this fact, too, that the most important inconvenient thing that the hoopoe told Solomon (a.s.) about this nation who lived in Yemen was that they had ignored the Mighty Lord Who dominates both the unseen and the seen of the skies .and the earth and they were worshipping the sun, a worldly creature

Solomon became inconvenient with this problem, and we know that idolatry is not something that the divine religion remains silent for it, or bears the idol worshippers as a religious minority. By applying force, he (a.s.) may destroy the idol temples, if .necessary, and vanishes idolatry and the polytheistic creed

The abovementioned explanation makes it also clear that Solomon’s threat does not [contrast with the principle of “There is no compulsion in religion”,](#) [\(1\)](#) .because idolatry is not a religion, but it is a superstition and deviation

p: ٩٢

It is worthy to note that, from the view point of Divine religions, ‘virtue’ does not – ١ mean that a person deprives himself from the wealth, property and material potentialities of the world, but the reality of ‘virtue’ is that one does not make himself captive to them but he must be a ‘commander’ over them. By rejecting the precious presents that the Queen of Sheba had sent for Solomon, this great Divine prophet showed that he was a ‘commander’ not a ‘captive

Imam Sādiq (a.s.) in a tradition says: “With Allah, and with His prophets and saints, the world is smaller than that they become happy for something of it or they become sad (for losing it). Thus, it is not suitable for any knowledgeable or intelligent one to be (happy for the ephemeral material of the world.” (١)

In this part of the life story of Solomon, there are some expressive lessons involved – ٢ in the verses of the Qur’ān

A) The essential goal of sending army is not killing human beings; but its goal is that the enemy should consider in a weak situation for him and that the enemy does not find the power of fighting with them. “... with (such) hosts which they shall not be able ... ,to meet

This meaning is similar to the same thing that the Muslims are ordered: “And prepare against them whatever you can of (military) power and of war-horses, to frighten (thereby the enemy of Allah, ...” (٢)

B) Solomon does not threaten his enemies to death, but he threatens them that they will be expelled from their castles with despise and humiliation; and this is worthy .noting

- C) Solomon does not attack his enemies unexpectedly, but he informs them of his
attack previously
- D) Solomon does not prospect to others' wealth, but he says whatever Allah has given
him is better. He does not consider the merits of Allah only in material and financial
power, but he is honoured with having knowledge, faith and spiritual merits

p: ۹۴

(٣٨) قَالَ يَا أَيُّهَا الْمَلَأُوا أَيُّكُمْ يَأْتِينِي بِعَرْشِهَا قَبْلَ أَنْ يَأْتُونِي مُسْلِمِينَ

(٣٩) قَالَ عِفْرِيْتُ مِّنَ الْجِنِّ أَنَا آتِيكَ بِهِ قَبْلَ أَنْ تَقُومَ مِن مَّقَامِكَ وَإِنِّي عَلَيْهِ لَقَوِيٌّ أَمِينٌ

Solomon) said: ‘O chiefs!) which of you can bring to me her throne before they) “ ٣٨
”?’come to me in submission

One audacious among the jinn said: ‘I will bring it to you before you rise up from “ ٣٩
”.’your place; I have strength for it and I am trusty

Commentary,verses: ٣٨–٣٩

.There is a concept of ‘violence’ and ‘strength’ in the Arabic word /‘ifrīt/ here

After returning the representatives of Bilqiys with their presents, and that the Queen of Sheba became aware that Solomon was not a king, she decided to come to him personally in order to see the circumstances closely. Solomon was informed of her decision and made himself ready to show his power

Finally the representatives of the Queen of Sheba took their presents and other things and returned to their own country. They explained what happened in their mission for the Queen and the people around her. They also stated about the greatness of the miraculous land and sovereignty of Solomon, each of which was an evidence that Solomon was not an ordinary person, or a king, and that he was really a messenger of Allah, because his government was also a godly government. It was why the Queen of Sheba and a number of the chiefs of her people decided to come to Solomon and

personally investigate this important problem and also to know what kind of religion
.Solomon had

From any source it was, this news was given to Solomon. Then he decided to show his marvellous might to the Queen of Sheba and her companions before they could reach his land, so that they could become familiar with the reality of his miracle previously,
.and surrender to his call

:So, Solomon, addressing his entourage, stated as follows

Solomon) said: ‘O chiefs!) which of you can bring to me her throne before they come) “
”?to me in submission

Although some of the commentators have tried to find some reasons for bringing the throne of the Queen of Sheba to Solomon, none of them are consistent with the contents of the verses of the Qur’ān, and Solomon’s aim for this program is clear. He wanted to show them his might and an extraordinary action to be fulfilled so that the way of their unconditioned submission and their faith to the power of Allah might be leveled and there would not need to attend in battlefield for fighting and shedding
.tear

He wanted to send faith into the depth of the entity of the Queen of Sheba and her entourage so that others would easily accept the invitation to faith and submission,
.too

In the next verse, the Qur’ān implies that two persons of them announced their readiness for the aim. The suggestion of one of them was surprising and that of the
:other was more surprising. The verse says

One audacious among the jinn said: ‘I will bring it to you before you rise up from your “
”... ;place

He said he could do that action very easily and he would not commit any treachery in
:that valuable deposit. The verse continues saying

”I have strength for it and I am trusty ...“

However, the life story of Solomon is full of wonders and supernatural events; and it is
not surprising that a jinn be able to do such an important action in a short time in front
of Solomon where he (a.s.) was sitting for judging between people, solving the affairs
.of his country, or for advice and guidance

p: ۹۷

(٤٠) قَالَ الَّذِي عِنْدَهُ عِلْمٌ مِّنَ الْكِتَابِ أَنَا آتِيكَ بِهِ قَبْلَ أَنْ يَرْتَدَّ إِلَيْكَ طَرْفُكَ فَلَمَّا رآه مُسْتَقِرًّا عِنْدَهُ قَالَ هَذَا مِن فَضْلِ رَبِّي لِيَبْلُوَنِي ءَأَشْكُرُ أَمْ أَكْفُرُ وَمَن شَكَرَ فَإِنَّمَا يَشْكُرُ لِنَفْسِهِ وَمَن كَفَرَ فَإِنَّ رَبِّي

غَنِيٌّ كَرِيمٌ

One with whom was some knowledge (of a part) of the (Divine) Book said: ‘I will “ ٤٠. bring it to you before your eye twinkles’. Then when he saw it settled before him, he said: ‘ this is of the grace of my Lord that He may try me whether I am grateful or am ,ungrateful; and whoever is grateful, verily he is grateful for his own soul

and whoever is ungrateful, then my Lord is

”.Self-Sufficient, Bounteous

Commentary,verse: ٤٠

Point

It is narrated from Imam Hādī (a.s.) that the one with whom was some knowledge (of a part) of the Divine Book was ’Āsif Burkhiyā, Solomon’s minister and his sister’s son. (١) Imam Bāqir (a.s.) said: ‘The great name of the Allah contains seventy three letters and ’Āsif-ibn-Burkhiyā knew only one letter of it, by the power of which he did (٢) such a surprising thing.” (٢)

This verse indicates that the second person who demanded to bring Bilqiys’ throne was a righteous man who had a

p: ٩٨

The commentary of Nūr-Uth-Thaqalayn –١

Kāfī, Vol. ١, P. ٢٣٠ –٢

:considerable part of knowledge of the Divine Book, as the Qur'ān says about him

One with whom was some knowledge (of a part) of the (Divine) Book said: 'I will bring "
"... 'it to you before your eye twinkles

And when Solomon agreed with that matter, he brought the throne of the Queen of Sheba there, in front of Solomon, in a very short moment by using his spiritual power.

:The verse continues saying about Solomon

Then when he saw it settled before him, he said: 'this is of the grace of my Lord ... "
that He may try me whether I am grateful or am ungrateful; and whoever is grateful,
"... ,verily he is grateful for his own soul

:Then Solomon added

".and whoever is ungrateful, then my Lord is Self-Sufficient, Bounteous ..."

The Commentators have cited many things that who this person was, where from he obtained this wonderful power, and what the objective of the knowledge of Divine Book was

But the apparent of the verse shows that this person was one of the specific faithful companions of Solomon whose name has often been introduced in history books as
'Āsif Burkhiyā' who was Solomon's minister and his sister's son

The purpose of 'the knowledge of the Book' is having some information from the content of the Divine Book. It was a deep knowledge which made it possible for him to do such an extraordinary action. Some believe that the purpose of it was 'Preserve Tablet', the same tablet of the knowledge of Allah that this person knew a part of it. It was by the same reason that he could bring the throne of the Queen of Sheba at the presence of Solomon in a very short moment

Many of the commentators, and others, have thought that this faithful person had known ‘the Exalted Name of Allah’; the same great name before which everything .becomes humble and gives man an extraordinary power

This point is necessary to be mentioned that, contrast to what many people think, knowing the Exalted Name of Allah does not mean that one says a proper word and gains those abundant wonderful effects; but the purpose is to be qualified with that qualification of that name. That is, he must create the quality and meaning of that Divine Name inside his soul so that, from the point of knowledge, piety, faith, and morals, he develops and he himself becomes an example of that Name. This spiritual development, which is a ray from that Exalted Name of Allah, creates such an [\(extraordinary power in man.\)](#)

Upon the Qur’ānic sentence: “I will bring it to you before your eye twinkles”, commentators have delivered different considerations. But, regarding to other verses of the Qur’ān, its reality can be found out. Sura ‘Ibrāhīm, No. ١٤, verse ٤٣ says: “... Their eyes (and eyelids) not blinking ...” which implies that on the Hereafter Day people will be so terrified that their eyes will be in a gazing state and even their .eyelids do not blink

Thus, the purpose of this Qur’ānic sentence is that before Solomon had time enough .to blink, that person could bring the throne of the Queen of Sheba before him

p: ١٠٠

The discussion upon ‘the Exalted Name of Allah’ has been mentioned when – ١
commenting Sura Al-’A’rāf, No. ٧, verse ١٨.

Among the questions arise in relation with these verses is that why Solomon, who (۱) was the prophet of Allah and had miracles, himself did not do this extraordinary action and 'Āsif Burkhiyā achieved it

Answer: It might be for the sake that 'Āsif was Solomon's legate, and Solomon wanted to introduce him to all in that sensitive time. And, there is a detailed tradition narrated from the tenth Imam, Ali-ibn-Muhammad-il-Hādī, cited in the commentary (of 'Ayyāshī, by which he (a.s.) gave the same answer to Yahy-ibn-'Aktham. (۱)

In the abovementioned verses, as well as in Sura Al-Qaṣaṣ, No. ۲۸, verse ۲۶ the (۲) most important condition for a good worker is stated two things: A. Ability; B. Trustworthiness. In other words, Power and trust are two important conditions. Of course, sometimes there are some occasions that man's mental and ethical fundamentals require that he possesses this quality, (as it is said about Moses in Sura Al-Qaṣaṣ); and sometimes the system of the society and righteous government requires that a jinn be necessarily qualified with these two qualifications. However, no small or great affair of the society is doable without existing these two conditions, whether they originate from piety or from the legal system of the society

The difference between 'knowledge of a part of the Book' and 'the knowledge of (۳) 'the Book

In the verses under discussion the one, who brought the throne of the Queen of Sheba before Solomon in the shortest time, has been introduced as “One with whom was some knowledge (of a part) of the (Divine) Book”, while in Sura Ar-Ra‘d, No. ۱۳, verse ۴۳ the Qur’ān says: “...Say: ‘Allah is sufficient as a witness between me and you
”and he with whom is the knowledge of the Book

Abūsa‘īd Khidry narrates a tradition from the holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) and says: “I asked him about the meaning of the ‘one with whom was some knowledge (of a part of the (Divine) Book’, (which is found in the story of Solomon). He answered: ‘He was the inheritor of my brother Solayman-ibn-Dāwūd’. I inquired: “Whom is it about the one: ‘with whom is the knowledge of the Book?’” He answered: ‘He is my brother Ali-ibn-
(Abi-Tālib’ (a.s.)” (۱)

Paying attention to the difference between the meaning of the holy phrase: “Some knowledge (of a part) of the (Divine) Book,” which is used for a constituent knowledge, and the holy phrase: “The knowledge of the Book’, which refers to a universal knowledge, makes it clear that how far was the distance between the knowledge of
(.’Āsif and the knowledge of Ali (a.s

As it was said in the above, some Islamic narrations indicate that the Exalted Name of Allah contains seventy three letters one of which ’Āsif-ibn-Burkhiyā knew and he
could do such an extraordinary action. There are seventy two letters of it with

p: ۱۰۲

Some of the commentators of Sunnites and the Sunnite scholars have narrated this –۱
tradition in this very form or similar to it. For more details you may refer to ‘Ihghāgh-
ul-Haqq, Vol. ۳, PP. ۳۸۰-۳۸۱

[\(the Imams of Ahl-ul-Bayt \(a.s.\) and a letter is particular to the Pure Essence of Allah.](#)[\(1\)](#)

When the haughty mammonists sit on the throne of power, they forget everything (۴ but themselves. Like Qārūn (Croesus) who used to say: “Said he (Korah): ‘I have been given this (wealth) only because of a knowledge that is in me,’ ...”[\(۲\)](#) They think that all the wealth and possibilities that they have obtained are absolutely from their own side, not from any other source. But the proper servants of Allah, for every thing they [\(gain, they say: “This is of the grace of my Lord \(to me\).”](#)[\(۳\)](#)

It is interesting that Solomon said this sentence not only when he saw the throne of the Queen of Sheba in front of Him, but also he added: “... that He may try me [\(whether I am grateful or am ungrateful, ...”](#)[\(۴\)](#)

Formerly we reiterated in this very Sura that Solomon said all his merits and bounties are from Allah, and he humbly asks Him to grant him the chance of being gratitude for .them and to give him success to be able to get His pleasure because of them

Yes, this fact is the criterion of recognizing the sincere monotheists from haughty mammonists, and this is the manner of the noble persons with capacity and .personality comparing those haughty ones who have no capacity

It has become common that some apparently Muslims write only the Solomon’s sentence: “This is of the grace of my Lord” at the top of the arrival door of their castles without

p: ۱۰۳

Nūr-uth-Thaqalayn, Vol. ۴, P. ۹۱; Tafsīr-us-Sāfi, Vol. ۴, P. ۶۷; and Burhān, Vol. ۳, P. ۲۰۲ –۱

Sura Al-Qaṣaṣ, No. ۲۸, verse ۷۸ –۲

The verse under discussion –۳

Ibid –۴

having any belief in it and that it has any trace in their deeds. But it is important that this meaning could be seen not only at the top of their arrival door, but also in all aspects of their lives and in their hearts so that their behaviour shows that they .consider them all from the grace of Allah and try to thank Him by their deeds

(.The Virtues of Amir-ul-Mu'mineen and Ahl-ul-Bayt (a.s

The verse under discussion remarks: "One with whom was some knowledge (of a part) of the (Divine) Book said: ' I will bring it to you before your eye twinkles.' ...", but at the end of Sura Ar-Ra'd, No. ۱۳, Allah says to His Messenger (p.b.u.h.): "And those who disbelieve say: 'You are not a messenger'. Say: Allah is sufficient as a witness [\(between me and you and he with whom is the knowledge of the Book.\)"](#)[\(۱\)](#)

Some Islamic traditions indicate that the purpose of 'the one with whom is the (whole) knowledge of the Book' is Ali-ibn-Abitālib (a.s.). When a person who knows a part of the Book brings the throne of Bilqiys to Solomon in a twinkling of eye, then how much ?power has, in his lifetime, the one who knows the knowledge of the whole Book

Imam Sādiq (a.s.) says: "The knowledge of the one with whom was the knowledge of a part of the Book comparing Ali's knowledge is like the amount of water which is on the [\(wing of a fly with respect to a sea.\)"](#)[\(۲\)](#)

p: ۱۰۴

Another tradition indicates that Imam Sādiq (a.s.), pointing to his chest, said: “And with
us, by Allah, is the knowledge of the Book utterly.” (1)

Some Islamic traditions indicate that, disregard to time and place, Imams, the infallible, (a.s.) can attend in some places. For example, Imam Jawād (a.s.) at the moment of his father’s martyrdom, went from Medina to Ṭūs. Imam Kāzim (a.s.) came out of his prison and presented in Medina. At the time of his captivity, Imam Sajjād (a.s.) went to Karbalā and buried his father’s body, Imam Hussayn (a.s.). Before his martyrdom, Imam Hussayn (a.s.) took a handful of the soil of Karbalā and gave it to Um-us-Salamah in Medina. Therefore, folding of the earth miraculously and rapidly by
(Imams has happened and has some particular records. (Tafsīr-i-Atyab-ul-Bayān

p: ۱۰۵

Ibid –۱

(٤١) قَالَ نَكَـرُوا لَهَا عَرْشَهَا نَنْظُرْ أَتَهْتَدِي أَمْ تَكُونُ مِنَ الَّذِينَ لَا يَهْتَدُونَ

Solomon) said: ‘Disguise her throne for her, we will see whether she follows the) “ .٤١
”.’right way or she is one of those who do not go aright

Commentary,verse: ٤١

This verse points to another surprising scene of instructive event of Solomon (a.s.)
.and the Queen of Sheba

In order to test the level of wisdom, perspicacity and intelligence of the Queen of Sheba, and to prepare a ground for her faith to Allah, too, Solomon ordered that her throne, which had been brought there, should be altered in an unknown state for her
:in order that they see whether she could recognize it, or not. The verse says

Solomon) said: ‘Disguise her throne for her, we will see whether she follows the) “
”.’right way or she is one of those who do not go aright

Though the coming of the Queen’s throne from the country of Sheba to Syria was enough for her not to recognize it, yet Solomon ordered that some changes should be done on it. These changes may have been removing some signs or jewels of the
.throne, or changing some colours of it, or the like

But there arises a question that what was the goal of Solomon in testing the wisdom,
?perspicacity, and intelligence of the Queen of Sheba

The test might be done for the sake that he could know with which logic he ought to confront her, and what kind of reason should he bring for her to prove the ideological
basic

principles. Or he had the thought of suggesting marriage to her in mind and he wanted to know whether she had really the competency of being his wife, or not. Or, indeed, Solomon (a.s.) wanted to give her a responsibility after she believed in Truth.

.He must know how much she was capable to undertake the responsibilities

For the Qur'ānic sentence /'atahtadī/ (Does she follows the right way), there have also been mentioned two commentaries: Some have said that the purpose was the recognition of her own throne, while some others have said that the objective was her being guided to the path of Allah by seeing this miracle. But the apparent of the verse leads to the first meaning, although the first meaning itself had been a premise for the
.second meaning

p: ١٠٧

(٤٢) فَلَمَّا جَاءَتْ قِيلَ أَهَكَذَا عَرْشُكَ قَالَتْ كَأَنَّهُ هُوَ وَأُوتِينَا الْعِلْمَ مِنْ قَبْلِهَا وَكُنَّا مُسْلِمِينَ

(٤٣) وَصَدَّهَا مَا كَانَتْ تَعْبُدُ مِنْ دُونِ اللَّهِ إِنَّهَا كَانَتْ مِنْ قَوْمٍ كَافِرِينَ

So when she came, she was asked: ‘Is your throne like this?’ She said: ‘It is as it “ .٤٢ were the same. And we were given the knowledge before it, and we were “?submitting

And he barred her from the worship of others besides Allah, verily she was of the “ .٤٣ “disbelieving people

Commentary, verses: ٤٢-٤٣

However, when the Queen of Sheba arrived, someone pointed to the throne and :asked her whether her throne was like that. The verse says

”... ”?So when she came, she was asked: ‘Is your throne like this “

The apparent of the verse shows that the speaker of this statement was not Solomon himself, else it was not appropriate for the sentence to be said in a passive voice form, because the name of Solomon has been mentioned before and after it, and his words are expressed in an active form. Moreover, it was not fit for the grandeur of .Solomon that he speaks like that at the beginning of the arrival of Bilqiys

However, the Queen of Sheba gave the most wisely and calculated answers, when :she said

”... .It is as it were the same“ ...“

If she said it was like it, she would be wrong; and if she said it was exactly the same, she would have said something contrast to precaution, because, with that length of distance, it

was impossible that her throne could be brought to the country of Solomon in an ordinary way, save that there had been done a miracle. Moreover, it is recorded in history books that she had been protecting her precious throne in a safe place in her particular castle in a room with some firm and strong doors, which was being guarded by some watchful men. Yet, with all the changes which that throne had received, the :Queen of Sheba could recognize it. Then, immediately she added

”?And we were given the knowledge before it, and we were submitting ...“

This means that she implied if the purpose of Solomon by these deeds was that they comprehended his miracle, they had formerly been aware of his legitimacy by other signs, and even before observing this surprising supernatural event they had .believed, and these things were not needed

Thus, Solomon stopped her from worshipping what was besides Allah, although she :was formerly one of the disbelievers. The verse says

And he barred her from the worship of others besides Allah, verily she was of the “ ”.disbelieving people

Yes, by seeing these clear signs, she said farewell to her last dark position and .entered into a new stage of life which was full of light of faith and certainty

(٤٤) قِيلَ لَهَا ادْخُلِي الصَّرْحَ فَلَمَّا رَأَتْهُ حَسِبَتْهُ لُجَّةً وَكَشَفَتْ عَنْ سَاقَيْهَا قَالَ إِنَّهُ صَيْرُوحٌ مُّمَرَّدٌ مِّن قَوَارِيرَ قَالَتْ رَبِّ إِنَّ سَى ظَلَمْتُ نَفْسِي وَأَسْلَمْتُ مَعَ سُلَيْمٍ-إِنَّ لِلَّهِ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ

It was said to her: ‘Enter the palace,’ but when she saw it she deemed it to be a “ .٤٤ great expanse of water and bared her legs. (Solomon) said: ‘Verily this is but a palace smoothed of crystal’. She said: ‘My Lord! Verily I have been unjust to myself, and I ”.’surrender with Solomon to Allah, the Lord of the Worlds

Commentary,verse: ٤٤

We must not encounter the wealthy ones in a way that they think ‘Faith’ means ‘poverty’. The material potentialities should be at the service of propagation of religion. Industry and financial potentialities can be used in the path of Solomon-like goals for the guidance and leading others

However, in this holy verse, another scene of this event is referred to. The explanation is about the act of entering the Queen of Sheba into the particular castle of Solomon

Solomon had ordered that the yard of one of the castles should be built of crystal, and beneath it there would be flowing water. When the Queen of Sheba arrived there, she [\(was told to enter the yard of the castle.1\)](#)

When the Queen looked at it, she imagined it was a stream. So she bared her legs in order to pass it through, (while she

.’The Arabic word /sarḥ/ here means ‘the yard of the castle –1

(had got surprised about the existence of a stream there).⁽¹⁾

:The verse says

It was said to her: ‘Enter the palace,’ but when she saw it she deemed it to be a great “expanse of water and bared her legs. (Solomon) said: ‘Verily this is but a palace
”... ’smoothed of crystal

There arises here a question that why Solomon, who was a Divine prophet, had such an extraordinary splendid palace. It is true that he was a ruler, but was it not possible
?that he also had a simple means of life like other prophets

It did not matter to Solomon that for surrendering the Queen of Sheba, who considered all her power and greatness in her beautiful throne and her glorious castle and the like, he would show her that all her splendours were very little in his view, so that this action could become a turning point in her life for reviewing the standard of
.values and criterion of personality

It does not matter that instead of a military expedition, which results to destruction and shedding tear, Solomon makes the mind and thought of the Queen of Sheba so overpowered that she does not think of it at all; in particular that she was a woman
.and gave prominence to such ceremonial issues

Many commentators have specially cited that, before reaching the Queen of Sheba to Syria, Solomon ordered that such a castle should be built; and his aim was exhibition of power for surrendering her. That action indicated that a great power, from the point of apparent military forces, was in the hand of Solomon that made him able to
.accomplish such things

p: ۱۱۱

.The Arabic word /lujjah/ means: ‘depth of the sea’, and abundant water –۱

In other words, this expenditure for creating security and peace in a vast province, and accepting the true religion, and also preventing the large expenditure of war, was .not a significant matter

:So, when the Queen of Sheba observed that scene, she expressed, as the verse says

She said: ‘My Lord! Verily I have been unjust to myself, and I surrender with ... “
”.’Solomon to Allah, the Lord of the Worlds

She confessed that formerly she used to fall prostrate before the sun, worshipped idol, applied ornaments, and considered herself the most superior one in the world. But now, she understands that how little and insignificant her power is. And basically, these ornaments and dazzling glares do not satiate one’s soul. She repents of her past deeds and says that she has come to the Lord of the worlds accompanied with .her leader, Solomon

It is interesting that here she uses the word /ma‘a/ (with Solomon) in order to clarify that, in paving the path of Allah, they are equal and brethren, not like the manner and custom of tyrants that some of them have power over some others and a group are involved as captives in the grips of another group. Here there is not any one victorious .and overcome, and, after accepting the Truth, all are in the same row

It is true that the Queen of Sheba had announced her faith before that, too, and she said: “... And we were given the knowledge before it, and we were submitting.” But here the submission of the Queen reaches its climax, and, therefore, she announces her faith to the Truth with emphasis. She had seen a number of signs of the legitimacy of Solomon’s invitation before, such as: coming of the hoopoe in that special condition; the lack of acceptance of those valuable presents which had

been sent from the side of the Queen; bringing her throne from a long distance in a short moment; and, finally, observing the extraordinary power and greatness of Solomon while he had a particular manner which had no similarity with the behaviour .of kings

Some moods of Solomon, which are expressed in previous thirty verses and point to many different issues, were discussed. Now some other parts of them are referred to :in the following

This story begins with the merit and vast knowledge that Allah has bestowed on (١) Solomon; and it ends with monotheism and submitting to the command of Allah, a .monotheism the base of which is also knowledge

This story shows that sometimes the absence and an exceptional flight of a bird (٢) over a region may change the history of a nation and drag them from idolatry to Faith, and from corruption to righteousness. This is an example of the power of Allah, and .the example of the legitimate government

This story shows that the light of monotheism may illuminate all hearts, and even (٣) .an apparently mute bird can inform of the depth of the secrets of monotheism

In order to attract the attention of a person to his true value, and leading him unto (٤) Allah, at first his haughtiness must be broken in order that the dark curtains of vanity be removed from his eyes and he sees the fact. By achieving two things, Solomon broke the pride of the Queen of Sheba: bringing her throne, and causing her to make .mistake when she confronted a part of the castle

The ultimate goal in prophets' government is not conquest, but the aim is the same (٥) thing that was mentioned in

the abovementioned verse, that the arrogant confess their sin and surrender to the Lord of the worlds. So, by mentioning this very point, the Qur'ān puts an end to the .above story

The soul of Faith is submission. That was why not only Solomon emphasized on it in (٤ his letter, but also the Queen of Sheba did it at the end of the event

Sometimes someone, who has the greatest possible power in his authority, may (٧ become in need of a small weak creature, like a bird. He takes help not only from its knowledge but also from its deed; and sometimes an ant, with that weakness and .disability that it has, belittles him

The revelation of these verses in Mecca, where Muslims were under serious (٨ pressure from the side of their enemies, and all the doors were shut to them, had a special concept. Its aim was to strengthen their spirits, sooth them, and make them .hopeful of the grace of Allah and to the future victories

By the way, at last the Queen of Sheba believed and gave the suggestion of marriage :to Solomon, and said

”I surrender with Solomon to Allah, the Lord of the Worlds ...“

Saleh sent toward the people Thamūd. The people rejected Saleh’s admonition, thus they were destroyed – Lot commanded to proceed towards his people – They disbelieved and were destroyed

(۴۵) وَلَقَدْ أَرْسَلْنَا إِلَىٰ ثَمُودَ أَخَاهُمْ صَالِحًا أَنِ اعْبُدُوا اللَّهَ فَإِذَا هُمْ فَرِيقَانِ يَخْتَصِمُونَ

(۴۶) قَالَ يَا قَوْمِ لِمَ تَسْتَعْجِلُونَ بِالسَّيِّئَةِ قَبْلَ الْحَسَنَةِ لَوْلَا تَسْتَغْفِرُونَ اللَّهَ لَعَلَّكُمْ تُرْحَمُونَ

And indeed We sent unto (the tribe of) Thamūd their brother Saleh, saying: “ ۴۵ . ‘Worship you Allah!’ but behold, they became two parties quarrelling with each other

He said: ‘O my people! Why will you hasten on the evil before the good? Why do “ ۴۶ . “?you not ask forgiveness of Allah so that you may be dealt with mercifully

Commentary, verses: ۴۵–۴۶

Next to a part of life stories of Moses, David, and Solomon (a.s.) mentioned in the previous verses, the fourth prophet, a part of whose life story is referred to in this :Sura, is Haḍrat Saleh, the prophet of Thamūd people. At first, it says

And indeed We sent unto (the tribe of) Thamūd their brother Saleh, saying: ‘Worship “ ... ’!you Allah

As it was also said before, the application of the concept of ‘their brother’, which has been used in the story life of several prophets, is a hint to their ultimate love and affection unto their peoples. In addition to this, in some instances, it points to their relationship with those people, too. However, the entire messengership and invitation of this prophet is summarized in the holy phrase “Worship you Allah!” Yes, the servitude of Allah is the essence of all teachings of the messengers of Allah. Then, the
:verse continues saying

”.but behold, they became two parties quarrelling with each other ...“

Those two groups, who quarrelled with each other, were the believers, from one side, and the obstinate disbelievers, from the other side. Imam Bāqir (a.s.) said: “A group attested the invitation of Haḍrat Ṣālih but another group rejected it.” (Tafsīr-i-Nūr-
(uth-Thaqalayn

These two groups are referred to in Sura Al-ʿAʿrāf, No. ۷, verse ۷۵ as ‘The arrogant’ and ‘those who were considered weak’. It says: “The chiefs of the arrogant among his people said to those who were considered weak – those of them who believed – ‘Do you know that Saleh is sent by his Lord?’ they said surely we believe in what he has been sent with’.” “Those who were arrogant said: ‘We, indeed, disbelieve in that which
(you believe’.” (Al-ʿAʿrāf, verses ۷۵-۷۶

Of course, this conflict of two groups of believers and disbelievers existed among the peoples of many prophets, although some of them were deprived of even these
.adherents and nearly the totality of their people were rejecters of the truth

Finally, in order to awaken them, Haḍrat Saleh (a.s.) began warning them, and made them aware of the painful chastisements of Allah. But not only they did not take counsel, but also took that very matter as a reason for their obstinacy, and persistently wanted him that they should be involved with the Divine punishment if he :was truthful.[\(1\)](#) But Saleh replied them as follows

”... ?He said: ‘O my people! Why will you hasten on the evil before the good “

Why do you concentrate your thought on meeting the Divine punishment? If the Divine chastisement meets you, it will put an end to your life and there will not remain any time for you to believe. Let yourselves try the legitimacy of my statement by the grace and blessings of Allah which will embrace you as the result of Faith. The verse :continues saying

”?Why do you not ask forgiveness of Allah so that you may be dealt with mercifully ...“

Why do you seek for evils and the descent of punishment? What is this obstinacy and ?arrogance for

Those who rejected the call of prophets and asked for the promised punishment were not limited to the people of Saleh, this matter is repeatedly seen in the Qur’ān [\(concerning other peoples, too, including the people of Nūh.\)](#)

In relation to the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.) and some fanatic and obstinate polytheists, the Qur’ān says: “And (remember) when they said: ‘O Allah! If this (Qur’ān) is the truth from You, then rain down upon us stones from the sky, or bring us a [\(painful punishment?\)](#).”[\(2\)](#)

p: 117

This meaning is explicitly expressed in Sura Al-’A’rāf, No. 7, verse 77 –1

Sura Al-’A’rāf, No. 7, verse 70 – 2

Sur Al-’Anfāl, No. 8, verse 32 – 3

This is, indeed, surprising that some persons want to try the truthfulness of the call of the prophet by the way of Divine destructive punishment, not by the way of asking for Divine mercy; while certainly they do verify the probable legitimacy of those prophets
.in their hearts, though they deny it by tongue

This behaviour is like a person who claims he is a physician and says this medicine is curative and that one is fatal, and then, in order to test him, we use the fatal medicine,
.not the curative one

This is the ultimate ignorance, folly and fanaticism, while ignorance has many fruits of
.this kind

p: ۱۱۸

(٤٧) قَالُوا اطَّيَّرْنَا بِكَ وَبِمَن مَّعَكَ قَالَ طَائِرُكُمْ عِنْدَ اللَّهِ بَلْ أَنْتُمْ قَوْمٌ تُفْتَنُونَ

They said: ‘Ill omen do we augur from you and those with you’. He said: ‘Your ill “ .٤٧
”.’omen is with Allah. Nay! You are a people who are being tried

Commentary,verse: ٤٧

Point

The Arabic word /taṭayyur/ is derived from /ṭayr/ which means ‘a bird’. Some of Arabs used to leave a bird at the time when they wanted to travel. If it went to the right direction they would start their traveling, and if it flew to the left (they augured ill and) they would suspend their traveling.(١) In Islam auguring ill has been considered disbelief. To augur ill leads to leaving the main reasons and going toward .superstitions

There are many occurrences in the Qur’ān which indicate that the Divine prophets had been augured ill. The people of Pharaoh thought that their afflictions had come because of Moses (a.s.). The Qur’ān says: “...and if any evil afflicted them, they took it bad omens due to Moses ...”(٢) Jesus (a.s.) was told: “... For us, we augur an evil omen from you ...”(٣) In the above mentioned verse, the disbelievers told Sāleh: “... ‘Ill omen
”... ’do we augur from you and those with you

However, this arrogant nation, instead of listening to the sympathetic advice of their
great prophet and applying it, they

p: ١١٩

Tafsīr-ul-Kashshāf –١

Sura Al-’A’rāf, No. ٧, verse ١٣١ –٢

Sura Yāsīn, No. ٣٦, verse ١٨ –٣

opposed him with some vain words and baseless conclusions, among them is their following statement

”... .’They said: ‘Ill omen do we augur from you and those with you “

It seems that there was drought, and deficiency of crop and foodstuff for the people of Moses in that year. They said that all those afflictions and difficulties were because of unpleasant advent of Moses and his followers who brought them and their society misery and omen. By resorting to the weapon of ill omen, which is often the weapon of arrogant and superstitious persons, they wanted to overcome the strong logic of Moses (a.s.). But in answer to them, he said that their evil fortune was with Allah, and it was their own deeds that resulted such miseries and afflictions, as punishments. In fact, this was a great Divine trial for them

:The verse continues saying

”.’He said: ‘Your ill omen is with Allah. Nay! You are a people who are being tried ...“

These are some Divine trials. They are some warnings and awakening subjects for those who have some suitability and competency to awake from the sleep of negligence and, by going to the path of Allah, improve themselves

There are also some people in some societies who do not believe in Allah, although they have earned some considerable good grades in knowledge and science but, in the meantime, they have some superstitions and similar vain beliefs in them and they still have a warm market for fortune-telling and soothsaying among them, so that the illusive subject of luck and horoscopy has many customers

But the Qur’ān through a short sentence says: “Your ill omen is with Allah.” This means your luck, your victory, your defeat, and your success and failure all are with Allah, Who is Wise, and His favours are divided among men according to their competencies, those very competencies which are the reflection of their Faith, action, speech and behaviour

Thus, the Qur’ān drives out the followers of Islam from the valley of superstition to reality and from devious way toward straight Path

:some traditions Upon Bad Omen

The Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) said: “The atonement of ill omen is reliance in Allah.” (1)

The Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) said: “Ill omen is infidelity and it is not from us, but reliance in Allah abolishes it.” (2)

There has been narrated that, in supplication, the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) used to say: “O Allah! There is no omen but Your omen, no goodness but Your goodness, and no god but You (Allah). O Allah! No one gives rewards but You, and no one wipes the faults but You, and there is no power except in Allah, the Exalted, the Great.” (3)

p: ۱۲۱

(٤٨) وَكَانَ فِي الْمَدِينَةِ تِسْعَةُ رَهْطٍ يُفْسِدُونَ فِي الْأَرْضِ وَلَا يُصْلِحُونَ

And there were in the city nine (groups of) persons who made mischief in the land “ .٤٨
”and would not reform

Commentary,verse: ٤٨

The Arabic word /raḥṭ/ is used for ‘a group of people among whom there is a warm
.?relation

This holy verse refers to another part of the life story of Sāleh (a.s.) which completes
the previous part and concludes the story. It concerns the plot of nine groups of
pagans and hypocrites who wanted to kill Sāleh, but their evil plot failed. The Qur’ān
:says

And there were in the city nine (groups of) persons who made mischief in the land “
”and would not reform

Regarding to the fact that the Arabic word /raḥṭ/ in lexicon means a group of persons
who are less than ten or less than forty members, makes it clear that these small
groups, each of which had a separate line, were similar to each other in one thing and
it was making mischief in the earth, disturbing the social system and the creedal and
ethical principles. The Qur’ānic phrase /lāyuṣliḥūna/ (would not reform) is an emphasis
on this matter, because it sometimes happens that someone makes a mischief and
later he regrets and tries to amend himself, but the real mischief mongers are not like
.that. They go on their corruption constantly and never try to rectify their wrong

Paying attention to the Arabic conjugation of the verb /yufsidūn/ (make mischief), which is in future and simple present tense form and indicates to the duration of the .action, it shows that this action was their permanent deed and they used to commit it

Each of these nine groups had a chief, and probably every one of them was from a .separate tribe

p: ١٢٣

(٤٩) قَالُوا تَقَاسَمُوا بِاللَّهِ لَنُبَيِّتَنَّهٗ وَأَهْلَهُ ثُمَّ لَنَنزِلَنَّ لَوْلِيَّهِ مَا شَهِدْنَا مَهْلِكَ أَهْلِهِ وَإِنَّا لَصَادِقُونَ

They said: ‘Swear a mutual oath by Allah that surely we will make a sudden attack “ .٤٩ on him and his family by night, then we will tell his heir, we were not present at the ”.’slaughter of his household, and verily we are truthful

Commentary,verse: ٤٩

The content of this holy verse is similar to the state of the pagans of Mecca who united by an oath and decided to surprise and kill the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.) in his bed while he was asleep, but the holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) asked Hadrat Ali (a.s.) to sleep .in his bed and thus the enemy’s plot was nullified

Certainly by the appearance of Sāleh and his pure religion in the society, those groups :were driven to extremities, and it was in that condition that, as the verse says

They said: ‘Swear a mutual oath by Allah that surely we will make a sudden attack on “ him and his family by night, then we will tell his heir, we were not present at the ”.’slaughter of his household, and verily we are truthful

The Arabic word /taqāsamū/ (swear a mutual oath), in an imperative verb form, means: ‘everybody must participate in making an oath and promise to achieve this .great plot’, a promise in which there is no change or return

It is interesting that they made an oath by Allah. It indicates that, besides worshipping idols, they believed in Allah, the Creator of the skies and the earth, too. Therefore, they used to make an oath to Him in relation to important

matters. It also shows that they were so proud that they did this great crime of theirs by mentioning their names; as if they wanted to worship, or to do a godly service. This .is the custom of haughty misguided disbelievers

The Qur'ānic word /lanubayyitannahū/ (surely we will make a sudden attack on him) is derived from /tabyīt/ which means 'to surprise and to attack suddenly by night'. The application of this meaning here shows that, in the meanwhile, they were afraid of the adherents of Sāleh and his tribe. Therefore, in order that they could reach their own goal and, in the meantime, they might not confront the anger of his followers, they designed the plot of a sudden attack at night and colluded that if Sāleh's followers came to them, all of them with together take an oath that they had no role in that .event absolutely, and even they were not present there nor had they witnessed it

(٥٠) وَمَكَرُوا مَكْرًا وَمَكَرْنَا مَكْرًا وَهُمْ لَا يَشْعُرُونَ

(٥١) فَانظُرْ كَيْفَ كَانَ عَاقِبَةُ مَكْرِهِمْ أَنَّا دَمَّرْنَا لَهُمْ وَقَوْمَهُمْ أَجْمَعِينَ

And they devised a device, and We devised a device (too), but they were not “ ٥٠.
”;aware

And behold, how was the end of their device! For We destroyed them and their “ ٥١.
”.people all together

Commentary, verses: ٥٠–٥١

The means of annihilation of the people of Thamūd has been referred to in several
:occurrences of the Qur’ān with different explanations

By earthquake: “... Then the earthquake seized them, ...” (Sura Al-’A’rāf, No. ٧, (١
(verse ٧٨

By thunderbolt: “... So the Thunderbolt seized them, ...” (Sura Ath-Thāriyāt, No. ٥١, (٢
(verse ٤٤

By Mighty Blast: “And the (mighty) Blast overtook those who were unjust, ...” (Sura (٣
(Hūd, No. ١١, verse ٤٧

It does not matter, of course, that these three punishments might have occurred
.simultaneously

One of the aspects of the device of Allah is giving respite and bounty to the sinners, so
that they be busy with them, and when their time is over they are suddenly involved in
.the chastisement of Allah

History announces that there was a mountain in a side of the city and it had a slit
where the temple of Sāleh was. Sometimes Sāleh (a.s.) went there at night in order to
.worship and prattle with Allah as two lovers

They decided to lie in ambush there and when Sāleh came over there they would kill
,him, and then, after his martyrdom

they would attack his home by the same night and kill his household, too, and return to their houses; and when they were questioned about it, they would say they knew nothing

.But Allah nullified their plots surprisingly and their plans remained invalid

When they were lying in ambush in a corner of the mountain, some pieces of the mountain fall and a huge rock from upward of it came down over them and destroyed them in a short moment. The verse says

”;And they devised a device, and We devised a device (too), but they were not aware “

Then, the next verse implies that not only those people, but also their adherents were destroyed. It says

And behold, how was the end of their device! For We destroyed them and their “ people all together

As it has been mentioned formerly, the Qur’ānic term /makr/, in the Arabic literature, means any ‘application of a remedy’, and it does not pertain exclusively to satanic and harmful plans that is used in the Persian language today. Thus, it is used in both harmful plans and good devices. Rāqib in Mufradāt says: “/makr/ (device) is that which .hinders one to reach his goal

Therefore, when this word is used about Allah, it means: ‘nullification of harmful plots’; and when it is used about mischief mongers, it means: ‘impedimental acts .’against reproving programs

(٥٢) فَتِلْكَ بُيُوتُهُمْ خَاوِيَةً بِمَا ظَلَمُوا إِنَّ فِي ذَلِكَ لَآيَةً لِّقَوْمٍ يَعْلَمُونَ

(٥٣) وَأَنْجَيْنَا الَّذِينَ ءَامَنُوا وَكَانُوا يَتَّقُونَ

So those are their houses in empty ruins for they were unjust. Verily there is in “ ٥٢ .
” .this a sign for a people who have knowledge

” .٥٣ .And We saved those who believed and used to keep from evil “

Commentary, verses: ٥٢-٥٣

The Arabic word /xāwiyah/ means ‘corruption, annihilation, and destruction’, and it is
’also used in the sense of ‘empty of dwellers

Chastisement is not limited to that of Hereafter, sometimes oppressors are punished
in this world. This situation is also the same for the effects of faith and piety which is
not particular to the Hereafter. The pious people observe the result of their deeds in
.this world, too

:However, regarding to their annihilation and final fate, the holy Qur’ān says

”... .So those are their houses in empty ruins for they were unjust “

Their houses are utterly ruin and there is no people to have activities therein, and
.there have remained no sign of their glories, bounties and sinful gatherings

Yes, the fire of cruelty and injustice caused them and all their belongings to be burnt
and destroyed. This is a clear sign for the end of the act of those who are unjust. The
:verse continues saying

”.Verily there is in this a sign for a people who have knowledge ...“

But in this event those who were not guilty were not burnt in the fire of the guilty ones
:and were not involved in the evil fate of wrongdoers. The verse says

”.And We saved those who believed and used to keep from evil “

p: ۱۲۹

(٥٤) وَلَوْطًا إِذْ قَالَ لِقَوْمِهِ أَتَأْتُونَ الْفَاحِشَةَ وَأَنْتُمْ تُبْصِرُونَ

(٥٥) أَأَنْتُمْ لَتَأْتُونَ الرِّجَالَ شَهْوَةً مِنْ دُونِ النِّسَاءِ بَلْ أَنْتُمْ قَوْمٌ تَجْهَلُونَ

And (We sent) Lot, when he said to his people: “Do you commit indecency while “ ٥٤
”?(you see (its iniquity

What! Do you approach men lustfully instead of women? No, you are a people “ ٥٥
”.that are ignorant

Commentary,verses: ٥٤-٥٥

The people of Lot used to commit sodomy in their public meetings and before the eyes of each other. Sura Al-‘Ankabūt, No. ٢٩, verse ٢٩ says: “... and you commit dishonour in your assemblies? ...” In the above verse, the Qur’ān also says: “... while you see (its iniquity)?” which means ‘you commit indecency before the eyes of each other, or you commit sin consciously and with insight

Sodomy is one of the great and hideous sins, because the later verses of the Sura indicate that it consequently brings the chastisement of Allah

Some other verses of the Qur’ān refer to the fact that wife is necessary for calmness, educating and raising up generation, and cooperation in living; but, here, the Qur’ān points only to the phenomenon of lust, because the people of Lot had not any aim of their shameful act but lust

Next to mentioning parts of the life stories of Moses, David, Solomon, and Saleh and their peoples, the fifth prophet whom has been referred to in this Sura, is Lot, the great prophet of Allah

This subject has repeatedly been referred to in the former Suras of the Qur'ān, such as Al-Hijr, Hūd, Ash-Shu'arā, and Al-'A'rāf, where some matters have been mentioned in this ground

This repetition, and the like of it, is for the fact that the Qur'ān is not a book of history in which an event may be wholly explained for one time and it usually does not refer to that event again. But Qur'ān is a book of education for training good men, and we know that in educational themes sometimes the conditions require that an incident should be repeated again and again, in order that it could be reminded and be dealt with from different dimensions

However, the story of the people of Lot, who are known in the world for their sexual deviation, Sodomy, and for other hideous deeds, as well as their fate at the end of their life, can be an example for those who are drowned in the cesspool of lusts; and the spread of this pollution among societies requires that this instructive event to be mentioned repeatedly. Here the Qur'ān says

And (We sent) Lot, when he said to his people: ‘Do you commit indecency while you “ ”?(see (its iniquity

The Arabic word /fāḥiṣah/, as we have said aforetime, means some deeds that the indecency and ugliness of which is manifest, but here the purpose of it is the shameful act of Sodomy

The Qur'ānic phrase /'antum tubṣirūn/ (while you see) refers to this fact that you see the ugliness and the evil results of this hideous action with your eyes, and you observe that your society has wholly become polluted, so that even your own children are not ?secured. Why do you see, but yet you do not awake

:Then, in the next verse, it says

What! Do you approach men lustfully “

”... ?instead of women

In fact, at first the Qur’ān points to this action as an indecent action, /fāhiṣah/, then it explains it more clearly so that there remains no ambiguity for anybody. This is one of the styles of decorum in order to state an important thing. Then for making clear that :the motive of this action is ignorance, it says

”.No, you are a people that are ignorant ...“

This ignorance is the ignorance to Allah, the ignorance to the purpose of creation and laws of creation, and the ignorance to the evil effects of this important sin. If a person, contemplates deeply, he will understand that how much ignorantly this evil action is. The reason why this sentence is stated in interrogative form is for the sake that they hear its answer from the inside of their own conscience so that it may be more .effective

The End of Part ١٩

p: ١٣٢

(٥٦) فَمَا كَانَ جَوَابَ قَوْمِهِ إِلَّا أَنْ قَالُوا أَخْرِجُوا آلَ لُوطٍ مِنْ قَرْيَتِكُمْ إِنَّهُمْ أَنْاسٌ يَتَطَهَّرُونَ

But the answer of his people was naught except that they said: ‘Drive out the “ ٥٦ .
”.people of Lot from your city; verily they are people (who seek to be) pure

Commentary,verse: ٥٦

Since the wrong doers have not any acceptable logic before the Divine prophets, they
.use force against them

The former discussions with the strong logic of Lot, the Divine prophet, in front of those polluted people, explained that how he dissuaded them from the hideous act of Sodomy by his reasonable and eloquent statement, and he showed them that this act is the consequence of ignorance and being unaware of the law of creation and all
.human values

Now, we see the answer of this polluted nation to the logical statement of Lot (a.s.).
:The holy Qur’ān says

But the answer of his people was naught except that they said: ‘Drive out the people “
”.of Lot from your city; verily they are people (who seek to be) pure

This answer is an implication to the low level of their thought and the extraordinary
.fall of their ethical affairs

Yes, in the environment of the polluted ones, chastity is a crime and a defect. The chaste and modest ones, like Yūsuf, are put in prison, and the household of the divine prophet, because of their chastity and avoidance from pollution, are banished, while the persons like Zulaykhā, are free and possess ranks. Lot’s household must be
.banished, but the people of Lot can live in peace in their city freely

This is the clear example of the word of Qur'ān where it says about the wrong doers that their hearts were sealed because of their deeds and their eyes were veiled and (their ears had heaviness.)

It is also probable that because of their being sunk in corruption and being accustomed to pollution, concerning Lot's household, they said in mockery: "... They are people (who seek to be) pure...". These people implied that Lot's household imagined that their piety was chastity and the act of the people of Lot was impious.

!What a wonderful and ridiculous thing

And it is not surprising that, as the result of getting accustomed to a shameful action, the sense of recognition of a person changes. The famous story of a tanner, who was constantly with the purified skins and his sense of smell had got accustomed to that bad smell, is well known. When he was passing the market of perfume-sellers, he became unconscious, and the concerning doctor ordered that he should be brought into the market of tanners to 'recover his sense'. We have heard this story and it is an interesting sensible example for this logical matter

p: ۱۳۴

(٥٧) فَأَنْجَيْنَاهُ وَأَهْلَهُ إِلَّا امْرَأَتَهُ قَدَرْنَا مِنَ الْغَابِرِينَ

(٥٨) وَأَمْطَرْنَا عَلَيْهِمْ مَطَرًا فَسَاءَ مَطَرُ الْمُنذَرِينَ

So We saved him and his household, except his wife, We had decreed her to be of “ .٥٧
” .those that tarried

And We rained down on them a shower “ .٥٨

.of brimstone), and evil was the shower of those who had been warned)

Commentary, verses: ٥٧–٥٨

The Divine leaders are under the protection and support of Allah: “So We saved him
” ...

The fruit of people’s piety and virtue in this world is their being saved from the wrath
.of Allah

The Arabic word /qābirīn/, which means: ‘those that tarried and were annihilated’, has
.been used seven times in the Qur’ān and all of them are about Lot’s wife

It has been cited in narrations that Lot taught those people for about thirty years but
none believed in him except his household, (and among them even his wife had the
(creed of pagans).[1](#))

It is evident that such a group, who might not be improved, could not have a room for
:living in this world and they should be annihilated. Therefore, this verse says

So We saved him and his household, except his wife, We had decreed her to be of “
” .those that tarried

p: ١٣٥

Then, when Lot and his family came out of the city at the appointed time, (in midnight of the night when the city was full of corruption and shame), a terrible earthquake turned their land completely upside down, and, in the morning, a shower of brimstone :came over there. The verse says

And We rained down on them a shower (of brimstone), and evil was the shower of “ .those who had been warned

We had a detailed discussion about the people of Lot and their fate, as well as the evil effects of Sodomy, when explaining holy Sura Hūd, No. ١١, verse ٧٧-٨٣, which is not .necessary to be repeated here again

There is only one point, of course, that seems necessary to be mentioned here, as :follows

As a factor for duration of man’s seed and the calmness of his soul, the law of creation has set the sexual attraction between two opposite sexes, and its change toward Sodomy disturbs both the spiritual calmness and the social peace. And since these social laws have a trace in man’s nature, this change causes a kind of disorder in the .system of the entity of man

Lot, the great prophet of Allah, attracted the attention of that deviated nation to this natural trace and said to them: “Do you commit indecency while you see (its iniquity)?” This ignorance and unawareness of the law of life was in the sense of foolishness that .drugged them towards this devious way

It is not marvellous that other laws of creation may change due to this nation, too, and instead of a wholesome rain water, a shower of brimstone rains down over them, and their peaceful land turns over by an earthquake, and, consequently, not only they are .destroyed but also no trace remains from them

Allah's Bounties – Peace upon Allah's Chosen Servants – Arguments proving the Unity of Allah

(۵۹) قُلِ الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ وَسَلَامٌ عَلَىٰ عِبَادِهِ الَّذِينَ اصْطَفَىٰ ؕ اللَّهُ خَيْرٌ مِمَّا يَشْرِكُونَ

Say: 'Praise be to Allah, and peace be on His servants whom He has chosen. Is " ۵۹. " ")?(Allah better, or what they associate (with Him

Commentary,verse: ۵۹

Not only the punishment of the wrong doers, but also the deliverance and the salvation of the believers are because of Allah's Grace, which must be thanked. "Say: "..." , 'Praise be to Allah

Both the praise of the servants of Allah and peace being on them are mentioned "... beside the praise of Allah. "... Praise be to Allah, and peace be on His servants

However, next to the end of the explanation of the life stories of five Divine prophets, as well as the fate of their peoples, the verse under discussion addresses the holy Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.) and, as drawing a conclusion from the former statements and as a premise for speaking with pagans, implies that all praise belongs to Allah Who annihilated the former disgraceful nations, such as the people of Lot, lest the

:kind of their corruption might spread all over the earth. The verse announces

”... ,Say: ‘Praise be to Allah “

Praise belongs to the One Who sent the corruptors such as the people of Thamūd and the arrogant people of Pharaoh to destruction so that their manner might not be .continued as a tradition among others

And, finally, the praise belongs to the One Who bestowed those plenty bounties and might on His faithful servants, like David and Solomon, and by which guided some .misled ones like the people of Sheba

:Then, it adds

”... .and peace be on His servants whom He has chosen ...“

Peace be on prophets, such as: Moses, Saleh, Lot, Solomon, and David (a.s.), and peace be upon all Divine prophets and their true followers. Then, the verse continues :saying

”?(Is Allah better, or what they associate (with Him ...“

That is, which is better, the Lord Who has those infinite powers, strengths and bountiful merits, or the idols which idolaters associate to Allah (s.w.t.) and they ?absolutely affect nothing

In the explanations of the life stories of the former prophets, we realized that idols could never help their worshippers at the time of coming misfortunes and afflictions, while Allah did not leave the believers alone in none of their difficulties and His .merciful grace came to help them

(٦٠) أَمَّنْ خَلَقَ السَّمَاوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضَ وَأَنْزَلَ لَكُمْ مِنَ السَّمَاءِ مَاءً فَأَنْبَتْنَا بِهِ حَدَائِقَ ذَاتَ بَهْجَةٍ مَا كَانَ لَكُمْ أَنْ تُنْبِتُوا شَجَرَهَا أَلَيْسَ مَعَ اللَّهِ بَلٌ لَهُمْ قَوْمٌ يَعْدِلُونَ

Or Who created the heavens and the earth, and sent down for you water from “ ٦٠. the sky? Then We caused to grow thereby beautiful gardens; it was not in your power that you grew the trees thereof. Is there any god with Allah? Nay! They are a people ”.who deviate

Commentary, verse: ٦٠

.Contemplation about Divine creation is the best way for getting near to Allah

Every tree or plant that grows is under the observation of Allah and by His Will. After explaining some outstanding parts of the life stories of five Divine prophets, there was an expressive question in the content of the previous verse implying whether Allah, with His infinite power, is better or the worthless idols which the idolaters produced. The verses under discussion explain this meaning and, putting the pagans under trial, state the clearest reasons of Unity. At first, it refers to the creation of the heavens and the earth, as well as the descent of rain and the bounties emerged from it, where it :says

Or Who created the heavens and the earth, and sent down for you water from the “ ”... ;sky? Then We caused to grow thereby beautiful gardens

p: ١٣٩

The Arabic word /hadā'iq/ is the plural form of /ḥadīqah/ and, as many commentators have said, it means a garden which is surrounded with a wall and it is secured from any thing, like the pupil of eye which is protected among eyelids. Rāqib says in Mufradāt: “The word /ḥadīqah/ is originally used for a land where there is gathered some water, like the pupil of the eye that there is always water therein

It can be concluded from these two statements that the Arabic word /ḥadīqah/ means a garden which has both a wall and enough water

The Arabic word /bahjat/ means the beauty of colour and apparent goodness which causes the spectators to be full of joy

:At the end of the verse, the Qur’ān addresses the servants of Allah and says

”... it was not in your power that you grew the trees thereof ...“

You should only sow the seed and irrigate it, but He who has created life inside this seed and commands the sunlight, the life giving drops of rain, and the pieces of soil to grow this seed is only Allah

These are some facts that none can deny, or attributes them to other than Allah. It is He Who is the Creator of the heavens and the earth, and is the sender of rain. He is the cause of all beauties and favours in the world

Even paying attention to the colouring of a flower, the delicate and regular arrangement of leaves inside each other that have circulated around the central point of the flower and cry of the existence of life, are enough to acquaint man with the glory, power and knowledge of Allah. These are the facts which move the man’s heart and call him toward Him

In other words, Unity in creation (Unity of Creator) and Unity in Lordship (the Unity of the Deviser of this world) are counted as the basis of the Unity of the object of .worship

:Therefore, at the end of the verse, the Qur'ān says

”Is there any god with Allah? Nay! They are a people who deviate ...“

p: ۱۴۱

(٦١) أَمَّنْ جَعَلَ الْأَرْضَ قَرَارًا وَجَعَلَ خِلالَهُمَا أَنْهَارًا وَجَعَلَ لَهَا رِوَادِيًا وَجَعَلَ بَيْنَ الْبَحْرَيْنِ حِاجِزًا أَلَيْهَ مَعَّ اللَّهُ بَلْ أَكْثَرُهُمْ لَا يَعْلَمُونَ

(٦٢) أَمَّنْ يُجِيبُ الْمُضْطَرَّ إِذَا دَعَاهُ وَيَكْشِفُ السُّوءَ وَيَجْعَلُكُمْ خُلَفَاءَ الْأَرْضِ أَلَيْهَ مَعَّ اللَّهُ قَلِيلًا مَا تَذَكَّرُونَ

Or Who made the earth a resting place, and made in it rivers, and placed firm “ ٦١ mountains therein, and placed between the two seas a barrier. Is there any god with Allah? Nay! Most of them do not know

Or Who answers the distressed one when he calls on Him and removes the “ ٦٢ distress, and makes you successors in the earth. Is there any god with Allah? Little it is that you heed

Commentary, verses: ٦١-٦٢

This verse refers to the merit of peace and firmness of the earth as a resting place for human beings in this world, and compares the artificial idols of the idolaters with Allah. It says

Or Who made the earth a resting place, and made in it rivers, and placed firm “ mountains therein, and placed between the two seas a barrier

Thus, there are four great bounties mentioned in this verse, three of which are about calmness

The calmness of the earth itself which in the meantime that it rotates around itself and around the sun as well as its travel in the constellation of solar system, its movement is so monotonous and quiet that its habitants never feel it, as if it is standing fix in a point and has not any movement

Another one is the existence of the mountains. As it was said before, they have surrounded the lands of the earth and their roots have clung to each other and have formed a strong armour against the inner pressures of the earth. This armour resists against the outward movements created by flow and ebb resulted from the gravity of the moon, too, and it is also a barrier against the great storms that disturb the calmness of the earth

Another one is the natural hinder which is between the two flows of a part of the sweet and salty water of some seas or oceans. This unseen inviolable obstruction is not any thing but the difference of the density of the sweet water and that of the salt water which causes the water of the great rivers that comes into the sea does not mix with its salty water for a considerable length of time and, therefore, the flow and ebb of the sea bring it over a great part of the lands of the seashore whose farms are ready to be irrigated. The explanation of this very meaning was cited in the commentary of Sura Furqān , No. ۲۵, verse ۵۳

In the meanwhile, there are some sources of water inside the different layers of parts of the earth. The water of these sources is the origin of liveliness and greenness of cultivated farms and fruitful gardens. A part of the sources of such water is located in mountains and another part is inside the layers of the earth

Can this system be the fruit of a deaf and blind cause and that of an origin with no intellect and knowledge

Have idols any function in the creation of this wonderful system? Even the idolaters themselves do not claim such a thing. So, at the end of the verse, this question is repeated, saying

”... ?Is there any god with Allah ...“

:And then it continues saying

”Nay! Most of them do not know ...“

In the next verse, the words are about solving difficulties, removing the distresses, and answering the supplications. It implies which is better, your worthless idols or :Allah. It says

,Or Who answers the distressed one when he calls on Him and removes the distress “
”...

Yes, at the time when all the doors of the world of means are shut to a man and he is helpless from any point of view, the only one who can unlock the lock of difficulties, brings the light of hope into the hearts and opens the doors of mercy to the distressed .ones is only His Pure Essence, not anyone else

In view of the fact that this reality as a natural feeling is inside the soul of all human beings, idol worshippers also forget all their objects of worship when they entangle with the huge waves of the sea and refer to the Grace of Allah, as the Qur’ān says: “Then, if they embark on a boat, they call on Allah, making their devotion sincerely (and exclusively) to Him; ...”[\(1\)](#)

Then the holy verse implies that not only He solves and removes the difficulties but :also He makes you successors in the earth. The verse says
and makes you successors in the earth. Is there any god with Allah? Little it is that ...“
”!you heed

Invoking Allah and prattling with Him is a worthy and an indispensable act. Supplicating to the Presence of Allah, and asking Him for solving the difficulties, .specially at the time of distress, is necessary for everybody

:Wherever our invocation is not answered, there is a reason for it, as follows

.Our invocation had not been for a good deed but we considered it as good –۱

.The manner in invocation has not been earnest and accompanied with distress –۲

We have not been sincere in our invocation. That is, while we have turned to the –۳ presence of Allah, we have had some hope in others, too. It is true, of course, that sometimes, instead of accepting our supplication, He gives us something similar to it, or sometimes, instead of our demand which is not expedient for us with Allah, He banishes a misfortune from us; and sometimes instead of answering our invocation in this world, He will compensate it in the Hereafter; and sometimes instead of doing a favour to us, He favours to our descendants. All of these meanings have been mentioned in the Islamic narrations

Of course, the condition of fulfilment of invocation, in general, is the existence of sincerity in one's invocation and having no hope in others. Allah is aware of those who ask Him for something in silence, but He likes that His servants ask their needs by their tongues

It is interesting that in some Islamic narrations this verse has been rendered into the ... (rising of Haḍrat Maḥdī (a.s.

Imam Bāqir (a.s.) in a tradition says: “By Allah, as if I see Maḥdī (a.s.) who has leaned against the Black Stone (of Ka‘bah) and calls Allah by his legitimacy ...” Then he said: “By Allah, he is the distressed one in the Book of Allah in the verse which says: ‘Or Who answers the distressed one when he calls on Him, and removes the distress, ...’” (۱)

p: ۱۴۵

... ,Nūr-uth-Thaqalayn, The Commentary, Vol. ۴, P. ۹۴; and Sāfī, Burhān –۱

In another tradition, Imam Ṣādiq (a.s.) says: “This verse has been revealed concerning Mahdī from the progeny of Muhammad (p.b.u.h.). By Allah he is the distressed one, when he keeps up two units prayer in the station of Abraham and offers a petition unto the presence of Allah, Almighty and Glorious, He answers him and removes the [distress](#) and makes him successor in the earth.”[\(1\)](#)

No doubt, the purpose of this commentary, as we have seen many instances similar to it, is not confining the concept of the verse to the specious rank of Haḍrat Mahdī (a.s.), but the verse has a vast scope of meaning and one of its clear denotation expansions is Haḍrat Mahdī (a.s.). That time is the time that corruption has covered everywhere, the doors of hope have been shut, everybody is helpless so that humankind is in an earnest blind alley, and the state of distress is seen throughout the world. At that time, in the most sacred point on the earth, the Holy Mosque, he invokes Allah and asks for removing the distress. Then Allah makes this invocation the outset of his worldly sacred revolution and, according to the holy phrase: “... and makes you successors in the earth ...”, He makes him and his followers the successors on the earth.

Concerning the importance of supplication, the conditions of the acceptance of invocation, and that why some prayers will not be answered, we have discussed in [details](#) when commenting on Sura Al-Baqarah, No. ۲, verse ۱۸۶.

p: ۱۴۶

(٦٣) أَمَّنْ يَهْدِيكُمْ فِي ظُلُمَاتِ الْبَرِّ وَالْبَحْرِ وَمَنْ يُرْسِلُ الرِّيَّاحَ بُشْرًا بَيْنَ يَدَيْ رَحْمَتِهِ أَلَيْهَ مَعَّ اللَّهُ تَعَالَى اللَّهُ عَمَّا يُشْرِكُونَ

Or Who guides you in the darkness of the land and the sea, and Who sends the “ ٦٣ winds as heralds of glad tidings of His Mercy? Is there any god with Allah? Exalted ”.(High is Allah above what they associate (with Him

Commentary, verse: ٦٣

The ‘guidance in the darkness of the land and the sea’ may be the guidance that comes through stars, because in another occurrence of the Qur’ān we recite: “... and (by the stars they find the right way.”(١)

The best way of theology for us is to pay attention to the difficulties and problems of life and that there appear some ways by which those problems may be solved or .there come some hopes to the grace of Allah

.If we use our conscious as a judge, we will find out that there is no god save Allah

So, this holy verse refers to the subject of guidance when it implies asking which is :better idols or Allah, and says

Or Who guides you in the darkness of the land and the sea, and Who sends the “ ”... ?winds as heralds of glad tidings of His Mercy

There are some winds that indicate to the descent of rain. These winds, as special heralds of good tidings, come before

p: ١٤٧

.falling rain. Their duty in fact, is also to guide people to the descent of rain

The application of the Qur'ānic word /bušrā/ (heralds of glad tidings) concerning the winds, and the word /rahmat/ (Mercy), concerning the rain, both are interesting, because the winds carry the moisture of weather by pieces of cloud arising from seas and oceans, and bring them to the dry and thirsty lands and give them goodness by .the descent of rain

Also it is raining that causes the merit of life to be seen throughout the earthly globe.
.Wherever it comes down, it brings goodness, mercy, bounty and life

The Qur'ānic word /bušr/ is the abbreviated form of /bušur/ which is the plural form of
./bašūr/ that means ‘the heralds of glad tidings

Some more details about the function of winds and rains is mentioned in the)
(commentary of Sura Al-'A'rāf, No. ۷, verse ۵۷

:At the end of the above verse, the Qur'ān, addressing the pagans again, says

”... ?Is there any god with Allah ...“

:Then, without waiting for any answer, it immediately says

”.(Exalted High is Allah above what they associate (with Him ...“

(٦٤) أَمْ مَنْ يَبْدَأُ الْخَلْقَ ثُمَّ يُعِيدُهُ وَمَنْ يَرْزُقُكُمْ مِنَ السَّمَاءِ وَالْأَرْضِ أَعْلَاهُ مَعَ اللَّهِ قُلْ هَاتُوا بُرْهَانَكُمْ إِنْ كُنْتُمْ صَادِقِينَ

Or, Who originates the creation, then reproduces it, and Who gives you “ ٦٤ . sustenance from the heaven and the earth? Is there any god with Allah? Say: ‘Bring your proof if you are truthful’.

Commentary, verse: ٦٤

From verse ٦٠ of this Sura up to this verse, the holy phrase “Is there any god with Allah?” has been repeated for five times, which is for the purpose of nullification of .paganism and negation of false gods

From the viewpoint of the Qur’ān, no created phenomenon vanishes, but it is from the viewpoint of us that they disappear. Resurrection is not for returning some vanished things so that some people imagine that it is an impossible job. It is returning the creatures to their first form, after some changes that have occurred in their physical forms. In other words, the same power which created it at first, can return it again either. Thus, this verse speaks about ‘origin and end’, and comparing their objects of :worship with Allah, says

”... ,Or, Who originates the creation, then reproduces it “

:And He Who sustains you between this beginning and end, is Allah, it continues saying

”... ?and Who gives you sustenance from the heaven and the earth ...“

?Yet, do you believe that there is a god with Allah

”... ?Is there any god with Allah ...“

Tell them if they have such a creed, they should bring their proof if they are truthful.

:The verse says

”?Say: ‘Bring your proof if you are truthful ...“

In fact all of the former verses were about the origin and the signs of the greatness of Allah in the world of existence as well as His merits and bounties, but in this verse the Qur’ān changes the discussion into a delicate passage unto the subject of Resurrection, because the initiation of creation is itself an evidence upon the end of it, and the ability of creation is counted as a clear reasoning for Resurrection

By this explanation, the answer of the question of many commentators is made clear. They say those pagans, who are addressed by these verses, often did not believe in Resurrection (resurrection of the body), in this case, how is it possible that we ask them and want them to confess

The answer to this question is accompanied with a reason which makes the opposite party confess, because when they confess that the initiation of the creation belongs to Him, and it is He Who gives these sustenance and merits, it is enough that they accept that there is a possibility of returning to life again in the Hereafter

By the way, the purpose of ‘the sustenance of the heaven’ is rain, sunlight, and the like; and the purpose of ‘The sustenance of the earth’ is the plants and different foodstuff which grow directly from the earth or originate indirectly from it, like cattle, mines, various things that man gets from it and enjoys them in his life

(٦٥) قُلْ لَا يَعْلَمُ مَنْ فِي السَّمَاوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ الْغَيْبَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَمَا يَشْعُرُونَ أَيَّانَ يُبْعَثُونَ

(٦٦) بَلِ إِذَا رَأَىٰ عِلْمَهُمْ فِي الْآخِرَةِ بَلَّ هُم فِي شَكٍّ مِّمَّنْهَا بَلَّ هُم مِنْهَا عَمُونَ

Say: No one in the heavens and the earth knows the Unseen save Allah and they “ .٦٥
”do not know when they shall, be raised

Nay, but their knowledge falls as to the Hereafter; nay, they are in doubt about it; “ .٦٦
”.nay they are quite blind unto it

Commentary, verses: ٦٥–٦٦

Unseen is of several kinds and Allah teaches a kind of it to the prophets, as the Qur’ān says: “(O Prophet!) These are of the tidings of Unseen which We reveal unto you. ...” (١) But another kind of it, such as the knowledge of the time of the occurrence of .Hereafter, is particular to the Holy Essence of Allah

The application of /man/ (who) in Arabic literature is for intellectual beings. Therefore, besides the angels, there may be some intellectual creatures in the heavens who, like .human beings, will be raised up in Hereafter

Since in the former verse the words were about Hereafter and Resurrection, these .couple of verses refer to this subject from different points of view

At first, it answers the question of those pagans who had repeatedly asked and said:

:“When does Hereafter occur?”, it says

Say: No one in the heavens and the earth knows the Unseen save Allah and they do “

”.?not know when they shall, be raised

No doubt the knowledge of Unseen, including the date of the happening of Hereafter, belongs to Allah, but it does not contrast to the fact that He gives a part of the knowledge of Unseen to some ones that He desires; as Sura Jinn, No. ۷۲, verses ۲۶ and ۲۷ say: “He (alone) knows the Unseen, nor does He make anyone acquainted with
”... ,His secrets.” “Except to him whom He chooses as a messenger

In other words, the knowledge of Unseen, essentially, independently, and illimitably, is particularized to Allah, and whatever others know is from His origin, but, in any case, the date of the occurrence of Hereafter is exceptional from this affair, and no
.one is aware of it

Then the next holy verse refers to the lack of knowledge, unawareness and doubt of

:pagan about Hereafter. It says

Nay, but their knowledge falls as to the Hereafter; nay, they are in doubt about it; “

nay they are quite

”.blind unto it

The Qur’ānic word /’iddāarak/ has originally been /tadāruk/ in the sense of ‘arranged one after another’. Thus the concept of the sentence in this verse is that they used all their knowledge about Hereafter but they gained nothing. That is why, next to it, the verse says: “... Nay, they are in doubt about it, nay they are quite blind unto it.” The evidence of it is that the signs of Hereafter are seen in the life of this very

world, including: the return of the dead land to life in summer, the trees that become fruitful after winter, and observing the greatness of Allah's power in whole creation. All of these are some evidence for the life possible after death, but they pass by them as if they are blind. In other words, pagans do not know when they will be raised up and they are doubtful about it. Now the verse announces that they will understand its reality in Hereafter. Their knowledge about Hereafter will become complete in Hereafter and they will find certainty about it, a certainty which will be in vain, while .they are doubtful about it in this world

p: ١٥٣

Everyone shall be resurrected – The judgment shall come to pass – Bounties of Allah – Nothing in the heavens or in the earth is hidden from Allah’s knowledge – To rely upon Allah – The Dead can not listen and the Deaf can not hear – A walking one shall .be created on earth who will speak about the disbelief of the people

(۶۷) وَقَالَ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا أَإِذَا كُنَّا تُرَابًا وَاَبَاؤُنَا أَأَنَّا لَمَّ—خُرْجُونَ

(۶۸) لَقَدْ وُعِدْنَا هَذَا نَحْنُ وَاَبَاؤُنَا مِنْ قَبْلُ إِنْ هَذَا إِلَّا أَسَاطِيرُ الْأَوَّلِينَ

And those who disbelieve say: ‘When we have become dust, and our fathers (too), “ .۶۷
”?(shall we certainly be brought forth (again

Indeed we had been promised this, we and our fathers before (too), (but) these “ .۶۸
”are not but fables of the ancients

Commentary, verses: ۶۷–۶۸

.One of the things that the enemies do is to create doubts in ideological subjects

.If we do not accept a fact, it is not a reason that it will not occur, or it does not exist

:This verse states the logic of the rejecters of Resurrection in one sentence, it says

And those who disbelieve say: ‘When we have become dust, and our fathers (too), “
”?(shall we certainly be brought forth (again

They only sufficed to this matter that it is impossible that a man becomes dust and comes to life again, while they were dust at first and they came into being from dust.

?Is not it possible that they return to dust and then come forth for a new life

It is interesting that there are eight instances in the Qur'ān with the same meaning wherein, as soon as they come to imagination of impossibility of Hereafter, they have paved the path of denial

:Then they add

”... ,(Indeed we had been promised this, we and our fathers before (too “

They say that they were promised it before but they found no sign of it, therefore, these promises are not anything but imaginations and superstitions. The verse continues saying

”.but) these are not but fables of the ancients) ...“

Thus, they begin from impossibility of the occurrence of Hereafter and, after that, they take it as the foundation of an absolute denial. It seemed that they expected Resurrection would happen very soon, and, since they did not see it in their own lifetime, they negated it. However, these statements are the sign of their pride and negligence

By the way, through this wrong interpretation, they wanted to belittle the Prophet's word about the Hereafter and to say that this is one of the baseless old promises which others gave to their ancestors, too, and it was not a new matter for them to be dealt with

(٦٩) قُلْ سِيرُوا فِي الْأَرْضِ فَانظُرُوا كَيْفَ كَانَ عَاقِبَةُ الْمُجْرِمِينَ

(٧٠) وَلَا تَحْزَنْ عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا تَكُن فِي ضَيْقٍ مِّمَّا يَمْكُرُونَ

”Say: ‘Travel in the earth and see how the end of the guilty (ones) has been “ .٦٩

”And do not grieve for them nor be you straitened for what they devise “ .٧٠

Commentary, verses: ٦٩–٧٠

Several times the Qur’ān, by the Arabic phrase /sīrū/ (travel) or the phrase /’afalam yasīrū/ (did you not travel), has encouraged people to travel in the earth, and in many of them the purpose has been for warning, awareness, and taking an example from the life of wrong doers

Visiting the remained traces of the oppressors of history is one of the means of growth and training

Former verses said about the fanatic pagans and their denial of Resurrection when they rejected it by their own derides and ridicules

:In this noble verse, the Qur’ān addresses the holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) and says

”Say: ‘Travel in the earth and see how the end of the guilty (ones) has been “

You say that these promises have also been given to your ancestors, and they did not give heed to them, too, nor they were damaged. But if you travel in the world and watch the traces of these criminal, sinful ones, the deniers of monotheism and Resurrection of the old, which are found in the locality of the land of Hijāz, your own land, you will understand that the fact is something else

Do not hasten, your turn will come, too. If you do not amend yourselves, you will have
.the same evil fate, either

The Qur'ān has repeatedly invited people to travel in the earth and observe the traces of the old, the ruined lands of the nations who have been seized by the Divine punishment, the destroyed castles of the kings of the ancient, the scattered graves and the rotten bones of the oppressors, and the remaining ownerless properties of the haughty wealthy ones. The Qur'ān specially declares that studying these traces, which are the alive, expressive, and concrete history of the ancient people, in fact, makes the minds aware, and gives insight to them. Sometimes, visiting one of these effects creates such a storm of vigilance in the soul and spirit of man that studying
.several thick history books does not have it

A rather detailed explanation in this regard has already been offered in Sura 'Āl-
.i-'Imrān, No. ٣, verse ١٣٧

It is worth noting that, in this verse, instead of applying the Qur'ānic word /mukaḏḏibīn/ (rejecters) the word /mujrimīn/ (the guilty) has been used. This points to the fact that their denial was not because of their mistake in their research, but the
.origin of it was obstinacy, enmity, and being polluted by kinds of crimes

(٧١) وَيَقُولُونَ مَتَى هَذَا الْوَعْدُ إِن كُنْتُمْ صَادِقِينَ

(٧٢) قُلْ عَسَى أَنْ يَكُونَ رَدِفَ لَكُمْ بَعْضُ الَّذِي تَسْتَعْجِلُونَ

(٧٣) وَإِنَّ رَبَّكَ لَذُو فَضْلٍ عَلَى النَّاسِ وَلَكِنَّ أَكْثَرَهُمْ لَا يَشْكُرُونَ

(٧٤) وَإِنَّ رَبَّكَ لَيَعْلَمُ مَا تُكِنُّ صُدُورُهُمْ وَمَا يُعْلِنُونَ

And they say: ‘When shall this promise (of chastisement) come to pass, if you are “ .٧١
”?’truthful

”.’Say: ‘May be that it is after you, a part of what you seek to hasten “ .٧٢

And verily your Lord is the Lord of grace unto the people, but most of them are “ .٧٣
”.not grateful

And verily your Lord well-knows what their breasts conceal and what they “ .٧٤
”.manifest

Commentary, verse: ٧١–٧٤

Whenever the Divine prophets warned people concerning Hereafter and the punishment of Allah, some people asked about the time of the occurrence of Hereafter. But in view of the fact that none knows the time of Hereafter except Allah, the prophets did not answer them, and they only warned the people of the principle of .the punishment of Allah, not its time

The pagans, of course, in order to observe the Divine chastisement, had some haste with ridicule, and instead of taking counsel from the warning of their kind prophet and :paying attention to their fate, they ridiculed them, as the verse indicates

And they say: ‘When shall this promise (of chastisement) come to pass, if you are “
”?’truthful

This verse addresses the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) but the matter is used in plural form, because the true believers also said the same thing that the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) announced and naturally they are the addressees of the verse, too

Through the next verse, the Qur'ān, with a very truthful tone, answers this ridiculous statement of theirs, when it says

”Say: ‘May be that it is after you, a part of what you seek to hasten ‘

Why do you hasten? Why do you consider the Divine punishment so little? Why do you not have pity to yourselves? Do know that chastisement is certainly earnest! Probably the punishment of Allah has come above you because of these very words of yours, and soon will fall over you and annihilate you. What is this ceaseless obstinacy for

The Arabic word /ridf/ is derived from /radf/ which means ‘to be set after each other

Concerning the objective of this punishment, some of the commentators have said that its purpose is the same sharp struck that these obstinate disbelievers received in the Battle of Badr, the first Battle of Muslims against pagans, in which seventy chiefs of the pagans were killed and seventy persons of them were taken captives

There is also another probability that the purpose of it is the common painful punishment, but at last it was removed because of the existence of the Prophet ((p.b.u.h.) among them who was “... a Mercy for (all) the worlds”⁽¹⁾

And Sura Al-'Anfāl, No. ٨, verse ٣٣ is an evidence upon this meaning. It says: “But Allah ... ,is not to punish them while you are among them

The application of the Arabic word /‘asā/ (may be) in the verse is from the tongue of the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) and it does not matter, and it is also in the word of Allah, though some commentators have considered something else. It points to the existence of premises required for something, though these premises may be faced with some barriers and they do not lead to the ultimate result

Then, in the next verse, it states the fact that if Allah does not hasten in punishing you, it is because of His grace and Mercy on you so that you may have enough time to amend yourselves and recompense your past. It says

And verily your Lord is the Lord of grace unto the people, but most of them are not “grateful”.

By verse No. ٧٤, it implies that if they imagine that the delay in their punishment is for the sake that Allah is not aware of the evil and ugly thought they have in their minds, they make a great mistake, because the Qur’ān says

”And verily your Lord well-knows what their breasts conceal and what they manifest “

He knows the secrets of their inward as much as He knows their outward deeds, and principally inward and outward, visible and invisible, all are the same for Him

(٧٥) وَمَا مِنْ غَائِبَةٍ فِي السَّمَاءِ وَالْأَرْضِ إِلَّا فِي كِتَابٍ مُبِينٍ

And there is nothing hidden in the heavens and the earth but it is in a Manifest “ .٧٥
” .Book

Commentary, verse: ٧٥

All the hidden affairs of mankind, intentions, the occurrence of Hereafter, the time when Divine mercy or chastisement come, and other secrets, are among the Unseen .of the heavens and the earth

The objective of the Qur’ānic phrase: /kitābin mubīn/ here may be the Protected tablet .and the infinite knowledge of Allah

However, this verse implies that not only Allah knows their inward and outward :secrets, but His knowledge is also so vast that includes every thing. The verse says

” .And there is nothing hidden in the heavens and the earth but it is in a Manifest Book “

It is clear that the Arabic word /qā’ibah/ has a vast scope of meaning which encompasses everything that is hidden from our senses, irrespective of the concealed deeds of the servants, their esoteric intentions, and the secrets that are also hidden in the heavens and the earth, as well as appearance of Resurrection, the descent of divine punishment and the like. Then, there is no reason that, like some .commentators, we comment it on only one of these affairs

The objective of /kitābin/, as was said in the above, is the Protected Tablet, the same source of the infinite knowledge of Allah which has been referred to in Sura Al-’An‘ām, [\(No. ٦, verse ٥٩.١\)](#)

p: ١٤١

The contents of the former verses show that, in order to shirk believing in Resurrection and its responsibilities, the rejecters of Resurrection expressed their objections in three ways

To return to life after becoming dust is improbable, because, as they believed, dust –١ could not be the source of life

.This kind of belief belongs to the ancient, and it is not a new thing –٢

The lack of the descent of punishment for the rejecters of Resurrection, because, –٣ they said, if the rejecters must really be punished in this world, why does not this punishment seize them

For the answer of the first and the second instances, the Qur'ān has left it to their clearness, because we always see by our eyes that dust becomes the source of life. At first, we were dust and then we came into being as a living creature

The state of a thing being old or belonging to the ancient does not decrease its importance, because the main laws of this world, from pre-eternity to future eternity, are wholly fix and unchangeable. The fix principles in philosophical principles, mathematic problems, and other sciences are abundant. Is the Pythagoras' multiplication table invalid because it is old, or is its being ancient as a reason for its weakness? Or if we see that justice is good and injustice is bad, and it is so and it will be so forever, is it a reason for its falseness? In principle, many times, the perpetuity of something proves its authenticity

Concerning their third objection, the Qur'ān answers that they should not hasten for meeting chastisement. It is the grace of Allah that He gives them respite and does not punish them promptly, but they must be careful that chastisement will come though it comes late

(٧٦) إِنَّ هَذَا الْقُرْآنَ يَقُصُّ عَلَى بَنِي إِسْرَائِيلَ أَكْثَرَ الَّذِي هُمْ فِيهِ يَخْتَلِفُونَ

(٧٧) وَإِنَّهُ لَهُدًى وَرَحْمَةٌ لِّلْمُؤْمِنِينَ

”Verily this Qur’ān relates to the Children of Israel most of what they differ in “ .٧٦

”And verily it is a guidance and mercy for the believers “ .٧٧

Commentary, verses: ٧٦–٧٧

This verse shows that at the time of the advent of the holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.), the contents of the Torah and Evangel could not solve the differences of the People of the Book, and only the Qur’ān, which is a dominant over the former heavenly Books, has
.the ability of solving the discords

Yes, solving the deep doctrinal differences, also by an uninstructed prophet who could
.neither read nor write, is the sign of miracle and legitimacy of the Qur’ān

In previous holy verse, the words were about (both) Origin and End, while the verses under discussion, by pointing to the subject of prophethood and legitimacy of the Holy
.Qur’ān, completes this discussion

On the other side, the former verses pointed to the infinite knowledge of Allah (s.w.t.),
.and in these verses this subject is explained more

Furthermore, in those verses the addressees were pagans, but here the words are
:about other disbelievers, such as the Jews and their differences. At first, it says

”Verily this Qur’ān relates to the Children of Israel most of what they differ in “

The Children of Israel had discords among them in many things; like about Maryam, Jesus, the prophet whose glad tidings had been mentioned in the Torah, and that who this prophet was, and in many ordinances and religious affairs. The Qur’ān came and said the true matter in this field. It said Jesus introduced himself explicitly and said he was a servant of Allah Who had given him a heavenly Book and assigned him a prophet, “He (miraculously) said: ‘Verily I am a servant of Allah; He has given me the Book and made me a prophet’.”⁽¹⁾ The Qur’ān also made it clear that Jesus was born only from mother and without father, and that was not an impossible affair for Allah, because He created Adam without parents from the dust: “The likeness of Jesus, with
(Allah, is as the likeness of Adam. He created him from dust ...”⁽²⁾

Concerning the Divine prophet whose qualities are clearly mentioned in the Torah, the Qur’ān considers that those qualifications adapt to the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.),
.because they adapt to none but him

However, one of the missions of the Qur’ān is to struggle against the differences which have come into being because of mixing the superstitions with the true teachings of the Divine prophets. So, every prophet was commanded to put an end to the discord originated from distortions and confusions of right and wrong; and since the fulfilment of such an action is not possible to be done by an illiterate person in the
.environment of ignorance, it is clear that it is from the side of Allah

p: ۱۶۴

Sura Maryam, No. ۱۹, verse ۳۰ –۱
Sura ’Āl-i-‘Imrān, No. ۳, verse ۵۹ –۲

In view of the fact that struggling against any discord is the cause of guidance and
:mercy, the next verse, as a general principle, says about the Qur'ān

”And verily it is a guidance and mercy for the believers “

Yes, it is guidance and mercy because the evidence of its truthfulness has lain in the
.magnificence of its content

The Qur'ān is guidance and mercy because it shows both the way and the style of
.paving the way

The Qur'ānic term /mu'minīn/ (believers) mentioned specially in this verse, is for the
sake that, as was pointed out before, a person cannot enjoy this Divine source unless
he has a stage of faith in him, that is, he must have a receptive state for accepting the
.truth and submitting to Allah

p: ۱۶۵

(٧٨) إِنَّ رَبَّكَ يَقْضِي بَيْنَهُمْ بِحُكْمِهِ وَهُوَ الْعَزِيزُ الْعَلِيمُ

(٧٩) فَتَوَكَّلْ عَلَى اللَّهِ إِنَّكَ عَلَى الْحَقِّ الْمُبِينِ

Verily your Lord will judge between them by His judgment, and He is the Mighty, “ .٧٨
”.the Knowing

”.Therefore rely on Allah, verily you are on the manifest truth “ .٧٩

Commentary, verses: ٧٨–٧٩

Judgment is one of the dignities of the Lordship of Allah, because there is no ignorance, fear, instinct and happenings effective in Him, and his judgment is completely just

The opponents of the holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) used to seek pretext while the way of Faith had no ambiguity

It was why some of the Children of Israel resisted against the facts that the Qur’ān had stated and did not submit to the truth. This verse says

Verily your Lord will judge between them by His judgment, and He is the Mighty, the “ .Knowing

In this verse, this fact, that the final Judgment is on the Hereafter Day, is not explicitly mentioned, but considering the next two verses which exactly speak about the differences between the Children of Israel and the judgment of Allah, and that the Day of Judgment is clearly mentioned therein, it makes manifest that the objective in the verse under discussion is also the same. Sura Al-Jāthiyah, No. ٤٥, verse ١٧ says: “Verily the Lord will judge between them on the Day of Judgment as to those matters .in which they set differences

.Something similar to this verse is also recited in Sura Yūnus, No. ١٠, verse ٩٣

Qualifying Allah (s.w.t.) to 'Mighty' and 'Knowing' is an indication to the couple of qualifications which are necessary for a judge who must be aware enough and be able to execute the judgment. Allah is the Most Mighty, the most Knowing

Since these statements, besides expressing the greatness of the Qur'ān and being a threat for the Children of Israel, are counted as a means for calmness and peace of mind of the Prophet (p.b.u.h.), through the next verse the Qur'ān says

"... ,Therefore rely on Allah "

To rely on Allah Who is the Mighty, the Knowing, is relying on the One Who is invincible and Omniscient, and relying on Him Who has given you the Qur'ān, with that magnificence. The Prophet (p.b.u.h.) is commanded to rely on Allah and does not :afraid of the oppositions of the enemies, because the Qur'ān says

".verily you are on the manifest truth ..."

(٨٠) إِنَّكَ لَا تَسْمَعُ الْمَوْتَى وَلَا تَسْمَعُ الصُّمَّ الدُّعَاءَ إِذَا وَلَّوْا مُدْبِرِينَ

(٨١) وَمَا أَنْتَ بِهَادِي الْعُمَىٰ عَن ضَلَالَتِهِمْ إِنْ تُسْمِعُ إِلَّا مَنْ يُؤْمِنُ بِآيَاتِنَا فَهُمْ مُسْلِمُونَ

Verily you cannot make the dead to listen nor can you make the deaf to hear the “ ٨٠
” .call when they turn away backward

Nor can you lead the blind against their straying; you can make none hear save “ ٨١
” .those who believe in Our revelations and who have surrendered

Commentary, verses: ٨٠–٨١

In the culture of the Holy Qur’ān death and life have been used for both ‘the natural
’ .death and life’ and ‘the spiritual death and life

Those who are not affected by the word of Truth are considered dead in the culture of
the Qur’ān, and vice versa. As in many occurrences of it the Qur’ān says not to think of
the martyr as dead, they are alive, happy, and being provided sustenance with their
Lord. Therefore, those obstinate, stone-hearted ones who are alive are really dead,
and the martyr, who have passed away, are really alive. It is better to speak rather
more clearly. There are some stages for life: ١) The vegetal life, upon which the Qur’ān
says: “... Who gives life to the earth after its death ...” (١) ٢) The animal life, about which
,the Qur’ān says: “... Who gives you life ...” (٢) ٣) Spiritual life

p: ١٤٨

Sura Ar-Rūm, No. ٣٠, verse ١٩; and Sura Al-Hadīd, No. ٥٧, verse ١٧ –١

Sura Al-Jāthiyah, No. ٤٥, verse ٢٤ –٢

as the Qur’ān says: “That it may give admonition to any (who are) alive, ...” (١) That is, they are those who have safe intellect and nature. It also says: “... he invites you to (that which gives you life, ...” (٢)

The political and social life is for life, as the Qur’ān says: “And in (the law of) (٤ retaliation there is (saving) of life for you, ...” (٣) (٥) The life in the next word, as some mortals will say about it: “... O’ would that I had forwarded (good deeds) for (this) my (life.” (٤)

However, in this holy verse, the Qur’ān implies that if they do not accept this ‘clear truth’ and your enthusiastic words do not affect in their cold hearts, it is not wonderful for

”... Verily you cannot make the dead to listen “

Your addressees are the alive ones, those who have a lively, vigilant, and truth-seeking spirit, not those dead who seem alive but bigotry, obstinacy, and constant committing sin have suspended their thought and contemplation. Therefore, the :verse continues saying about those who are alive but their ears are spiritually deaf

”.nor can you make the deaf to hear the call when they turn away backward ...“

Then by the next verse, the Qur’ān implies that if, instead of hearkening ears they had eyes with insight in such case, though the sound did not reach their ears, they might find the Straight Path by signs and marks, but it is a pity that they are blind, too, and as :the verse says

p: ١٦٩

Sura Yāsīn, No. ٣٦, verse ٧٠ -١

Sura Al-’Anfāl, No. ٨, verse ٢٤ -٢

Sura Al-Baqarah, No. ٢, verse ١٧٩ -٣

Sura Al-Fajr, No. ٨٩, verse ٢٤ -٤

”... ;Nor can you lead the blind against their straying “

Thus, all the ways of conception the truth are shut to them: their hearts are dead,
:their ears are deaf, and their eyes are blind. So, the Qur’ān continues saying
you can make none hear save those who believe in Our revelations and who have ...“
”.surrendered

In fact these two verses refer to a clear collection of the factors of cognizance and the way of man’s communication with outward world. The sense of discrimination and vigilant intellect is against despondency; a hearkening ear for attracting the words of Truth is against being heedless to them through the ear; and an eye with insight of .observing the feature of right and wrong through the eye

But obstinacy, contumacy, blindly imitation, and sin, make the truth seeking eyes of man blind, make his ear deaf to hear the truth, and also cause his intellect and heart (mind) not to work. If all prophets, the saints, and the angels come to guide such persons, it will be in vain, because their communication with the outward world of .their entity has utterly been ceased and they refer to only themselves

In other words, he who is physically alive but is so engaged in lusts that he neither hears the cry of an oppressed, nor does he hear the sound of the seeker of the truth, nor does he sees the feature of an indigent, nor does he observe the effects of the greatness of Allah in the scene of creation, nor does he even contemplate about his past and future, such a person in the logic of the Qur’ān is dead. But those whose works are spread and used in the world after their death and whose thoughts, ways of manner, and conditions are introduced as guide, leader and example for others; .such persons are spiritually alive forever

However, we mention this point again that the purpose of Faith and submission is not in that he had accepted the facts of religion from before, so that it is actualization of what has already been actualized, but the aim is that man should have the mood of truth seeking state and humiliation before the command of Allah, else he will never hearken to the words of Divine prophets. Yes, if the hearer is stone-hearted the true speech, even from a pure and eligible speaker, does not affect on him. It is like a .consumed lamp which does not give light by connection with any electricity

A weak sect from among Muslims have taken the verse “Verily you cannot make the dead to listen” as a means for their deviated thought. They say that the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.) has passed away and he does not hear any word, therefore it is .meaningless that we pilgrimage and, addressing him, state some matters

The answer to this sect is that the verse is in the position of a simile. It is like the simile of the heart of a cruel person from the point of effectiveness which is likened to stone, as the Qur’ān says: “Then your hearts hardened after that as stone ...”^(۱) Of course, it does not mean that for everything their hearts are like stone, because the Qur’ān has accepted the purgatory life for the martyr and there are some narrations cited in the :Sunnite and Shi’ite sources, as follows

Muhammad-ibn-‘Abdul-Wahhāb in the book entitled: Al-Hidyat-us-Sunniyyah, P. ۴۱, -۱ says: “The prophet has a purgatory life after his death which is superior to the life of .the martyr and he hears the greeting of those who greet him

There are many traditions recorded in Shi’ite and Sunnite sources in this field that -۲ the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) and

p: ۱۷۱

Immaculate Imams (a.s.) hear the words of those who salute them from near and far
(distances and answer them, and even the deeds of people are said to them.)

It is cited in Sahīḥ Bukhārī: “The Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) spoke with the – ۳
annihilated pagans of the Battle of Badr;” and when he was asked by ‘Umar, he
(p.b.u.h.) said: “By Allah, in Whose hand is the soul of Muhammad, you are not a better
(hearer (than them).)”

At the end of the Battle of Jamal, Haḍrat Ali (a.s.) said: “Make the corpse of Ka‘b – ۴
ibn-Sur sit!” Then he (a.s.) told him, while he had been killed: “Woe be to you that did
(not enjoy your knowledge and Satan caused you go astray and sent you to Hell.”

p: ۱۷۲

Kashf-ul-’Irtiyāb, P. ۱۰۹ –۱

Sahīḥ-Bukhārī, Vol. ۵, P. ۹۷ –۲

Sharh-i-Nahjul-Balāqah, by Ibn-’Abil-Hadīd, Vol. ۱, P. ۲۴۸ –۳

(٨٢) وَإِذَا وَقَعَ الْقَوْلُ عَلَيْهِمْ أَخْرَجْنَا لَهُمْ دَابَّةً مِّنَ الْأَرْضِ تُكَلِّمُهُمْ أَنَّ النَّاسَ كَانُوا بِآيَاتِنَا لَا يُوقِنُونَ

And when the word is fulfilled against them We shall bring forth for them a “ ٨٢ moving creature from the earth that shall speak unto them, because people did not believe in Our revelations ”.

Commentary, verse: ٨٢

Some Islamic traditions announce that when human beings suspend the act of enjoining what is right and fulfil none of them, they will obligatory deserve the Divine displeasure, wrath and chastisement, and, at this time, a creature will come out from between Safā and Marwah in order to inform the believer that he is faithful and to [inform the disbeliever that he is an infidel.](#)

It is then that the duty will be removed and no repentance will be accepted, and this is one of the signs of Hereafter

However, the words in the former verses were about the pagans who hastened for meeting the Divine punishment or the occurrence of Hereafter and impatiently expected it to happen. They told the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) why those punishments that they were promised did not come to them? Why the Hereafter did not happen? The verse under discussion points to a part of the events that happen at the threshold of Resurrection, and depict the painful fate of these obstinate rejecters. It says

p: ١٧٣

Majma‘-ul-Bayān, Jawāmi‘-ul-Jāmi‘, and Manhaj-us-Sādiqīn. The commentary of ١ .the verse

And when the word is fulfilled against them We shall bring forth for them a moving “creature from the earth that shall speak unto them, because people did not believe in
”Our revelations

The objective of the Qur’ānic phrase: “... the word is fulfilled against them ...” is Allah’s command which will be issued for the punishment they have been promised, or the occurrence of Resurrection and the manifestation of its sign. These are the signs that by observing them every one will become humble and submissive, and he will be completely certain that the promises of Allah were true and the Hereafter is near. In that circumstance the doors of repentance will be closed, because the faith in that
.condition will be a constrained belief which is not accepted

These two meanings are not separate from each other, because approaching the Day
.of Hereafter is accompanied with the punishment of the wrong doers

Concerning this earthly creature and that what or who he is, and what program he will have, the Qur’ān has stated ambiguously. It seems that the Qur’ān wanted to speak shortly about it, for sometime the effect of the word is in that the horrible matter
.should be said in curtain

The Qur’ān only implies that this is a creature that, at the threshold of Resurrection, Allah will bring it forth from the earth and this creature will speak with people, saying that the people do not believe in the verses of Allah. In other words, his job is to separate the rows from each other and to distinguish between the row of rejecters
.and hypocrites and the row of believers

It is evident that, by seeing this scene, the rejecters will become regretful from their
.own dark past, but they will not have any way to return

In Islamic narrations, the commentary books, and Shi'ite and Sunnite sources of traditions, there are many matters about the details of the Qur'ānic phrase: /dābbatan min al 'ard/ (a moving creature from the earth) as well as its exact qualities and specifications, a short explanation of which is as follows

The Arabic word /dābbah/ means 'a moving creature', and the word /'ard/ means 'earth', and in spite of the belief of some commentators, the word /dābbah/ is not applied only for moving creatures other than humankind, but it has a vast meaning and encompasses human beings, too. We recite in Sura Hūd, No. ١١, verse ٤: "And ... ,there is no moving creature on the earth but its sustenance is on Allah

Sura An-Nahl, No. ١٦, verse ٤١ says: "And if Allah were to take people to task for their ... ,inequity, He would not leave on it (the earth) a single moving being

Sura Al-'Anfāl, No. ٨, verse ٢٢ says: "Verily the worst of animals in the sight of Allah are ... the deaf, the dumb, who do not understand

Concerning the adaptation of this term with its meaning, as it was already said in the above, the Qur'ān has referred to it ambiguously, and the only quality that it has stated for it is that the creature speaks with people and compendiously defines the disbelievers. But there are a lot of discussions in this regard in Islamic narrations and commentaries of the commentators all of which can be referred to in two commentaries

A group of commentators of the Qur'ān believe that it is an extraordinary living and -١ moving creature which is not of the kind of human and has a wonderful shape. They .have cited some wonders about it that are similar to the miracles of Divine prophets

This moving creature will appear on ‘the last day’ and will speak about disbelief and Faith, and, by putting marks on the hypocrites, will make them infamous

Another group, following numerous Islamic narrations recorded in this field, say – ۲ that this moving creature is a man, an extraordinary man. He is a moving and active man, one of whose main actions is separating the rows of Muslims from hypocrites and putting marks on them. Some narrations even indicate that the Rod of Moses and the Signer of Solomon will be with him; and we know that the Rod of Moses is the secret of power and miracle, and the Signer of Solomon is the secret of Divine government and domination. Thus he is a powerful man who divulges the facts

Hathīfah narrates a tradition from the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) who, qualifying /dābbat-ul-’Arḍ/ (a moving creature from the earth), said: “(He is so strong that) no one can reach him nor any one can flee from him. He puts a sign on the forehead of every believer and writes ‘believer’ between his eyes, and puts a sign on the forehead of every disbeliever and also writes ‘disbeliever’ between his eyes; and he has the Rod (of Moses and the Signer of Solomon.)[\(۱\)](#)

Some narrations have adapted it to Amir-ul-Mu’minīn Ali (a.s.). It is recorded in the commentary of Ali-ibn-’Ebrāhīm, narrated from Imam Sādiq (a.s.): “Once a man told ‘Ammār Yāsir that there is a verse in the Qur’ān which has disturbed his mind and caused him to be doubtful. ‘Ammār asked which verse it was and he answered the verse which says: “And when the word is fulfilled against them We shall bring forth for them a moving creature from the earth that shall speak unto them, because people did not believe in Our revelations”, and he added

p: ۱۷۶

Majma‘-ul-Bayān, and tafsīr-us-Sāfī, the commentary of the verse –۱

which moving creature it was. ‘Ammār said: ‘By Allah! I do not sit on the ground, nor do I eat any food nor drink any water before I show you /dābbat-ul-’arḍ/. Then he, accompanying with that man, came to Ali (a.s.) while he was having food. When he (a.s.) saw ‘Ammār he told him to come in. ‘Ammār came near, sat down and ate food with Ali (a.s.). That man seriously wondered, while he has watching that scene incredibly, because ‘Ammār had promised him and had made an oath that he would not eat any food before fulfilling his promise, as if he had forgotten his promise and
his oath

When ‘Ammār stood up and said good by to Ali (a.s.), that man, addressing him, said he made an oath not to eat food nor drink water, nor sit on the ground unless he show the man /dābbat-ul-’arḍ/. ‘Ammār answered him: ‘Did I not show it to you if you
”?”understood

A tradition similar to this one is narrated from ‘Abūthar recorded in the commentary
(of ‘Ayyāshī. [1](#))

Allamah Majlesī, with a valid document, has cited in Bihar-ul-’Anwār that Ali (a.s.) was ‘asleep in the mosque when the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) came in there. He (p.b.u.h.) roused Ali (a.s.) from sleep and said: “Get up O’ moving creature of Allah!”. One of the companions asked the Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) whether they are right to call each other by that name, and the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) said: “No. this name is specialized to Ali, and he is /dābbat-ul-’arḍ/ about whom Allah has said in the Qur’ān: ‘And when the word is fulfilled against them We shall bring forth for them a moving creature from the earth that shall speak unto them, because people did not believe in Our revelations’.” Then he (p.b.u.h.) said: “O’ Ali! On the last day, Allah will restore you to life
in the best form

p: ۱۷۷

[\(and there will be a means in your hand by which you will mark the enemies.”](#)[\(1\)](#)

According to this tradition, the abovementioned verse is about ‘return to life’, and it
adapts to the next verse which is about ‘return to life

The Late Abul-Futūh Rāzī records in his commentary book concerning the above
verse: “According to the information we received by the way of our Companions, the
Qur’ānic phrase /dābbatul ’arḍ/ is an implicit declaration to Haḍrat Maḥdī, the Lord of
[\(the age \(a.s.\).”](#)[\(2\)](#)

Keeping this tradition and the above traditions in mind, we can take a more general
concept from the holy phrase /dābbat-ul-’arḍ/ and adapt it to each one of the great
leaders who rises in ‘the last day’ and has an extraordinary movement by which he
differentiates between right and wrong as well as believer and disbeliever

This meaning involved in the narrations which indicate that the Rod of Moses and
Signer of Solomon, which are the secrets of power, victory and government, will be
with him, is a frame of reference that ‘ a moving creature from the earth’ is a very
active human

And also the fact which is mentioned in the narrations that he will mark the believer
and disbeliever and separate their rows, adapts to the meaning that the creature is a
human

The quality of ‘speaking with people’ which is mentioned in the text of the Qur’ān is
also appropriate to this very meaning

On the other side, there are some other references in the above verse itself added to
many traditions concerning the

p: ۱۷۸

Bihār-ul-’Anwār, Vol. ۵۳, P. ۵۲ –۱

The Commentary of Abul-Futūh Rāzī, Vol. ۸, P. ۴۲۳ –۲

commentary of the verse, all show that the objective of /dābbat-ul-'ard/ here is a human with the qualities mentioned in the above. He is a very active human being who specifies the right and wrong as well as the believer from unbeliever and hypocrite. It is a human being who will appear at the threshold of Resurrection and .himself is one of the signs of the greatness of Allah

p: ۱۷۹

Section Y: The coming of the Day of Judgment

Point

Signs or the symptoms of the dawn of the Day of Judgment – The bounties of Allah – The blowing of the Terrific Trumpet – and announcing the dawn of the Day of Judgment – The doers of good shall be liberally rewarded and the wicked shall be punished for their own deeds

(٨٣) وَيَوْمَ نَحْشُرُ مِنْ كُلِّ أُمَّةٍ فَوْجًا مِمَّنْ يُكَذِّبُ بِآيَاتِنَا فَهُمْ يُوزَعُونَ

(٨٤) حَتَّىٰ إِذَا جَاءُوا قَالَ أَكَذَّبْتُمْ بِآيَاتِي وَلَمْ تُحِيطُوا بِهَا عِلْمًا أَمْ آذًا كُنْتُمْ تَعْمَلُونَ

And on the Day when We shall muster out of every nation a party from those who “ ٨٣
”belied Our revelations, and they shall be kept in rank

Till when they come (before their Lord), He will say: ‘Did you reject My revelations “ ٨٤
”?while you had no comprehensive knowledge of them? Or what was it you did

Commentary, verses: ٨٣–٨٤

Point

This verse indicates that Allah shall muster only a part out of every nation, while in Hereafter all people will be mustered. This makes it clear that the above verse does not relate to Hereafter but it relates to /raj‘at/ ‘return to life’ in which a group of men :will be quickened before Resurrection. So, this verse says

And on the Day when We shall muster out of every nation a party from those who “
”.belied Our revelations, and they shall be kept in rank

The Arabic word /ḥašr/ means ‘to cause to camp’, and ‘to send out a group from their
.’place and to move them toward the battle-field, and the like

The Arabic word /fauj/, as Rāqib says in Mufradāt, means ‘a group who travel
.’speedily

The Qur’ānic word /yūza‘ūn/ means ‘keeping a crowd of people in a manner that a
group of them joins another’ and this meaning is usually applied upon some
.tremendous crowds, the like of which was used for the troops of Solomon in this Sura

Thus, the verse, on the whole, indicates that there will come a day when Allah will
raise to life a group from any nation and will send them forth for the retribution of
.their deeds

Many of the commentators have considered this holy verse as a reference for the
subject of /raj‘at/ ‘return to life’ and the return of some evil doers and good doers to
this world at the threshold of the Hereafter, since if it was referring to the
Resurrection and Hereafter the application of the holy phrase ‘out of every nation a
party’ would not be correct, because in Hereafter all people will be mustered, as the
Qur’ān in Sura Al-Kahf, No. ١٨, verse ٤٧ says: “... and We muster them nor shall We
”.leave out any one of them

Another reference is that before this verse the words were about the signs of
Resurrection at the end of this world, and the coming verses also point to the same
subject, therefore, it is not probable that the verses before and after it speak about
the events which happen before Resurrection, but the middle verse speaks of the
Resurrection. The agreement of the verses

.requires that all of them speak about the events before the Resurrection

There are also many narrations in this ground that we will point to them when
.(commenting the meaning of /raj‘at/ (return to life

The concept of ‘Raj‘at’ is one of the famous creeds of Shi‘ah, the commentary of which, in a short sentence, is as follows. After the advent of Haḍrat Mahdī (a.s.) and at the threshold of Resurrection a group of ‘true sincere believers’ and a group of ‘very vicious disobedient infidels’ will return to this world. The former group (true believers) will pass some degrees of development and the latter group will receive some harsh
.retributions

The Late Sayyid Murtaḍā, who is one of the dignitaries of Shi‘ah, says: “After the advent of Haḍrat Mahdī, Allah, the Exalted, will cause some of those who have passed away aforesaid to return to this world in order that they take part in the rewards and honours of his victory and observe his government throughout the world, and He will
”.cause a group of obstinate enemies to return to this world to punish them

Then, Sayyid Murtaḍā adds: “The reasoning of this sect is that no intellectual person can deny the power of Allah upon this thing, because it is not an impossible matter, while some of our opponents deny this subject so earnestly that it seems improbable
”.and they count it impossible

Then he adds: “The proof for the legitimacy of this belief is the consensus of Twelvers,
(because none of them has ever opposed this belief.”(1)

It is understood, of course, from the words of some of the ancient scholars of Shi‘ah,
–‘and the Late Tabarsī’s in Majma

ul-Bayān that a very minority of Shi‘ah did not believe in this belief and commented /raj‘at/ in the sense of the return of the domination and government of Ahl-ul-Bayt (a.s.), not the return of persons and that the dead be quickened, but their opposition is .in such a way that it does not harm consensus

However, there are a lot of statements here that, in order not to go out of the way of :commentary discussion, they are referred to in short as follows

No doubt, the act of restoring some dead persons to life in this world is not one of – ١ the impossible things, as the restoring all human being to life in Hereafter is quietly possible. To surprise for such an affair is like the wonder of a group of pagans of the Age of Ignorance concerning the subject of Resurrection, and mocking it is similar to their mockery upon Resurrection, because intellect does not consider it impossible; .and the Power of Allah is so vast that all these affairs are easy for Him

According to the Holy Qur‘ān, the occurrence of /raj‘at/ (return to life) has – ٢ :happened for five instances of the former nations

A. The first instance is about a prophet who was passing by a township the walls of which were ruined and the bones of the bodies of its people were scattered over there. He asked himself how Allah might restore these dead bodies to life. Then Allah caused him to die and after one hundred years He restored him to life and asked him how long he had tarried. The prophet in answer said he tarried for one day or a part of [\(a day. But Allah said he tarried for one hundred years.\)](#)

Whether this prophet is ‘Uzayr or other prophet it is the same, the important matter is .the life after death in this world

”... The Qur’ān says: “... so Allah made him die a hundred years, then He raised him up

B. The Holy Qur’ān in Sura Al-Baqarah, No. ٢, verse ٢٤٣ also speaks about another group who, being afraid of death and, with pretext of plague, restrained from going to the Holy War. They went out of their houses and Allah issued the command of death for them and then they were restored to life. “... Then Allah said to them; ‘Die’ (and
”... .they died); then He restored them to life

C. Again in Sura Al-Baqarah, No. ٢, verses ٥٥ and ٥٦, concerning the Children of Israel, we recite that a group of them, after asking Moses for seeing Allah, died because of thunderbolt, and, the Qur’ān says: “Then We raised you up after your death in order
”.that haply you might be thankful

D. In Sura Al-Mā’idah, No. ٥, verse ١١٠, among miracles of Jesus (a.s.) we recite: ‘... and you did raise the dead (from their graves), by My leave; ...’ This shows that Jesus (a.s.) used to use this miracle of his repeatedly to raise the dead, and this is counted as a
.kind of /raj‘at/ for some men

E. Concerning the dead body and finding his murderer, the Children of Israel were quarrelling. Sura Al-Baqarah, No. ٢, verse ٧٣ says: “So, We said: ‘strike him (the corps) with a part of it (the sacrificed cow)’”. Thus, Allah gives life to the dead and shows you
”.of His signs, so that you might understand

In addition to these five instances, there are also some other instances mentioned in the Qur’ān, like the story of ‘the Companions of the Cave’ which was something similar to /raj‘at/ (return to life); and the story of Haḍrat Ebrāhīm and the four birds that, after killing them, returned to life again in order to illustrate the possibility of
./Resurrection of human beings for him. This is also notable in the subject of /raj‘at

However, how is it possible that a person accepts the Qur'ān as a heavenly Book and, with these clear verses, does also reject the possibility of /raj'at/ (return to life)? Basically, is /raj'at/ something other than returning to life after death? Is /raj'at/ not counted as a small example of Resurrection in this small world? He who accepts Resurrection with its vast scale, how can he deny the subject of /raj'at/ (return to life ?(in this world

Whatever was said, up to here, proved the possibility of the occurrence of /raj'at/ – ۳ (return to life), and there are also many traditions narrated from Ahl-ul-Bayt (a.s.) which confirm its happening. Since our discussion has not the capacity of mentioning all of them, it is enough to refer to the number of them which the Late 'Allāmah Majlesī has collected and introduced. He says: “How is it possible that a person believes the truthfulness of the statements of Ahl-ul-Bayt (a.s.) but he does not accept the widely transmitted traditions of /raj'at/, the explicit traditions the number of which reaches about two hundred and that more than forty reliable persons of the narrators and famous scholars have referred to them in more than fifty books. If these traditions are not widely transmitted, what kind of tradition is widely (transmitted?)” (۱)

:A Few Traditions as Examples

Imam Sādiq (a.s.) said: “The first one to whom the earth (grave) will be cleft and he – ۱
”.(will return to the world is Husayn-ibn-Ali (a.s

Imam Bāqir (a.s.) said to 'Bukayr-ibn-'A'yan': “Verily the Messenger of Allah – ۲
”.(p.b.u.h.) and Ali (a.s.) will return to life

p: ۱۸۵

Imam Sādiq (a.s.) said: “There will come with Ghā’im (a.s.) twenty seven men from –۳ behind Kūfah; fifteen persons of them are from the people of Moses (a.s.), those who used to guide (others) to the Truth and to call (them) to it; and seven persons of the Companions of Kahf; and Yūsha‘-ubnu-Nūn, Salmān, ‘Abū-Dujānat-il-‘Ansārī, Miqdād, (and Mālik-i-‘Ashtar will be his helpers and governors.” (۱)

Imam Sādiq (a.s.) in a tradition says: “Verily /raj‘at/ (return to life) is not general but it is informal, because only a group will return to life that have pure faith or pure infidelity.” ((Bihār-ul-‘Anwār, Vol. ۵۳, P. ۳۹

This holy tradition defines the philosophy of /raj‘at/, because a group of sincere believers who had encountered some barriers on the path of spiritual perfection in their life and their perfection remained incomplete, the Divine Wisdom requires that they continue their path of perfection by returning again to this world, so that they can be witnesses of the worldly government of Truth and Justice and participate in building this government, since participation in the formation of such a government is .one of the greatest honours

On the contrary, some of the hypocrites and obstinate tyrants, besides their special retribution in Hereafter, must tolerate some punishments in this world similar to what the people of Pharaoh, ‘Aād, Thamūd and Lot tolerated, and its only way is /raj‘at/ .((return to life in this world

During the period of /raj‘at/ (return to life in this world), the disbelievers will be reprimanded for both their beliefs and

p: ۱۸۶

their behaviour. Concerning the time when they are brought for reckoning, the verse
:says

Till when they come (before their Lord), He will say: ‘Did you reject My revelations “
”?while you had no comprehensive knowledge of them? Or what was it you did

The speaker of this statement is Allah and the objective of the Qur’ānic term /’āyātī/ is
.the miracles of Divine prophets, or the commandments of Allah, or all of them

And the purpose of the phrase ‘you had no comprehensive knowledge’ is that without
doing any research about it and being unaware of the reality of a matter, they began
to reject it. This is the ultimate ignorance of a person that with rather no research and
.having no knowledge about something tries to deny it

In fact, they will be asked of two things: one is their rejection while having not any
research, and the other is the deed they used to do. If the above verse is taken as
about Hereafter and Resurrection, its meaning is clear, but if it refers to /raj‘at/
(return to life in this world), as the agreement of the verse requires, it points to this
fact that at the time of returning some of the wrong doers to this world, the one who
is vicegerent of Allah and is the ‘master of affairs’ will investigate them and then he
will punish them in this world as much as they deserve. This punishment does not
hinder their Hereafter punishment. It is like the state of many of the criminals who
tolerate the ‘fixed punishment for certain crimes’ in this world and, if they do not
.repent, their proper chastisement in Hereafter is reserved

(٨٥) وَوَقَعَ الْقَوْلُ عَلَيْهِمْ بِمَا ظَلَمُوا فَهُمْ لَا يَنْطِقُونَ

And the word will be fulfilled against them because they were unjust so they shall “ ٨٥
”.not speak

Commentary, verse: ٨٥

The Divine punishment of the oppressors is decisive and the promise of the Divine chastisement has been said to them aforetime. Of course usually the cause and factor .of the man’s afflictions is he himself

However, concerning the punishment, this verse implies that when the command of :Allah will be issued against them, they will not have anything to say. It says

And the word will be fulfilled against them because they were unjust so they shall “
”.not speak

This punishment is their chastisement in this world, if the verse is commented in the sense of /raj‘at/ (return to life in this world); and it means the chastisement of .Hereafter, if the verse is commented in the sense of Hereafter

(٨٦) أَلَمْ يَرَوْا أَنَّا جَعَلْنَا اللَّيْلَ لِيَسْكُنُوا فِيهِ وَالنَّهَارَ مُبْصِرًا إِنَّ فِي ذَلِكَ لَآيَاتٍ لِقَوْمٍ يُؤْمِنُونَ

Have they not seen how We have appointed the night that they may rest therein, “ ٨٦ .
”and the day to give light? Verily, in this are signs for the people who believe

Commentary, verse: ٨٦

The function of the darkness of night in man’s tranquility of nerves, and the light of
.the day in man’s activity are the scientific issues which have been proved today

Night is one of the bounties and mercy of Allah upon people, and it is the sign of Divine
knowledge and power, thus, ignoring the function of the night is an example of the
.’ignorant rejection

These verses refer to the subjects of origin and end, and the signs of Power and
greatness of Allah (s.w.t.) in the world of existence. The Qur’ān also refers to the
:events of Resurrection, when it says

Have they not seen how We have appointed the night that they may rest therein, “
”and the day to give light? Verily, in this are signs for the people who believe

This is not the first time that the Qur’ān speaks about the refreshing effects of night
and day, and the system of light and darkness; and it is not the last time, either. This
repetition is for the fact that the Qur’ān is a Book for education and training of men,
and we know that the principles of education sometimes require that a subject should
be repeated and reminded in different occurrences, so that that subject might be
.completely understood

The tranquility that can be obtained from night is a certain scientific fact. The dark curtain of night not only is a compulsory means for the cessation of activities of the day, but also it has a deep effect on the nerves of men and other animals and causes them to be in a deep sleep and rest, or as the Qur'ān says, to be in a 'silence

Also, scientifically there is no room for any doubt that the light of the day has a relation with the struggle movement and activity of man during the day which is the property of the sunlight. Sunlight not only brightens the scene of life and makes man's eyes active, but also it awakens all the particles of the entity of man and makes them to move

This verse makes manifest a part of 'Lordly Unity', and in view of the fact that the true object of worship is the Lord and Administrator of the world of existence, it nullifies the idols and causes the idolaters to review their creeds

It is necessary for man to note this point that he must adapt himself with this system; to rest at night and to have effort and endeavour during the day, so that he can be safe and active. Spending the night like some sensual persons, and sleeping in the morning until noon, is wrong

It is interesting that the Arabic word /mubşir/, which originally means 'clear-sighted', has been used as a modifier for the day while it is a modifier for human beings in the day. This is a kind of beautiful emphasis for it

This difference of meaning which is seen in the statement of the benefit of the night and the day inside the verse, and once it says /liyaskunū fih/ and then in another place it says /mubsiran/ may be a hint to this fact that the main aim of the night is rest and peace, but the aim of the light of the day is not 'seeing' but seeing is a means for (reaching the merits of life and enjoying them. (Be careful

However, though this noble verse speaks directly about Monotheism and contrivance of the world of existence, it can contain a tender hint to the subject of Resurrection, .too, because sleep is like death and wakefulness is like life after death

At the end, some things that are introduced as the means of peace and tranquility are :stated as follows

Remembrance of Allah: "... Behold! By Allah's remembrance (only) the hearts are – ١
[\(set at rest.\)](#) [\(١\)](#)

Unseen succour: "It is He Who sent down tranquility into the hearts of the Believers, –٢
[\(..."](#) [\(٢\)](#)

Some sacred effects and objects: "... That the Ark of Covenant will come to you, –٣
[\(wherein shall be a tranquility from your Lord, ..."](#) [\(٣\)](#)

The encouragement of the Divine saints: "... Surely your prayers are a comfort for –٤
[\(them, ..."](#) [\(٤\)](#)

Residence and house: "And Allah appointed a place of rest for you of your houses, –٥
[\(..."](#) [\(٥\)](#)

Spouse: "... He created for you mates from among yourselves, that you dwell in –٦
[\(tranquility with them. ..."](#) [\(٦\)](#)

[\(The Night: "... We have appointed the night that they may rest therein, ..."](#) [\(٧\)](#) –٧

p: ١٩١

Sura Ar-Ra'd, No. ١٣, verse ٢٨ –١

Sura Al-Fath, No. ٤٨, verse ٤ –٢

Sura Al-Baqarah, No. ٢, verse ٢٤٨ –٣

Sura At-Taubah, No. ٩, verse ١٠٣ –٤

Sura An-Nahl, No. ١٦, verse ٨٠ –٥

Sura Ar-Room, No. ۳۰, verse ۲۱ -۶

Sura An-Naml, No. ۲۷, verse ۸۶ -۷

It should be said that the occurrence of the descent of the Qur'ān, the Prophet's 'ascension to Heaven', and the proper time for prayer and supplication all are at night, though some of the deluded persons misuse the bounty of the darkness of the night and commit some sins in it. In the present age, people seek for tranquility somewhere else and, therefore, they do not obtain it

Today the world is engaged with technology, weapon, wealth, power, and political relations and, because of losing spirituality, it cannot find tranquility. There are also many persons who have been polluted with narcotic matters, alcoholic liquors, sex, etc. and are completely sinful. To find the reality in this regard, it is enough to refer to the investigations of crimes in the world

p: ۱۹۲

(٨٧) وَيَوْمَ يُنْفَخُ فِي الصُّورِ فَفَزِعَ مَنْ فِي السَّمَاوَاتِ وَمَنْ فِي الْأَرْضِ إِلَّا مَنْ شَاءَ اللَّهُ وَكُلٌّ أَتَوْهُ دَاخِرِينَ

And (remind them of) The Day when the Trumpet will be blown and those who are “ ٨٧ in the heavens and those who are in the earth shall be terrified except him whom Allah will please, and all shall come to Him in utter humility

Commentary, verse: ٨٧

The destruction of the system of existence, the death of people, and beginning of Hereafter will occur with terrible sound of trumpet, (the Trumpet will be blown). So, this noble verse, referring to the Resurrection and its preliminary events, announces

And (remind them of) The Day when the Trumpet will be blown and those who are in “ the heavens and those who are in the earth shall be terrified except him whom Allah will please, and all shall come to Him in utter humility

It is understood from the whole verses of the Qur’ān that the Trumpet will be blown two or three times. One of them will be at the end of the world and at the threshold of Resurrection, when horror will encompass all. The second time is when, by hearing it, everybody will die. (These two Blasts of Trumpet may be the same

The third time will be at the time of resurgence and establishment of Hereafter when by the blown of the Trumpet quickening of the dead will occur and all the dead return to begin a new life

Commentators are divided in the belief that the above verse refers to the first and second Blast or the third Blast. There are some frames of reference both in this verse and the coming verses which involve both of them. Some other commentators believe .that it points to all of these Blasts

But the apparent of the verse shows that it relates to the first Blast that occurs at the end of the world, because the Qur'ānic word /faza'/ which means a fear and horror that fills the whole heart of man is counted of the signs of this Blast; and we know that, in the Blast of Hereafter, fear and horror is because of deeds, reckoning, and .retribution, not because of the effect of the Blast

In other words, the apparent of the Qur'ānic term /fa fazi'a/, mentioned in the verse, indicates that this fear and horror is because of blowing in the Trumpet which belongs to the first Blast, since not only the last Blast does not create any horror, but also it is the cause of life and movement, and if there is any fear at that time it is for the deeds .of man himself

The Arabic word /nafx/ means 'to blow', and the word /ṣūr/ means 'trumpet'. When offering the commentary of Sura Az-Zumar, No. ۳۹, verse ۶۸, we will explain the .different ideas of the commentators concerning its purpose

The holy phrase 'except him whom Allah will please' points to those who are good and pure, irrespective of the angels and the believers who are in the heavens and the earth. As the result of their Faith, they will have a special tranquility, and neither will the first Blast make them terrified, nor the last one. And also in the next verses we recite: "Whoever brings good, for him shall be better than it, and they shall be secure [\(from the terror on that Day.\)](#)"[\(۱\)](#)

The last sentence of the verse under discussion which says: “All shall come to Him in utter humility” apparently is general and there is no exception in it, because even the prophets and saints will be humble before Him. And Sura As-Sāffāt, No. ٣٧, verses ١٢٧-١٢٨ which says: “... therefore they shall most surely be brought up,” “Except the chosen servants of Allah, the purified ones.”, contain no contradiction with the generality of the verse under discussion, because the abovementioned verse refers to the principle of attendance in gathering-place of resurrection before Allah and .secondly refers to the attendance in the scene of reckoning the deeds

p: ١٩٥

(٨٨) وَتَرَى الْجِبَالَ تَحْسَبُهَا جَامِدَةً وَهِيَ تَمُرُّ مَرَّ السَّحَابِ صُنِعَ اللَّهُ الَّذِي لَمْ يَلِدْ وَلَمْ يَكُنْ لَهُ كُفُوًا شَيْءٌ إِنَّهُ خَبِيرٌ بِمَا تَفْعَلُونَ

And you see the mountains and think them firmly fixed but they shall pass away “ as the passing away of the cloud. It is the work of Allah Who has made everything in perfect order

”.Verily He is Aware of what you do

Commentary, verse: ٨٨

The Arabic word /sun‘/ is used for a work which is based upon knowledge, accuracy, and skill

The universe is moving; even the mountains which seem motionless have motion and this motion is the sign of the Wise Power of Allah

This verse points to another sign of the grandeur of Allah in the expansion of the world of existence. It says

And you see the mountains and think them firmly fixed but they shall pass away as “ the passing away of the cloud. It is the work of Allah Who has made everything in perfect order ...”

The One, in Whose program of creation all these orders and accuracy are found, is certainly aware of the deeds we do. The verse says

”.Verily He is Aware of what you do ...“

Many commentators believe that the above mentioned holy verse is a hint to the events that will happen at the threshold of Resurrection, for we know that at the end of this mortal world and at the beginning of the next world there will happen some great earthquakes, explosions, and transformations wherein

mountains will surely burst asunder. This meaning is explicitly mentioned in many
.Suras in the end of the Qur'ān

Of course, this verse being set among the verses of Resurrection is the reason and
.evidence of this commentary

But there are several frames of reference in the verse that verify another
commentary. For example, the abovementioned verse is of the kind of verses of Unity
and the signs of the greatness of Allah in this very world; and it points to the
'movement of the earth globe', the movement which is not sensible for us. Thus,
some parts of the verses under discussion are about Unity and some parts are about
.Resurrection

The conclusion we can take from this commentary is that these mountains which we
consider motionless are moving fast. Certainly, the movement of these mountains,
without the movement of the lands they are on them, is meaningless. Thus, the
meaning of the verse is that the earth moves fast like the movement of the pieces of
.the cloud

According to the calculations of the modern scientists, the movement of the earth
around itself is about ۳۰ kilometers a minute, and its rotation around the sun is more
.than this

The reason why the Qur'ān has put the mountains in the center of discussion here,
maybe for that mountains from the point of heaviness, weight and firmness are
referred to in parables, and for explaining the Power of Allah, are counted a better
example. When the mountains, with this greatness and heaviness they have, move
(accompanied with the earth) by the command of Allah, His Power over everything is
.proved

However, the abovementioned verse is one of the scientific miracles of the Qur'ān.
We know that the first scientists who found out the movement of the sphere of the
Earth were Galileh from Italy, and Kepernic from Netherlands. They

introduced this idea to the world in the end of sixteenth century and at the beginning of seventeenth century A.D., although the authorities of the Church violently .condemned them

But the Qur'ān many years before them removed the curtain from over this fact, and announced the movement of the earth in the above form as a sign of Unity. Therefore, informing of the movement of mountains is among the scientific miracles of the Qur'ān, and in recognition of Allah everything is fix and perfect in its place, as
".the Qur'ān says about Him: "Who has made every thing in perfect order

p: ١٩٨

(٨٩) مَنْ جَاءَ بِالْحَسَنَةِ فَلَهُ خَيْرٌ مِنْهَا وَهُمْ مِنْ فَزَعٍ يَوْمَئِذٍ ءَامِنُونَ

(٩٠) وَمَنْ جَاءَ بِالسَّيِّئَةِ فَكُبَّتْ وُجُوهُهُمْ فِي النَّارِ هَلْ تُجْزَوْنَ إِلَّا مَا كُنْتُمْ تَعْمَلُونَ

Whoever brings good, for him shall be better than it, and they shall be secure “ ٨٩
” .from terror on that Day

And whoever brings evil, those shall be cast down on their faces, in the (Hell) Fire; “ ٩٠
”? “Are you rewarded (for) aught except what you used to do

Commentary, verses: ٨٩-٩٠

One of the bounties of the Qur’ān is that it has let the way open to all people for
:development and happiness. The holy verse says

Whoever brings good, for him shall be better than it, and they shall be secure from “
” .terror on that Day

This merit is for all people without considering their age, race, and sex. The word ‘good’ is used in general meaning /al ḥsanah/, in order that it concludes all favours, including: accepting the leadership of the Truth, the way of the Truth, the word of the Truth, the job of the Truth, and the choice of the Truth, the examples of some of which have been referred to in Islamic narrations. But if the good deed, from whoever it is, is not destroyed because of hypocrisy, pride, haughtiness, and sin and comes to ,its destination safely, will deserve some additional rewards: (Whoever brings good
.(...

But pleasures, insolence, and contumacities which come into being in the world as the result of sin, by burning in Hereafter, will be changed into disgrace and degradation.

:The verse says

Whoever brings good, for him shall be better than it, and they shall be secure from “
”terror on that Day

Upon the objective meaning of the Qur’ānic word /ḥasanah/ commentators have offered different beliefs. Some of them have rendered it into the term ‘Unity’ and the
.’holy phrase of: ‘There is no god but Allah’, and also into ‘having faith in Allah

Some of them believe that it refers to the mastership of Amir-ul-Mu’mineen Ali (a.s.) and immaculate Imams (a.s.). This meaning has been emphasized in many traditions narrated from Ahl-ul-Bayt (a.s.). For example: in a tradition Imam Bāqir (a.s.) says that one of the followers of Ali (a.s.) who was called ‘Abū-‘Abdullah Jabalī came to him (a.s.) and Imam asked him whether he might inform him of the meaning of the word of Allah that says: “Whoever brings good, for him shall be better than it, and they shall be secure from terror on that Day.” He answered: “Yes, may I be your ransom, O’ Amir-ul-Mu’minīn!” Imam said: “Good is cognition of mastership and the love of us, (Ahl-ul-Bayt; and sin is the denial of mastership and enmity against us, Ahl-ul-Bayt.”[\(1\)](#)

Of course, as we have said repeatedly, the scope of the meaning of the verses is vast and the Arabic words /ḥasanah/ and /sayyi’ah/ have also here such a vast concept that envelops all the good deeds, including: Faith in Allah, the Messenger of Islam, and the mastership of the Immaculate Imams (a.s.), that are at the top of every good deed, .and do not hinder that other righteous deeds be involved in the meaning of the verse

And that some persons have become worried because of this generality concerning
the word ‘good’ and said whether

p: ۲۰۰

The Commentaries of As-Sāfi, Burhān, Atyab-ul-Bayān, Majma‘-ul-Bayān, – ۱
Jawāmi‘-ul-Jāmi‘, following the verse

there can be found anything better than the Faith in Allah to be its reward. Its answer is clear because the pleasure of Allah is also higher than Faith. In other words, all of these things are the preliminaries for that and the consequence is prior to the preliminary

Another question here is that the apparent of some verses (like Sura Al-Hajj, No. ٢٢, verse ٢) shows that the terror of Resurrection will cover all, then how are the possessors of good as an exception from it? Sura Al-'Anbiyā', No. ٢١, verse ١٠٣ answers this question, where it says: "The Great Terror (of that Day) shall not grieve ... ,them

And we know that the 'Great terror' is the terror of the Hereafter Day, and the Terror .of arriving into Hell, not the horror which will appear at the time of the Blast

By the way, the Arabic word /kubbat/, mentioned in the verse, means: 'to be cast .?down

Then, the next verse refers to those who are situated in a place opposite to this :group. The verse says

"... ;And whoever brings evil, those shall be cast down on their faces, in the (Hell) Fire "

:Such people cannot expect anything except this. The verse continues saying

"?Are you rewarded (for) aught except what you used to do' ..."

The Arabic term /kubbat/ is derived from /kabb/ which originally means 'casting something on face down', and, therefore, mentioning the word 'faces' in the above .verse is for emphasis

As the worst kind of punishment is said that this group shall be cast down on their ,faces in the (Hell) Fire. In addition

since they used to turn their faces away when they confronted the Truth, and they used to go toward sins with the same faces, now they should meet such a .punishment

The sentence: "... 'Are you rewarded (for) aught except what you used to do?'" may be the answer to the question that someone may say this punishment is a grievous punishment. They will be answered that those are the same deeds of theirs that have .seized them and they have not any reward except their own deeds

p: ۲۰۲

(٩١) إِنَّمَا أُمِرْتُ أَنْ أَعْبُدَ رَبَّ هَذِهِ الْبَلَدِ الَّذِي حَرَّمَهَا وَلَهُ كُلُّ شَيْءٍ وَأُمِرْتُ أَنْ أَكُونَ مِنَ الْمُسْلِمِينَ

O' Muhammad say:) 'I am commanded only to serve the Lord of this city, Who) " .٩١ has made it sacred, and His are all things; and I am commanded that I should be of "those who submit

Commentary, verse: ٩١

.The holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) is under the command of Allah, the Almighty

A leader must announce his severity and decisiveness to people and say to them that whether they believe or not he will continue his way. The day when Mecca was conquered by Muslims, the Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) arrived in Mecca and broke the idols therein. Then he stood at the threshold of Ka'bah and said: "Verily Allah has respected Mecca (since the first day until the Hereafter)." (The Commentary of Kanz-ud-Daqā'iq

This verse, addressing the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.), reiterates some facts. It implies that he (p.b.u.h.) should tell the people that he does his duty whether the obstinate pagans believe or not

:The verse says

"... ,O' Muhammad say:) 'I am commanded only to serve the Lord of this city) "

This sacred city (Mecca) is the secure sanctuary of Allah, and is the noblest point on the earth. It is the oldest temple of Monotheism

Yes, The Prophet (p.b.u.h.) is commanded to worship the Lord Who has made this city (Mecca) sacred, and He has appointed some specialities for it. He has assigned some particular respects, ordinances, and prohibitions for it that other cities in the world do not have them

But do not consider that only this city belongs to Allah, because everything in the world of existence belongs to Him. The verse continues saying

”... ;Who has made it sacred, and His are all things ...“

The second order that he (p.b.u.h.) is commanded to fulfil is that he should absolutely submit the commandment of Allah, not other than it. The verse says

”and I am commanded that I should be of those who submit ...“

Thus, the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) states his two main missions which are ‘worshipping Allah, the One’, and ‘being absolute obedient to His commandment

p: ۲۰۴

(٩٢) وَأَنْ أَتْلُوا الْقُرْآنَ فَمَنْ اهْتَدَىٰ فَإِنَّمَا يَهْتَدِي لِنَفْسِهِ وَمَنْ ضَلَّ فَقُلْ إِنَّمَا أَنَا مِنَ الْمُنذِرِينَ

And that I should recite the Qur’ān (to people), so whoever is guided aright, he is “ .٩٢ guided aright to his own gain, and whoever goes astray, then say: ‘I am only (one) of ”.’the warners

Commentary, verse: ٩٢

Next to Monotheism, the most important mission of the holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) was reciting the Divine verses to people. The benefit and harm of belief and disbelief of people, whether they accept the truth or not, return to them. By this verse, the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.) announces that he is commanded to recite the Qur’ān to the people of Mecca and to invite them to fulfil its commandments, to use the Qur’ān as a light of guidance, to drink much from its life-giving source, and to rely on its guidance in all his programs. Yes, Qur’ān is a means for him in reaching to those two sacred aims and struggling against any infidelity, deviation, and aberration. The verse says:

”... ,(And that I should recite the Qur’ān (to people “

Then, he (p.b.u.h.) adds to the abovementioned statement implying that the people should not think that their belief is beneficial for him or more important than that, for Allah, the Great. No, all the benefits of guidance reach them both in this world and the :Next. The verse continues saying

”... ,so whoever is guided aright, he is guided aright to his own gain ...“

And whoever goes astray his burden is over his own shoulder, because the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) is only a warner and the evil consequences of their deeds do not reach him. His duty is to convey the clear revelation, and his duty is also showing the way and that how it can be paved, but he who is eager to remain in aberration he has caused .only his own misfortune

It is interesting that concerning guidance it says: “whoever is guided aright, he is guided aright to his own gain”, but concerning aberration it does not say it is to his own loss; it says: “I am only (one) of the warners”. This difference in statement may refer to this fact that the prophet is never silent in front of those who go astray and he does not leave them alone to their own state, but he constantly warns them and he does not become tired of doing it continuously, because he is a warner. The verse :says

”.’and whoever goes astray, then say: ‘I am only (one) of the warners ...“

This point is noteworthy that this Sura has begun with the statement of the importance of the Qur’ān and it ends with the emphasis on recitation of the Qur’ān, so .the beginning and the end of the Sura is about the Qur’ān

(٩٣) وَقُلِ الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ سِيرِيكُمْ ءَايَاتِهِ فَتَعْرِفُونَهَا وَمَا رَبُّكَ بِغَافِلٍ عَمَّا تَعْمَلُونَ

And say: ‘Praise be to Allah. Soon He will show you His signs that you shall “ .٩٣
”.’recognize them, and your Lord is not heedless of what you do

Commentary, verse: ٩٣

The Qur’ānic phrase /’al ḥamdu lillah/ (praise be to Allah) is the best sentence for praising Allah that not only the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) has repeatedly been commissioned .to say it, but also everyday all Muslims have to repeat it through Sura Al-Hamd

Therefore, in this verse, which is the last verse of Sura An-Naml, the command is that he should praise Allah for all these great bounties, specially for the bounty of :guidance. It says

”... And say: ‘Praise be to Allah “

This praise relates to both the bounty of the Qur’ān, and the guidance of Allah, and :also can be a preparation for the next sentence when it says

”... ,Soon He will show you His signs that you shall recognize them ...“

This meaning in this verse indicates that by the passing of time and the development of science, knowledge, and man’s wisdom, everyday some new secrets of the revelations in connection with the world of existence will be unveiled and, a day after another, humankind can be acquainted more and more with the greatness of the Power of Allah and the depth of His knowledge, and this property of Divine revelation .will never be ceased and will continue as long as man lives

Yet, if you go astray and pave the way of deviation, you must know that your Lord is
:never heedless of the deeds you do. The verse says

”and your Lord is not heedless of what you do ...“

You should not imagine that if Allah postpones your retribution because of His grace
and mercy it is for the reason that He is not aware of your deeds, or that its reckoning
.and record are not preserved

The above ending sentence of the verse, which has exactly been repeated in nine
occurrences of the Qur’ān or with a little difference, is a short sentence and it is an
.expressive warning upon all human beings

O Lord! Show us a part of the signs of Your greatness each day so that we know You
everyday better and more than before, and that we thank You for these bounties You
!have bestowed on us

O Lord! A mass of difficulties have surrounded us, and the enemies, both inside and
!outside, are trying hard to quench Your Light

O Lord! It is You Who gave Solomon those abilities, and strengthened Moses to stand
against Pharaoh; cause us to be victorious against the enemies, and destroy those of
them who are not eligible to be guided like the People of ‘Ād, the People of Thamūd,
.and the People of Lot

The End of Sura An-Naml

p: ٢٠٨

In The Name of Allah, The Beneficent, The Merciful

Sura Al-Qaṣaṣ

(The Narratives)

(No. ٢٨ (Revealed at Mecca

Verses in ٩ Sections ٨٨

:The Virtue of Recitation of Sura Al-Qaṣaṣ

The holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) in a tradition said: “The one who recites Sura Al-Qaṣaṣ will be given ten rewards as many as the number of all those who assented Moses and those who rejected him, and there is no angel in the heavens and the earth but he will (attest to his righteousness in Hereafter.” (Majma‘-ul-Bayān, the commentary

Imam Ṣādiq (a.s.) in another tradition says: “The one who recites suras Al-Qaṣaṣ, An-Naml, and Ash-Shu‘arā by the night before Friday, he will be of the friends of Allah, will be nigh to Him, and will be supported by Him; and in this world he will not encounter a sever poverty, insecurity and disquiet, and in Hereafter Allah will bestow on him so (much merits that he will be pleased and even more than being pleased.” (1

It is evident that all of these rewards will be given to the one who, by reciting this Sura, tries to be in the row of Moses (a.s.), the true believers, and those who struggle against the

p: ٢٠٩

wrongdoers such as Pharaoh and Korah. When confronting the difficulties, he must not knee before the enemies and accept the disgrace of submission, for all these many rewards are not given to anyone cheaply. They are specified to those who .usually recite the Sura, contemplate its content, and fulfil them accordingly

p: ۲۱۰

Point

(No. 28, (Revealed at Mecca

verses in 9 Sections 88

Section 1: The Narrative of Moses

Point

The Qur'an contains verses of the Book Manifest – What Pharaoh had done with the Children of Israel – Allah's will to raise Imams (i.e., Guides in faith) from among those weakened in the earth by the disbelievers – How Moses as a baby was taken special care of, by Allah's Plan

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

In The Name of Allah, The Beneficent, The Merciful

(1) طسم

(2) تِلْكَ آيَاتُ الْكِتَابِ الْمُبِينِ

(3) تَنزِيلًا عَلَيْكَ مِنْ رَبِّكَ مُوسَىٰ وَفَزَعُونَ بِالْحَقِّ لِقَوْمٍ يُؤْمِنُونَ

1. "Tā. Sīn. Mīm."

2. "There are verses of the Book (that makes the truth) clear"

3. "We recite to you some of the story of Moses and Pharaoh in truth, for a people who believe"

The Qur'ān, the eternal miracle of Islam, has been formed of these very Arabic letters. If you think that it is the word of a human, you may bring the like of it, too

This is the fourteenth Sura of the Qur'ān which begins with 'the abbreviated letter', and the form Tā. Sīn. Mīm., in particular, is for the third and the last time that has been mentioned in the Qur'ān

As we have cited repeatedly, the Abbreviated letters of the Qur'ān have different interpretations which we have referred to at the beginning of Suras of Al-Baqarah, 'Āl-i-'Imrān, and Al-'A'rāf

Moreover, there are a lot of traditions which indicate that the letters Tā. Sīn. Mīm., in the Qur'ān are some abbreviation signs of the attributes of Allah or sacred places, but this does not hinder the famous commentary, which we have repeatedly emphasized on, that Allah desires to make clear this fact to all that this great Heavenly Book which is the source of a great revolution in the history of man and contains the complete program of the happy life of humankind, has been formed of a simple means such as alphabetical letters which everybody can pronounce. This is the ultimate greatness of the Qur'ān that it produces such an extraordinary important product from such simple materials which every body possesses

Perhaps this is for the same reason that immediately, after these abbreviated letters, it refers to the greatness of the Qur'ān and implies that these great verses are the verses of the Book manifest, the Book which is clear itself and makes clear the man's way of happiness both. It says

”.There are verses of the Book (that makes the truth) clear “

The Qur’ānic phrase /kitābun mubīn/ has been rendered to ‘Protected Tablet’ in some verses of the Qur’ān, like Sura Yūnus, No. ۱۰, verse ۶۱ where it says: “... not anything lesser than that or greater but are (recorded) in a Clear Book.”, and Sura Hūd, No. ۱۱, verse ۶ where it says: “... All is (recorded) in a Clear Book”, but in the verse under discussion, with the frame reference of mentioning /’āyāt/ (verses) and the phrase .?/natlū ‘alayka/ (We recite to you) mentioned in the next verse, it means ‘Qur’ān

Here the word Qur’ān has been qualified by /mubīn/ (clear), and the Arabic word /mubīn/, as understood from lexicon, is used both in the senses of ‘transitive’ and ‘intransitive’ case, viz. it means something which is ‘clear’ and ‘makes clear’. So, the Holy Qur’ān, with its clear content, makes clear the Truth from untruth, and the true .way from false way

After mentioning this short proposition, referred to in the above, in the next verse the :Qur’ān points to the life story of Moses and Pharaoh where it says

We recite to you some of the story of Moses and Pharaoh in truth, for a people who “ .believe

The application of the word /min/, here, points to this fact that whatever is mentioned here is a part of the concerning adventurous story the statement of which has been .appropriate and necessary

And the application of /bil haqq/ in the verse points to this fact that whatever has been mentioned here is free from any superstition, old fables, and false matters; and it is a recitation

with truth and exact reality. The application of the phrase /liqaumin yu'minūn/ (for a people who believe) is an emphasis on this fact that those believers who were under pressure at that time in Mecca, and the like of them, should reach to this fact, by hearing this story, that how abundant the enemy's power, number of persons, and their forces is, and how the number of believers is apparently little and they are under pressure, the power of Allah is above all and they must not feel weakness in themselves.

The Lord Who caused Moses to be brought up in the bosom of Pharaoh to destroy him; the Lord Who made the oppressed slaves as the governors on the earth, and made the cruel oppressors abject, mean, and annihilated; the Lord Who protected a little baby in the rushing waves of water, and buried thousands of thousand strong people of Pharaoh inside the sea, is able to save you, too.

Yes, the main target of these verses is believers, and this recitation has been accomplished for them. They are the believers who can be respired by it and find their way to the aim among the mass of difficulties.

p: ۲۱۴

(٤) إِنَّ فِرْعَوْنَ عَلَا فِي الْأَرْضِ وَجَعَلَ أَهْلَهَا شِيَعًا يَسْتَضِعُّ طَائِفَهُمْ مِنْهُمْ يُذَبِّحُ أَبْنَاءَهُمْ

وَيَسْتَحْيِي نِسَاءَهُمْ إِنَّهُ كَانَ مِنَ الْمُفْسِدِينَ

Verily Pharaoh exalted himself in the land (of Egypt) and divided its people into “ .٤ sections, weakening a group of them, he slaughtered their sons and spared alive their .females, verily he was of the mischief- makers

Commentary, verse:٤

Point

The Arabic word /šiya‘/ is the plural form of /šī‘ah/ which originally means ‘following’ and ‘obeying’, but since in a group there are some persons who usually follow some .others, this word is used in the sense of a group, too

The Arabic word, /nisā’/ means ‘women’, but in this verse it may mean ‘daughters’ .’because it has come as the opposite of ‘sons

The word /fir‘aun/ is not the name of a person, but it had been the title of the kings of .Rome

:However, in this verse, the Qur’ān says

”... (Verily Pharaoh exalted himself in the land (of Egypt “

Pharaoh was a very weak person who, as the result of ignorance, lost his own .personality and went astray so far that he claimed to be deity

The application of the Arabic word /’al ’ard/ (the land) in the verse is an indication to the land of Egypt and around it, and since a great part of the habituated land of the earth at that time was that area, this term has been used in an absolute form. This is also probable that the existence of Alif and Lām at the beginning of the word /‘ard/ is .for agreement and points to the land of Egypt

However, in order to strengthen the bases of his cruel oppression, Pharaoh
:committed a number of crimes

At first, Pharaoh tried to produce disunity among people. This was the same policy that had been forming the main foundation of the oppressors in the length of history. The dominion of a little minority over a great majority is often impossible save by the
?principle of: ‘cast division and govern

They have always been afraid of ‘the unity of the word’ and ‘the word of unity’. They terribly feared of the close relation of the rows of people with each other, and for this reason the only way of their protection is ‘class government’, the same thing that
:Pharaoh and the like have done in any age. The verse continues saying

”... ,and divided its people into sections ...“

Yes, Pharaoh divided the people of Egypt into two separate groups: Coptic group and Sebtian group. Coptic ones were the native people of that land, and all the governmental positions, means of comfort, and castles and wealth were under their
.control

Sebtians were the emigrant Children of Israel who were in the grips of Coptic ones as slaves, retainers, and handmaidens. Poverty and deprivation had fully surrounded them and they had to do the most labour-some works without enjoying any interest. (The Arabic word /’ahl/ is used in the verse for this group, because the Children of Israel had lived for a long time in that land and they had verily become the people of
(.it

When we hear that for building a grave such as the famous Pyramid called ‘Khofo’ and to be located close to the capital of Egypt, Cairo, the kings of Egypt make one hundred thousand slaves work during twenty years and thousands of them are killed in this event by means of lash or because of the pressure of working, we may guess
.the whole things

His second crime was that he oppressed a group of the people of that land. The verse
:says

weakening a group of them, he slaughtered their sons and spared alive their...“
”... ,females

Pharaoh had ordered his men to find the boys born among the Children of Israel and
.slay them and if the child was a girl they should keep her alive to become a slave maid

?What did he want to do by this action of his

It is said that he had seen in his dream that a piece of fire came from Jerusalem and
covered all the houses of Egypt. It burnt the houses of Coptic ones but the houses of
the Children of Israel remained safe. He wanted the learned people and interpreters
of dreams to explain his dream. They said that there would come out a man from
Jerusalem who might have the power of destruction of Egypt and the government of
.its kings

It is also said that some of soothsayers told him that there would be born a boy
[\(among the Children of Israel who could destroy his government.\)](#)

At last, this event caused that Pharaoh decided to slay the new born boys of the
.Children of Israel

This is also probable that the former Divine prophets had delivered the glad tidings of
the advent of Moses (a.s.) and his specialties, thus, the people of Pharaoh, being
informed of this fact, were terrified and tried to stand against it. (Tafsīr-i-Fakhr-i-
Rāzī, following the verse) But the occurrence of the phrase: “... he slaughtered their
sons ...” next to the phrase: “... weakening a group of them, ...” points to another
matter. It implies that, in order to weaken the

p: ۲۱۷

Children of Israel, the people of Pharaoh had designed this evil plan that they would annihilate the male generation of the Children of Israel who could stand against the people of Pharaoh and fight with them, and to keep their females alive in order that they could serve them, because those girls and women alone had not the power of struggling against them

Another clear evidence for this statement is Sura Mu'min (Qāfir), No. ٤٠, verse ٢٥ which implies that the act of slaying boys and keeping girls alive continued even after the rising of Moses (a.s.). It says: "So when he brought to them the truth from Us, they said: 'Slay the sons of those who believe with him and keep their women alive'; and the struggle of the unbelievers will only come to a state of perdition

The phrase: 'keep their women alive' apparently indicates that they wanted to keep the girls and women alive either for that those females might serve them, or for their lusts, or both of them

In the last sentence of this verse, as a conclusion and also for stating the reason, the Qur'ān says

"...verily he was of the mischief-makers ..."

Shortly speaking, the act of the people of Pharaoh was wholly making mischief in the land. His self-superiority was a mischief. Inventing a kind of life with class division in Egypt was another mischief. Torturing the Children of Israel, slaying their sons and using their daughters as slaves was their third mischief. In addition to these, there were many other corruptions in them, too

It is natural that those who seek their self-superiority are only the protectors of their own interests; and protecting the personal interests never agrees with protecting the social interests, which needs justice, benevolence, and donation

.Therefore, whatever it may be, its result is mischief in all dimensions of life

Pharaoh ordered his men to kill the boys

By the way, the Arabic word /yuḥabbihū/, derived from /ḥabaḥa/, shows that the behaviour of the people of Pharaoh with the Children of Israel in slaying them was like .killing animals

There have been cited many stories concerning this crime of the people of Pharaoh. Some of the commentators say that Pharaoh had ordered his men to take the pregnant women of the Children of Israel under an exact control, and only the Coptic midwives were allowed to be the mission of their child-birth; so that if the child was a boy they would immediately inform the Egyptian authorities about the event and they [\(would come and take their prey.\)](#)

It is not exactly clear that how many of the babies of the Children of Israel were killed in this program. Some have said that its number was about ninety thousand, while .some others said it was one hundred thousand

They imagined that by these horrible crimes, they could hinder the rising of the .Children of Israel and the certain accomplishment of the will of Allah

p: ۲۱۹

(٥) وَنُرِيدُ أَنْ نَمُنَّ عَلَى الَّذِينَ اسْتُضِعُوا فِي الْأَرْضِ وَنَجْعَلَهُمْ أَئِمَّةً وَنَجْعَلَهُمُ الْوَارِثِينَ

(٦) وَتُمْكِّنَ لَهُمْ فِي الْأَرْضِ وَنُرِيَ فِرْعَوْنَ وَهَامَانَ وَجُنُودَهُمَا مِنْهُمْ مَا كَانُوا يَحْذَرُونَ

And We have intended to bestow (Our) favour upon those who were oppressed in “ ٥.
”the earth, and to make them leaders (in faith) and make them heirs

And to grant them power in the earth, and to show Pharaoh and Hāmān, and their “ ٦.
”hosts, what they were dreading from them

Commentary, verses: ٥-٦

Point

The worldly government of the oppressed ones and also supporting them in the length of history is Allah’s will. There is no doubt that when Allah’s will is issued for a thing to occur, that thing will certainly be performed and no barrier can hinder it. The holy Qur’ān says: “Verily when He intends a thing, His command is, ‘Be’, and it is!” (١)
:So, in this verse, it says

And We have intended to bestow (Our) favour upon those who were oppressed in “
”the earth, and to make them leaders (in faith) and make them heirs

:Then, in the next verse, it says

p: ٢٢٠

Sura Yāsīn, No. ٣٦, verse ٨٢ -١

And to grant them power in the earth, and to show Pharaoh and Hāmān, and their “
” .hosts, what they were dreading from them

How much these two verses are expressive and hope-giving! They are expressed in the form of Arabic present tense (which shows the continuation of action) and as a general law so that no one imagines that it belongs only to the oppressed ones of the Children of Israel and the government of Pharaoh. The verse implies that Pharaoh intended to disperse the Children of Israel and destroy their power and greatness, but
.Allah (s.w.t.) intended them to become strong and victorious

Pharaoh wanted that their power could be in the hand of the oppressors forever, but Allah (s.w.t.) intended to give the government to the oppressed ones, and finally it
.happened exactly the same

By the way, the application of the Arabic word /minnat/, as we have formerly said, too, is in the sense of ‘to bestow merits and bounties’, and this usage is completely different from the verbal /minnat/ that we reiterate a bounty in order to belittle the
.opposite party, which is certainly a blameworthy action

In these two noble verses Allah (s.w.t.) has removed the curtain from His Will concerning the oppressed ones, and states five affairs in this ground which are closely
.connected to each other

The first thing is that Allah intends to give them His bounties by saying: “And We have
”... ,intended to bestow (Our) favour

Another thing is that Allah intends to make them leaders when He says: “... and to
”... (make them leaders (in faith

The third thing is that Allah intends to make them the heirs of the government of the
” .oppressors, where He says: “... and make them heirs

The fourth is that Allah gives them a strong and lasting government: “And to grant
... ,them power in the earth

The fifth is that Allah showed their enemies that which they were afraid of and they had mobilized all their forces against them: “... and to show Pharaoh and Hāmān, and
”.Their hosts, what they were dreading from them

Such is Allah’s favour and grace unto the oppressed ones. But who are the oppressed,
.and what qualities do they have? We will state about them later

Hāmān was Pharaoh’s famous minister, and he was so influenced in the court of Pharaoh that in the above verse the forces of Egypt are called the forces of Pharaoh and Hāmān. (More explanation about Hāmān, Allah willing, will be given in the
(.commentary of verse ٣٨ in the current Sura

By the way, it was said that these verses do not speak about a private, local, and limited program related to the Children of Israel, but they are stating a general law for all centuries and the entire people and generations. The first abovementioned verse says: “And We have intended to bestow (Our) favour upon those who were oppressed
”.in the earth, and to make them leaders (in faith) and make them heirs

This is a glad-tidings upon the field of triumph of the truth over the untruth and faith
.over disbelief

This is a glad-tidings for all the free men who seek for the government of justice and
.wiping the elements of injustice and cruelty

An example of the outward existence of Allah’s Will was the actual government of the
.Children of Israel and annihilation of the government of Pharaoh

And a more complete example of it was the government of the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.) and his followers after the advent of Islam. It was the government of the
faithful, poor, indigent

and purified oppressed people who were always mocked and despised by the
.Pharaohs of their time and were under their pressure, injustice and cruelty

At last, by the hand of this very group, Allah opened the gates of the castles of those
.kings and brought them down of the throne of power and humiliated the tyrants

And a vaster example of it will be the advent of the government of Justice and Truth
. (all over the world by Haḍrat Maḥdī (may our souls be sacrificed to him

These verses are among the verses that clearly give the glad tidings of the advent of
such a government. Some Islamic traditions indicate that, commenting on this verse,
.the Imams of Ahl-ul-Bayt (a.s.) have pointed to this great advent

We read in Nahj-ul-Balāqah from Ali (a.s.) who said: “The world will bend towards us
after having been refractory as the biting she-camel bends towards its young.” Then
Amir-ul-Mu’minīn (a.s.) recited the verse: “And We have intended to bestow (Our)
favour upon those who were oppressed in the earth, and to make them leaders (in
[faith](#)) and make them heirs.”[\(1\)](#)

Also the same Imam (a.s.), commenting on the above verse, said: “They are the
progeny of Muhammad (p.b.u.h.). Allah will raise their Maḥdī after their trouble (and
pressure they receive); then He will give them honour and make their enemies
[despised.”\[\\(2\\)\]\(#\)](#)

Imam Zayn-ul-‘Ābidīn, Ali-ibn-il-Husayn (a.s.), once in a tradition said: “By the One
Who raised Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) legitimately as the giver of glad tidings and warner,
verily the righteous of us Ahl-ul-Bayt and their followers are like Moses

p: ۲۲۳

Nahj-ul-Balaqah, saying No. ۲۰۹ –۱

Qiybat by Shaykh Sadūq, according to Nūr-uth-Thaqalayn, Vol. ۳, P. ۱۱۰ –۲

and his followers. ... (Finally we will be victorious and they will be destroyed and the government of the truth and justice will be ours.)” (Majma‘-ul-Bayān, following the
(verse

Of course, the worldly government of Mahdī (a.s.) at the end will never hinder the limited Islamic government to be formed before it by the oppressed ones against the oppressors. Then whenever they prepare its conditions the certain promise and
.Divine Will will be accomplished for them and they will gain this victory

:(.some traditions Upon the Advent of Mahdī (a.s

Point

Faḍl-ibn-Shāthān narrates from Hassan-ibn-Mahbūb, from Mālik-ibn-‘Aṭīyyih, from ‘Abū-Hamzah Thābit-ibn-‘Abī-Safīyyih Dīnār, from Imām Bāqir (a.s.) who said: “The night before ‘Āshūrā Imam Husayn (a.s.) delivered a great sermon for his companions and informed them that whoever was with him would become martyr and he (a.s.) let them go out of that land and would rescue themselves if they desired. Some of them said earnestly that they might never separate from him. Then he delivered a sermon again and said: “I give you glad tidings of Paradise. By Allah, after we become martyr, we will remain (in the bounty of Allah) how long He desires. Then Allah will bring you and us out at the time of the advent of Our Qā’im. Then he will take vengeance from the oppressors. Then you and I will see them in chains, yokes, and kinds of
”.punishment and tortures

Some one asked: “O son of the Prophet of Allah! Who is your Qā’im?” He (a.s.) said: ‘He is the seventh son of my son, Muhammad-ibn-Ali, Al-Bāqir, and he is Allah’s proof, the son of Hassan-ibn-Ali-ibn-Muhammad-ibn-Ali-ibn-Mūsa-ibn-Ja‘far-ibn-Muhammad-ibn-Ali my son, and he is the one who will be absent for a long time, then he will
reappear and fill the

[earth with equity and justice as it was filled with tyranny and injustice.”](#)⁽¹⁾

Traditions about Raj'at

In this tradition Imam Husayn (a.s.) has spoken about his return to this world as well
as the martyrs of Karbalā

Shaykh Hurr ‘Āmilī has narrated the last part of this tradition from the book entitled
[’Ithbāt-ur-Raj‘ah](#), by Faḍl-ibn-Shāthān.⁽²⁾

Imam Ṣādiq (a.s.) said: “The first person to whom the earth (grave) will cleave and he
[returns to the world is Husayn-ibn Ali \(a.s.\).”](#)⁽³⁾

Imam Bāqir (a.s.) said to Bukayr-ibn-’A‘yun: “Verily the Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.)
[and Ali \(a.s.\) will return \(to this world\).”](#)⁽⁴⁾

Imam Husayn (a.s.) said: “I am the first person to whom the earth will cleave and I will
come out of it and this is contemporary with the return of Amir-ul-Mu’minīn and the
[raising up of our Qā’im.”](#)⁽⁵⁾

Imam Ṣādiq (a.s.) said: “Accompany with Qā’im, there will come out twenty seven
persons from behind Kūfah, fifteen ones of them are from the people of Moses (a.s.),
[\(those who used to guide \(to the Truth\) and called \(people\) to justice. ...”](#)⁽⁶⁾

Imam Amir-ul-Mu’minīn Ali (a.s.) said: “I asked the Messenger of Allah: ‘O’ Messenger
of Allah! Is Mahdī from us, the progeny of Muhammad, or from other than us?’ Then
the Messenger of Allah said: ‘But he is of us with whom Allah will end the religion as He
began it with us, and by us people

p: ۲۲۵

Mokhtaṣar ’Ithbāt-ur-Raj‘ah, seventh tradition; and Kifāyat-ul-Mahdī, P. ۵۰ – ۱

Ithbāt-ul-Hudāt, Vol. ۳, P. ۵۶۹ – ۲

Mizān-ul-Hikmah, Vol. ۴, P. ۱۹۸۲ – ۳

Ibid -۴

Ibid -۵

Ibid -۶

will be delivered from disturbances the same as they were delivered from polytheism; and by us they will be brethren after the sedition of the enemy as they became
(brethren after the enmity of polytheism.” (‘Iqd-ul-Durar, P. ۱۴۲

Abū Sa‘īd-il-Khudrī narrates from the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) that verily he said: “At the time of Mahdī, my Ummah will be favoured a bounty the like of which they had never been favoured. The sky will gradually send (bounties) down on them and the earth will not
(restrain anything of its plants but it brings them out.” (۱

The Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) said: “Mahdī (a.s.) will come out while there will be a cloud above his head in which a caller will call: ‘This is Mahdī, the viceroy of Allah; then
(do follow him?’.” (۲

By the way, the great learned Hasan-ibn-Solaymān Al-Hilly has written a book upon the virtues of Ahl-ul-Bayt (a.s.), in which he has recorded many narrations about Raj‘at (returning to this world), and the Late ‘Allāmah Majlisī has stated around two hundred explicit traditions widely transmitted from the immaculate Imams and said: “More than forty notables of Shī‘ah, such as: Shaykh Tūsī, Shaykh Mufīd, Sayyid Murtaḍā ‘Alam-ul-Hudā, Shaykh Sadūq, Kulaynī, and the like have referred them in their valuable works.” He says: “If the traditions of Raj‘at were not widely transmitted, there could not be any one to claim widely transmitted of.” Also The Late Ṭabarsī in Majma‘-ul-Bayān, when discussing Raj‘at, says: “It has been narrated widely transmitted from the Imams of Ahl-ul-Bayt that at the time of raising of Mahdī (a.s.)
,Allah will cause some of his friends and followers to return to this world

p: ۲۲۶

Iqd-ul-Durar, P. ۱۶۹ –۱
Kashf-ul-Qummah, Vol. ۲, P. ۴۸۵ –۲

who had formerly passed away, in order to help him and get the reward of his assistant and see his victorious government and become happy. Allah will also bring back some of his enemies to be taken vengeance and be killed as punishment, and to be involved of being abject and contemptible by seeing Mahdī's glory and [grandeur.](#)"[\(1\)](#)

For proving Raj'at, the Late Shaykh-i-Tūsī, in his valuable commentary, Tibyān, has reasoned to many holy verses of the Qur'ān, and then he has claimed that some of the traditions of Raj'at are widely transmitted. The Late Shaykh Hurr 'Āmily, by means of different statements, has also proved that the traditions of Raj'at are widely transmitted. There have been recorded five hundred and twenty traditions in the [valuable book entitled "Īqāth" concerning Raj'at.](#)[\(2\)](#)

Upon the explanation of Tahthīb, the Late Muhaddith Jazā'irī has stated that he had [seen six hundred and twenty traditions about Raj'at.](#)[\(3\)](#)

However, the abovementioned matters have been taken from the book entitled:
.Raj'at-i-Daulat-i-Karīmeḥ Khāndān-i-Wahy, pp. ۱۴۱, ۱۴۲

?Who The Oppressed and Oppressors Are

We know that the Arabic term /mustaḍ'af/ is derived from the word /ḍa'f/ (weakness). But, here, it does not mean someone who is weak, unable, and not having power, it means someone who has powers both in actuality and potentiality but he has been under serious pressure from the side of the unjust and tyrants so that he is in weakness, chains, and yokes. He

p: ۲۲۷

Majma'ul-Bayān, Vol. ۷, P. ۲۳۴; and Tafsīr-us-Sāfī, Vol. ۴, P. ۷۶ –۱
Kitāb-ul-Īqāz, P. ۳۱ and P. ۴۳۰ –۲
Bayān-ul-Furqān, Vol. ۵, P. ۲۸۸ –۳

always tries to break the chains in order to become free, and send the oppressors away so that he can establish the right religion and justice everywhere

Allah has promised such a group that He will help them and give them the government of the earth. This promise is not for those shiftless and coward people who are not ready even to make a shout, let alone that they enter the field of struggle and be sacrificed

That day, the Children of Israel could become the heirs of the government of Pharaohs, too, when they supported their leader, Moses (a.s.), and mobilized their forces in a single row. They completed the remaining faith that they had inherited from their grand father Abraham (a.s.) with the invitation of Moses (a.s.), and after wiping out superstitions from their thought, they became ready to raise

Kinds of Mustad‘af

Of course, there are various kinds of Mustad‘af (oppressed). They are ideological, cultural, economical, ethical and political oppressed. That which the Qur‘ān has emphasized on more, are the political and ethical oppressed

No doubt the arrogant tyrants, in order to strengthen the bases of their tyrannical policy, at first try to mentally and culturally weaken their preys and to economic weakness so that power and ability may not remain for them and they do not think about raising and taking the rein of government in their hand

In five occurrences of the holy Qur‘ān the oppressed are referred to in which the words are about the believers who were under the pressure of the oppressors

In one place, the Qur‘ān invites the believers to struggle in the way of Allah and helping the Faithful oppressed ones. It says: “And what has happened to you that you should not fight in the way of Allah and for the weak among men, women, and

children who say: ‘Our Lord! Take us out of this town whose people are oppressors,
(and appoint for us from You guardian, and appoint for us from You helper!’” (1)

Only in one instance the Qur’ān speaks about the ones who are unjust and cooperate with disbelievers while they claim that they are oppressed but the Qur’ān negates their claim, where it says: “...‘In what state were you?’ They will reply: ‘We were oppressed in the land’. (The angels) will say: ‘Was not Allah’s land vast so that you (could have migrated therein?’ ...” But since they did not so, their abode is Hell. (2)

Yet, the Qur’ān has, however, supported the oppressed everywhere and has mentioned them fairly and has considered them the under-pressure-believers who are strugglers and are in the grace of Allah

:The General Style of All Oppressors

It was not only Pharaoh who, for the captivity of the Children of Israel, slaughtered their men and kept their women alive to be as maid servants, but all the tyrants of history used to do like that and caused the active powers to be useless by any means they could

Wherever they could not break the men, they broke their manliness. They stopped the spirit of bravery, courage and faith in them by spreading means of corruption, narcotic materials, expansion of indecency, sexual libertinage, the development of liquor and gambling, and kinds of unsafe amusement so that they could continue their self-interest government with peace of mind. But the Divine prophets

p: ۲۲۹

Sura An-Nisā’, No. ۴, verse ۷۵ – ۱

Ibid, verse ۹۷ – ۲

specially the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.), tried to awaken the inactive powers of the young persons; and even taught manliness to women and set them in the row of men
against the oppressors

The evidences of these two programs are so manifest in the history of the past, and
.nowadays in all Islamic countries, that there is no need of mentioning them

p: ۲۳۰

(٧) وَأَوْحَيْنَا إِلَىٰ أُمِّ مُوسَىٰ أَنْ أَرْضِعِيهِ فَإِذَا خِفْتِ عَلَيْهِ فَأَلْقِيهِ فِي الْيَمِّ وَلَا تَخَافِي وَلَا تَحْزَنِي إِنَّا رَادُّوهُ إِلَيْكَ وَجَاعِلُوهُ مِنَ الْمُرْسَلِينَ

And We inspired unto the mother of Moses, saying: ‘Give him suck, then when you “ .v fear for him, cast him into the River and do not fear nor grieve, for We will return him ”.’unto you and make him one of the apostles

Commentary, verse: ٧

Moses’ mother cost him into the River

Pharaoh had been told that in that year a child would be born that if he could grow up he might destroy him. He ordered that all the newborn children should be killed. But when Moses was born, Allah inspired his mother to give him suck. Then she should put him inside a box and cast the box into the sea. In this noble verse, there are two orders, two prohibitions, and two glad tidings unto Moses’ mother. The two orders are: “Give him suck” and “Cast him into the River”. The two prohibitions are: “Do not fear” “Nor grieve”. And the two glad tidings are: “We will return him unto you” and .”“Make him one of the apostles

The Arabic word /*xauf*/ (fear) is used for a probable danger, and the Qur’ānic word /*huzn*/ is applied for a certain anxiety. (The Commentary of Al-Mizān) The objective of the term /*yamm*/ is the Nile River in Egypt which is called ‘sea’ because of its .greatness and largeness. The castle of Pharaoh had been built on its bank

When Allah desires it, man's enemy becomes his refuge, either: "Then the people of
(Pharaoh picked him up (from the River))." (1)

Therefore, in order to illustrate a lively example of the triumphant of the oppressed over the oppressors, in this verse Allah starts the story of Moses and Pharaoh. It specially explains the parts in which Moses is in the weakest states and Pharaoh is in his mightiest circumstances, so that it shows the triumph of the Will of Allah over the
:will of tyrants in its best form. It says

And We inspired unto the mother of Moses, saying: "Give him suck, then when you " fear for him, cast him into the River and do not fear nor grieve, for We will return him
".?unto you and make him one of the apostles

This short holy verse contains two commandments, two prohibitions, and two glad tidings which are a summary of a great story full of adventures, the extract of it is as
:follows

The system of Pharaoh had designed a vast plan for killing the 'new born boys' of the Children of Israel, and even the midwives of Pharaoh were taking control over the
.pregnant women of the Children of Israel

In this course, one of the midwives had friendship with Moses' mother. (The delivery of Moses performed secretly and the signs of pregnancy were not so apparent in his mother.) When she felt that the childbirth was approaching, she went to meet her friend, the midwife. She told her that she had a child in her womb and she was in need
.of her kindness and friendship

When Moses was born, a mysterious light came out from his eyes, in a manner that
the midwife's body trembled, and

p: ۲۳۲

she felt a light of love in the depth of her heart for him, so that it brightened all parts of
.her heart

The midwife does not inform the birth of Moses

The midwife turned to the mother of Moses and said: “I had decided to inform the birth of this child to the government in order that the officials come and kill this boy (and I take my tip), but what can I do that I feel an intensive love from this child inside my heart, so that I do not wish that he receives even the slightest harm. Take care of
”.him properly. I think that at last our final enemy is this child

When the midwife came out from the house of Moses’ mother, some of the spies of the government saw her and decided to enter the house. Moses’ sister informed the
.event to the mother and she became so hasty that she did not know what to do

In the midst of this intensive fear that she could not think at all, she wrapped the child in a piece of cloth and threw him into the oven. Then the men of government came in and, after searching everywhere, they found nothing there save an oven full of fire. They began making investigations from the mother of Moses. They asked what that midwife was doing there. She answered them that she was her friend and had come
.to see her. The spies became disappointed and went out

Moses’ mother came to her senses and asked Moses’ sister where Moses was. She answered she did not know. Suddenly a cry was heard from the inside of the oven. The mother hastened toward the oven when she saw Allah had made the fire cold and safe for him, (the same Lord Who made the fire of Numrūd cold and safe for
.Abraham). She took out her child safe and sound from the oven

Still the mother was not in security because the officials were searching here and there and, hearing the sound of a body would be enough for a great danger to
.happen

Now a Divine inspiration enlightened the heart of Moses's mother. It was an inspiration that apparently invited her to a dangerous action, but, however, she felt
.peace from it

She realized that it was a Divine mission that she should fulfil it in any case. She decided to accomplish the content of this inspiration and cast her newborn child into
.the Nile River

She went to an Egyptian carpenter, (a carpenter who was one of Coptic people). She asked him to make a small box for her. The carpenter asked her for what purpose she wanted that box with those qualities. The mother of Moses, being unable to tell a lie, disclosed her plan to the carpenter and said that she was from the Children of Israel
.and she needed the box for her newborn son to hide him in it

The carpenter could not inform the informers

The carpenter intended to inform the event to the cruel informers. When he went to them he became dumb because of the horror he felt in his heart. He wanted to communicate the matter to the informers by only making signs, but they took his
.deeds as a mockery and, beating him, drove him away

When the carpenter came out he found himself to be all right. He went again to the informers and the previous event happened to him once more. Then he was convinced that there was a Divine secret in it, and he made the box for Moses' mother
.and gave it to her

Perhaps it was in the early morning, when the people of Egypt were still asleep, that the mother of Moses brought her baby with the box beside the Nile River. She sucked him for the last time, and then she put him in that special box and let it move on the
.water like a ship

Soon the waves of the River took the box far from the bank. The mother was standing there, watching the scene. In a short moment she felt that as if her heart was separated from her and was moving on the waves. Had not the grace of Allah

made her heart calm, she would have cried and every thing was disclosed

Pharaoh had only a daughter

Now, we may see what happened in the palace of Pharaoh as stated in the news. The only child Pharaoh had was a young daughter. She was suffering from a serious sickness. He wanted the physicians to cure her, but he got no result from them. He betook to the soothsayers. They said: “O Pharaoh! We have foresighted that from the inside of this sea there will come a human into this castle that if the body of this patient be rubbed with his saliva, she will be cured

Pharaoh and his wife, 'Āsiyah, were waiting for such an event. One day suddenly a box, which was moving on the waves of the River, attracted their attention. He ordered his men to go immediately toward the box and take it and bring it to him to see what was inside it

The mysterious box was put in front of Pharaoh. Those who were around him could not open it. Yes, the box of the safety of Moses should be opened by the hand of Pharaoh himself, and so it happened. When the eyes of Pharaoh's wife were faced with the eyes of the baby, a light brightened the depths of her hearts and all those who were there, and Pharaoh's wife in particular, heartily loved him; and when the saliva of this newborn baby caused the sick person to be cured, this love was [\(increased.\)](#)

The rest of this story is shortly explained by the Holy Qur'ān, which we refer to in the following pages

p: ۲۳۵

This part of the narration is said by Ibn-'Abbas, recorded in the commentary of Fakhr-i-Rāzī, and there or also other narrations recorded in the commentary of 'Abul-Futūh and Majma'ul-Bayān

(٨) فَالْتَقَطَهُ ءَالُ فِرْعَوْنَ لِيَكُونَ لَهُمْ عَدُوًّا وَحَزَنًا إِنَّ فِرْعَوْنَ وَهَامَانَ وَجُنُودَهُمَا كَانُوا خَاطِئِينَ

Then the people of Pharaoh picked him up (from the River) that he might be unto “^٨ them an enemy and a (cause of their) grief; verily Pharaoh and Hāmān and their hosts were sinners”.

Commentary, verse: ٨

When anxieties and difficulties often rush, Allah is the best guide and support for the believers.

In the way of performing the commandments of Allah we must neither afraid of anything nor be anxious of any problem. The Qur’ān says

Then the people of Pharaoh picked him up (from the River) that he might be unto “^٨... ;them an enemy and a (cause of their) grief

The Qur’ānic word /’altaqaṭa/ is derived from the word /’iltiqāṭ/ which originally means: ‘reaching to something without any effort and endeavour’. And it is also for this reason that the lost things that one finds, in Arabic, are called /luqaṭah

It is evident that the men of Pharaoh did not take the box of this baby from the waves of the river with the purpose that they would foster their enemy in their own lap, but as the Pharaoh’s wife said, they wanted to take ‘a refreshment of eye’ for themselves, but finally it became as it happened. The delicacy of this meaning is in this very fact that Allah intends to show His power that how He made this group, who had mobilized all their forces to kill the boys of the Children of

Israel, to take care of and foster eagerly the some one for whom they applied all those cruelties in order that they could vanish him

However, the Arabic phrase: /ʾālu firʿaun/ (the people of Pharaoh), used in the verse, shows that not only one person but a group of the people of Pharaoh participated in taking the box from the water, and this is an evidence for the fact that they were waiting for such a thing

:At the end of the verse, the Qurʾān adds

”verily Pharaoh and Hāmān and their hosts were sinners ...“

They were sinners in every thing. What a sin is greater than this that they had left out the path of truth and justice, and founded the foundation of their government on vice, injustice, tyranny, and polytheism. And what a sin is clearer than this that they killed thousands of children to destroy Moses, but Allah put him in their own hands to take him, foster him and bring up their own enemy

Rāqib in Mufradāt says: “There is a difference between the Arabic words /xāṭī/ and /muxṭī/. The term /xaṭī/ is used for the one who begins a job that he can not afford doing it and goes a wrong way, while the term /muxṭī/ is used for a person who begins a job that he can afford it very well, but it happens that he makes mistake and wastes

”it

p: ۲۳۷

(٩) وَقَالَتِ امْرَأَةُ فِرْعَوْنَ قُرَّتْ عَيْنِي لِي وَلَكَ لَا تَقْتُلُوهُ عَسَىٰ أَن يَنْفَعَنَا أَوْ نَتَّخِذَهُ وَلَدًا وَهُمْ لَا يَشْعُرُونَ

And Pharaoh's wife said: '(He will be) a joy of the eye for me and for you; do not slay him; may be he will profit us, or we may take him for a son; but they did not perceive (what they were doing

Commentary, verse: ٩

The event of Pharaoh's daughter

The women have an effective function in social affairs. (Pharaoh's wife changed the decision of Pharaoh and neither of his dignity, sovereignty, and wealth could hinder her

In Moses' life, a few women had an important fundamental function. They were Moses' mother, Moses' sister, Pharaoh's wife and the wife of Moses. In this verse, the function of the wife of Pharaoh in preventing him from killing Moses is stated. The verse says

And Pharaoh's wife said: '(He will be) a joy of the eye for me and for you; do not slay him; ... ;him; may be he will profit us, or we may take him for a son

It seems that by the face of the baby and other signs, including putting him in the box and leaving him on the waves of Nile, Pharaoh had found out that this baby belonged to the Children of Israel. Suddenly the thought of raising up of a man from the Children of Israel and the destruction of his kingdom by his hand came into his mind and he wanted that his criminal law upon the new-born children of the Children of Israel should be executed for this baby, too

The flatterers around Pharaoh also encouraged this kind of thought and said that
.there was no reason that the law might not be executed upon him

But 'Āsiyah, Pharaoh's wife, who had no son and her pure heart, which was not of the kind of that of the people of Pharaoh's court, had been the center of the love of this new-born boy, stood against all of them, and since in these kinds of family debates
.women often win, she became victorious there, too

And if the event of the Pharaoh's daughter, who was cured before them, is also added
.to it, the triumph of 'Āsiyah in this conflict will be made more clear

:But, at the end of the verse, the Holy Qur'ān, in a short expressive sentence, says

”.(but they did not perceive (what they were doing ...“

Yes, they did not know that the Divine operative command and the invincible Will of Allah (s.w.t.) was upon this fact that this baby should be grown up in the most important center of danger and no one had the ability and power of opposing with this
.Divine Will

Yes, the providence and power of the Almighty is not only in that if He wishes to destroy a powerful and tyrannical people He sends the forces of heaven and the earth for their destruction. Showing power is in that He appoints the arrogant tyrants themselves as the destructive of them, and influences in their hearts and thoughts so effectively that they eagerly gather the fuel-wood by the fire of which they must be burnt; or they build a prison wherein they must die; or they set up a gallows-tree on which they must be put to death. The state of the arrogant powerful people of Pharaoh was also as this, and Moses' fosterage and deliverance, in all stages, were
:done by their own hand

.Moses' midwife was a Coptic woman

.The maker of the deliverance box of Moses was a Coptic carpenter

.Those who took the box from the waves of Nile were among 'The people of Pharaoh

The person who could open the door of the box was Pharaoh himself or his wife,
."Āsiyah

And, finally, the secure, peaceful, and educational place of Moses, who became brave
.and Pharaoh-breaker was that very palace of Pharaoh! And this is the providence

p: ۲۴۰

(١٠) وَأَصْبَحَ فُؤَادُ أُمِّ مُوسَى فَارِغًا إِنْ كَادَتْ لَتُبْدِيَ بِهِ لَوْلَا أَنْ رَبَطْنَا عَلَى قَلْبِهَا لِتَكُونَ مِنَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ

(١١) وَقَالَتْ لِأُخْتِهِ قُصِّ يَهُ فَبَصُرَتْ بِهِ عَنْ جُنْبٍ وَهُمْ لَا يَشْعُرُونَ

And the heart of the mother of Moses became void; she was about to disclose it “ .١٠
had We not strengthened her heart so that she might be of the believers (in Our
”.(promises

And she said to the sister of (Moses): ‘Follow him.’ So she watched him from afar “ .١١
” .while they did not perceive

Commentary, verses: ١٠-١١

Point

.(The peace of hearts is in the authority of Allah (s.w.t

The important thing before Allah is Faith, and in this field, men and women are equal
.for Him. And the peace of mind and rest of heart are among the signs of Faith

Moses’ mother sent her child on the waves of Nile, but after this event there
appeared an intensive fear in her heart. The vacant place of her newborn baby, which
.had filled her heart, was completely sensible

.It was almost nigh for her to shout and cast out the secrets hidden in her heart

.It was nigh that she might cry and moan for the separation of her son

But the grace of Allah (s.w.t.) was showered over her and the heart of Moses’ mother
was empty of everything except the remembrance of her son; and if Allah had not
strengthened her heart by the light of Faith and hope, she might have disclosed the
:matter. The verse says

And the heart of the mother of Moses became void; she was about to disclose it had “
We not strengthened her heart so that she might be of the believers (in Our
”.(promises

The Arabic word /Fāriq/ means ‘empty’, and here the purpose of it is that it became void from all things save the remembrance of Moses. Some commentators have taken it with the sense of being empty from sorrow and grief; or empty from inspiration and the glad tidings that she was already given; but regarding the sentence of the holy verse, these commentaries do not seem correct

This is completely natural that a mother, who separates her child from herself in the abovementioned manner, forgets everything but her child and goes into such a mood that, without considering the dangers that may threaten both her and her child, cries and reveals the secrets hidden in her heart. But the Lord, Who has assigned this heavy mission for this kind and compassionate mother, strengthens her heart so firmly that she believes in the Divine promises and knows that her child is in the protection of Allah and, at last, He will return him to her and he will become a prophet

The Arabic word /rabaṭnā/ is derived from /rabata/ which originally means: ‘to tie an animal, or the like, somewhere to be assured that it is secure in its place’. That is why the site of this kind of animals is called ‘Ribāṭ’, and afterward it has been used in a vaster scope of meaning, as: ‘to guard, to strengthen, and to get firmness’; and the purpose of /rabaṭna ‘alā qalbihā/ in this verse is ‘strengthening the heart of this mother’, so that she believes in the Divine inspiration and tolerates this great event

The next verse implies that Moses’ mother regained her calmness as the result of Allah’s grace, but she wanted to know the circumstance of her child. Therefore, the
:verse says

”...’.And she said to the sister of (Moses): ‘Follow him “

The Qur’ānic term /quṣṣiyuhū/ is derived from /qaṣṣ/ which means ‘seeking for the traces of something’. The Arabic word /qiṣṣih/ is used in the sense of ‘story’ because it follows the different news and events

Moses sister watched the affairs from a distance

Moses’ sister fulfilled the command of the mother and watched the affairs from a considerable distance. The verse continues saying

”So she watched him from afar while they did not perceive ...“

Some commentators have said that several special servants of Pharaoh had brought the child out of the castle in order to search for a nurse for him, and it was just this time that Moses’ sister saw her brother from a distance

.But the first commentary seems more fitting

Thus, after that when the mother of Moses returned to her own home, Moses’ sister was in the bank of Nile, watching the events from afar, and by her own eyes she saw the manner how some of the people of Pharaoh took him off the water and rescued him from the horrible danger which was threatening him

There have also been delivered some other commentaries for the Qur’ānic sentence: /hum lā yaš‘urūn/ (they did not perceive). The Late Tabarsī, particularly, believes that the repetition of this sentence in the previous verses and here about Pharaoh may point to this fact that he who was so abundantly unaware of the affairs, how did he ?claim divinity? How did he want to fight against the Will of Allah

(١٢) وَحَرَّمْنَا عَلَيْهِ الْمَرَاضِعَ مِنْ قَبْلُ فَقَالَتْ هَلْ أَدُلَّكُمْ عَلَىٰ أَهْلِ بَيْتٍ يَكْفُلُونَهُ لَكُمْ وَهُمْ لَهُ نَاصِحُونَ

And We already forbade on him all foster mothers ere until (his sister came up “ .١٢ and) said: ‘Shall I guide you unto the people of a house who will take care of him for ”?you and they will be benevolent to him

Commentary, verse: ١٢

The Arabic term /marāḍi/ is the plural form of /murḍi/ that means ‘the woman who .?gives suck at the breast’, and ‘wet-nurse

If Allah does not wish something, a large system such as that of Pharaoh is impotent .to supply it as the food of a baby, either

The most elementary things, such as sucking milk of a sucking child is also done by .(Allah’s Will, and if He does not desire, it will not happen: (And We already forbade

When an arrogant person was discouraged, he might easily accept the guidance and .suggestion of even an unknown fellow, too

However, the will of Allah was that this child would return to his mother soon and :make her heart calm. So, the verse says

And We already forbade on him all foster “
... mothers ere

It is natural that, after a few hours, a newborn child, such as Moses, becomes hungry and cries impatiently. They had to search a foster mother for him, in particular that .the queen of Egypt had bent her heart upon him and loved him very much

The men of Pharaoh began searching everywhere to find a foster mother for the child, but it was surprising that he did not suck milk from any foster mother. Perhaps the child was frightened by their features, or the flavor of their milk was not acquainted with his taste, and it was unpleasant to him. As if he wanted to throw off himself from the bosom of those foster mothers. This was that very divine genetic prohibition that He had forbidden all foster mothers on him

Every moment, the child became hungrier and more impatient. He was ceaselessly crying and his sound was heard in the castle and caused the queen's heart to tremble

The officials intensified their efforts. Suddenly they met in a not so distanced place a girl who said that she knew a family who could take care of that newborn child and they would be benevolent to him. The verse continues saying

until (his sister came up and) said: 'Shall I guide you unto the people of a house ... "who will take care of him for you and they will be benevolent to him

She implied that she knew a woman from the Children of Israel whose chest was full of milk and she had a heart full of affection. She had lost her child and was ready to undertake giving suck to the baby of the castle

The officials become happy and took the mother of Moses to Pharaoh's castle. When the child smelt the mother's smell, he eagerly pressed her nipple in his mouth and he got a new life from her milk. The light of joy was seen in the eyes of the audience, specially those officials who, after a tiresome research, had gained their aim and were happier than others. Pharaoh's wife could not hide her happiness from others for this event

Perhaps they told the foster where she was that they sought everywhere for her. They wished she had come sooner. They

.admired her and also her milk which was a resolver of their difficulty

Some Islamic narrations indicate that when Moses accepted the nipple of the mother, Hāmān, the minister of Pharaoh, said: “I think you are the real mother of this child. Why did he accept only your breast from among those many women?” She said: “O king! It is because I am a sweet-smelling woman and my milk is also very sweet. Up to now there has been no child given to me but he (she) has accepted my nipple. The [audience verified her words and each of them gave her a precious present.](#)[\(1\)](#)

Imam Bāqir (a.s.) in a tradition said: “It did not last longer than three days that Allah [returned the baby to his mother.](#)[\(2\)](#)

Some have said that this Divine genetic prohibition of the milk of others for Moses was that Allah did want that this great prophet drink the milk which was polluted with unlawful food, polluted with properties gained by larceny, crime, bribery, and usurping other’s rights. He should drink a pure milk such as the milk of his mother so that he [could stand against the pollutions and fight against the impious ones](#)

p: ۲۴۶

The Commentary by Fakhr-i-Rāzī, Vol. ۲۲۱, P. ۲۳۱ –۱
Tafsīr-us-Sāfī, Vol. ۳ under verse ۶۰ from Sura Tā-Hā –۲

(١٣) فَرَدَدْنَاهُ إِلَىٰ أُمِّهِ كَيْ تَقَرَّ عَيْنُهَا وَلَا تَحْزَنَ وَلِتَعْلَمَ أَنَّ وَعْدَ اللَّهِ حَقٌّ وَلَكِنَّ أَكْثَرَهُمْ لَا يَعْلَمُونَ

Thus did We restore him to his mother that her eye might be refreshed, and that “ ١٣ she might not grieve, and that she might know that the promise of Allah is true, but
”.most of them do not know

Commentary, verse: ١٣

Never do the Divine promises fail, but the majority of people are those who see only the surface of the things and have no understanding of the wise secrets and devise .plans of Allah. Of course, for the people of Truth the aims are important, not the titles

Finally, the child was returned to the bosom of the mother, though this time the mother was employed as a foster mother. But the title is no important, the return of :the child was important. Therefore, this verse says

Thus did We restore him to his mother that her eye might be refreshed, and that she “ might not grieve, and that she might know that the promise of Allah is true, but most
”.of them do not know

There arises a question here: Did the people of Pharaoh give the child to the mother to suck him and during this time, every day, or now and then, she had to bring the child into the castle of Pharaoh in order that the Queen of Egypt might have a new visit from him? Or did they keep the child inside the court and Moses' mother came ?there in special times and sucked him

There is not any clear evidence for either of these two probabilities, but the first one
.seems more fitting

And also, was Moses transported to the castle of Pharaoh after the end of his sucking period? Or did he usually keep his relation with the mother and his family and used to
?have familiar intercourse between these two

Some commentators have said that after the sucking period she gave him to Pharaoh and his wife, 'Āsiyah, and Moses was fostered by them and in their hands. Here there are cited some other stories about the childish but expressive acts of Moses unto Pharaoh that mentioning all of them takes a long space. But this sentence that, after that Moses was appointed to prophethood, Pharaoh told him: "... 'Did we not cherish you as a child among us, and you tarried among us for (many) years of your life?", shows that Moses had lived in the castle of Pharaoh for a length of time and had
.remained there for some years

It is understood from the commentary of Ali-ibn-'Ibrāhīm that Moses remained in the castle of Pharaoh with utmost honour until the period of his puberty, but his theistic statements made Pharaoh very inconvenient, so much so that he decided to kill Moses. Moses left the castle and entered the city where he confronted the conflict of two men: one from the Coptic people and the other was from among the Children of [\(Israel.\)](#)

p: ٢٤٨

Section ۲: Moses saved by Allah from being murdered

Point

Moses kills an Egyptian – People plan to kill Moses in return – Allah saves Moses

(۱۴) وَلَمَّا بَلَغَ أَشُدَّهُ وَاسْتَوَىٰ ءَاتَيْنَاهُ حُكْمًا وَعِلْمًا وَكَذَٰلِكَ نَجْزِي الْمُحْسِنِينَ

And when he reached his full strength and was ripe, We granted him wisdom and “ .۱۴
” .knowledge; and thus do We reward the good-doers

Commentary, verse: ۱۴

The first condition of accepting responsibility is bodily puberty; but real puberty is not obtained by only the bodily growth and sexual power, it depends on the completion of .thought and intellect, too

Here we are faced with the third part of the adventurous life story of Moses (a.s.), in which the events of before his puberty period, and before he goes from Egypt to :Madyan, and the motive of his migration are pointed out. It says

And when he reached his full strength and was ripe, We granted him wisdom and “
” .knowledge; and thus do We reward the good-doers

The Arabic term /ʾašudda/ is derived from /šiddat/ in the sense of ‘to become strong’; and the word /ʾistawā/ is derived from /ʾistiwāʾ/ which means ‘the perfection of .?creation and equilibrium

Some commentators have said that /balaqa 'ašudd/ is the state in which man reaches the limit of perfection from the point of bodily strength and it is often in the age of eighteen; and /'istiwā'/ is the state of equilibrium and establishment in the affair of life and living which usually comes forth after the perfection of bodily power

The difference between these two Arabic words /ḥukm/ (judgment) and /'ilm/ (knowledge) may be in the fact that /ḥukm/ refers to intellect, understanding, and ability for correct judgment, while /'ilm/ is an awareness and knowledge which is not accompanied with ignorance

The Qur'ān sentence /ka'ālika najzil mu'minīn/ clearly shows that, because of his godly piety and for his good and pure deeds, Moses had got this eligibility that Allah gave him the reward of wisdom and knowledge, and it is clear that the purpose of this wisdom and knowledge is not revelation and prophethood, because on that day Moses had a long distance with the time of revelation and prophethood. Then, the purpose is that awareness, clear sightedness, the ability of correct judgment and the like of them that Allah gave to Moses for his chastity, veracity, and righteousness. Shortly speaking, this sentence indicates that Moses did not change to the habit of the castle, the environment where he lived, and, as far as he could, he tried to help the right and justice, though today the details of it are not clear to us

(١٥) وَدَخَلَ الْمَدِينَةَ عَلَى حِينٍ غَفْلَةٍ مِنْ أَهْلِهَا فَوَجَدَ فِيهَا رَجُلَيْنِ يَقْتَتِلَانِ هَذَا مِنْ شِيعَتِهِ وَهَذَا مِنْ عَدُوِّهِ فَاسْتَعَاثَ الَّذِي مِنْ شِيعَتِهِ عَلَى الَّذِي مِنْ عَدُوِّهِ فَوَكَرَهُ مُوسَى فَقَضَى عَلَيْهِ قَالَ هَذَا مِنْ عَمَلِ الشَّيْطَانِ إِنَّهُ عَدُوٌّ مُضِلٌّ مُبِينٌ

And he entered the city at a time when its people were unheeding, and found “ ١٥ there two men fighting, one being of his own party, and the other of his enemies. Then the one that was of his own party sought his help against the one who was of his enemies, so Moses struck him with his fist and killed him. He said: ‘This is of the enemies, so Moses struck him with his fist and killed him. He said: ‘This is of the ”.’Satan’s doing; verily, he is an enemy that manifestly misleads

Commentary, verse: ١٥

The reformers of the society should sometimes informally, unknowingly and without .any title come among people

Before his prophethood, Moses (a.s.) had some companions and followers, too. Though he was grown up in the castle of Pharaoh, the oppressed people had mostly accepted him as their supporter and leader because of his thought and manner. :However, the verse says

“... ,And he entered the city at a time when its people were unheeding “

It is not clear that which city it was that Moses entered, but most probably it was the capital of Egypt. As some Islamic commentators have said, Moses had been condemned to be banished from the capital of Egypt as the result of the daily increasing discords he had against Pharaoh and his governmental

.system. But, in a special time when people were unaware, Moses entered the capital

This is also probable that the purpose of entering the city was his coming out from the castle of Pharaoh, because the castle of the kings were usually built by the city so that they could control the ways of coming and going

The objective of the sentence 'at a time when its people were unheeding' is the time when the people of the city stopped their business and no one was exactly taking care of the circumstances of the city. But at what hour it happened

In a tradition the holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) said: "The hour of negligence is between sunset and the evening supper."⁽¹⁾

And, verily, this hour is the hour of negligence and many of the crimes, vices, and ethical deviations are performed in these very hours of the beginning of night

At this time, people are mostly neither busy working nor are they in the state of sleeping and resting. There is usually a general negligence in the city at this time, and the circulation of the mischief centers are also during these hours

Anyhow, Moses entered the city where he was confronted a scene. The verse continues saying

and found there two men fighting, one being of his own party, and the other of his ... " ... enemies

The application of the Arabic term /šī'atihī/ in the verse shows that from that time Moses had some communications with the children of Israel and he had some followers there, and probably he had chosen them as a central source for struggling against the tyrannical system of Pharaoh

When the Israelite man saw Moses who was a strong man, asked him, to help him
:against his enemy. The verse says

Then the one that was of his own party sought his help against the one who was of ...“
”... ,his enemies

Moses hastened to help him in order to deliver him from the grips of that unjust cruel
man. Some commentators have said that this enemy was one of the cooks of Pharaoh
and he wanted to force the Israelite man to carry the woods without pay. The verse
:says

”... .so Moses struck him with his fist and killed him ...“

No doubt Moses did not want to kill the Coptic man, and this meaning is also
understood from the later verses, not for the sake that they were not deserving to be
killed, but for the sequels that this action might have for Moses and the Children of
.Israel

:So immediately Moses spoke

He said: ‘This is of the Satan’s doing; verily, he is an enemy that manifestly ... “
”.’misleads

In other words, he wanted to separate the hand of the Coptic man from the collar of
the man who was from the Children of Israel. Though the people of Pharaoh deserved
more than this, in those circumstances that action was not expedient and, as we will
see later, this event caused him not to remain in Egypt any longer and he went toward
.Madyan

(١٦) قَالَ رَبِّ إِنِّي ظَلَمْتُ نَفْسِي فَاغْفِرْ لِي فَغَفَرَ لَهُ إِنَّهُ هُوَ الْغَفُورُ الرَّحِيمُ

Moses) said: ‘My Lord! Verily I have done harm to myself! Do You then forgive) “ .١٦
”.me!’ So (Allah) forgave him. Verily He is the forgiving, the Merciful

Commentary, verse: ١٦

The righteous people immediately ask forgiveness even for the unintentional wrong actions, too, and avoid from their sequels. (By his seeking forgiveness, Moses asked several things from Allah: both wiping the social effects of his action, and removing the anxiety from the future, and repelling of the revengeful plots of the people of (Pharaoh

:In this verse, the Holy Qur’ān from the tongue of Moses (a.s.) says

Moses) said: ‘My Lord! Verily I have done harm to myself! Do You then forgive me!’ “
”.So (Allah) forgave him. Verily He is the forgiving, the Merciful

Certainly Moses did not commit any sin here, but there happened a ‘leaving the better (nodbī)’ from him that there should not happen such a thing so that he would not inflict some annoyance, trouble, and pain. For this very action he asked Allah to forgive him and Allah included him in His grace, too. Commentators have delivered a great deal of discussions about the affray of the Coptic man and the Israelite one, and the Coptic (being killed by Moses (a.s

Of course this action was not itself an important problem, because the criminal men of Pharaoh were some cruel mischief mongers who cut the head of thousands of newborn sons from

the Children of Israel and refused to commit no crime against the Children of Israel. Thus they were not some ones whose blood could be honourable specially for the Children of Israel

The things that have created difficulty for the commentators are the expressions that Moses (a.s.) himself has stated in this event

Once he says: "... This is of the Satan's doing, ..." (1)

In another occurrence he says: "My Lord! Verily I have done harm to myself! Do you then forgive me! ..." (2)

How do these expressions agree with the infallibility of the prophets who must have the rank of immunity even before their prophethood and Messengership

But the above explanations upon the commentary of the above verses make clear that what Moses did was not more than leaving the better (nodbī). By this act he troubled him because a Coptic being killed by Moses was not an ordinary thing that the people of Pharaoh could easily renounce, and we know that abandoning this action is in the sense of an action which is not essentially unlawful (ḥarām), but it causes that a better deed may be left without that a wrong action would have been done

Something similar to this meaning has also been cited in the life story of some other prophets, including Hadrat Adam, the explanation of which was given when commenting on Sura Al-'A'rāf, No. 7, verse 19

A tradition upon the commentary of this verse has been recorded in 'Uyūn-ul-'Akhbar from Imam Ali-ibn-Mūsar-Riḍā (a.s.) who said: "The purpose of the Qur'ānic sentence: "... this is of the Satan's doing; ..." is the conflict of those two with

each other which was considered as a Satanic act, not the act of Moses (a.s.); and the purpose of the sentence: “My Lord! Verily I have done harm to myself! ...” is that I put myself in a place where I should not put. I should not come into this city; and the purpose of the phrase: “...Do You then forgive me! ...” is that You do cover me from Your enemies so that they do not find me. (One of the meanings of /qufrān/ is ‘to
(.’cover

Sayyid Murtaḍā ‘Alam-al-Hudā, in Tanzīh-ul-’Anbiyā, commenting on the verse, has
(chosen the same meaning, too. [\(1\)](#)

p: ۲۵۶

Uyūn-ul-’Akhbār, Nūr-uth-Thaqalayn, Tafsīr-uṣ-Ṣāfi, Tafsīr-ul-Burhān, Tafsīr-i- ‘ –\n
.Manhaj-uṣ-Ṣādiqīn under the verse

(١٧) قَالَ رَبِّ بِمَا أَنْعَمْتَ عَلَيَّ فَلَنْ أَكُونَ ظَهِيرًا لِّلْمُجْرِمِينَ

He said: “My Lord! For the bounty You have bestowed on me, never shall I be a “ .١٧
”.’supporter of the guilty

Commentary, verse: ١٧

As a gratitude to Allah, Moses helped the oppressed

.(It is better that we call Allah in our supplications by the holy word ‘Rabb’ (Lord

The bodily power is one of the bounties of Allah (s.w.t.) given to human beings. (Moses
(.a.s.) had ability that he could kill a pagan by his fist

Moses implicitly said to Allah: “For the gratitude of this bounty that You included me in
Your forgiveness and caused me not to be seized by the enemies, and for the
gratitude of all bounties that You have bestowed on me since the beginning, I will
never support the guilty and will not be the helper of the unjust. On the contrary, I will
:hasten to help the oppressed and the deprived.” The verse says

He said: “My Lord! For the bounty You have bestowed on me, never shall I be a “
”.’supporter of the guilty

The purpose of Moses (a.s.) from this noble sentence was that he would never
cooperate with the criminal sinful people of Pharaoh and he (a.s.) would be the
.supporter of the oppressed Children of Israel

In Islamic jurisprudence there is a large chapter about ‘helping the sin’ and ‘assisting
the oppressors’; or there are many traditions which show that one of the most clear
sins is helping the unjust, tyrants, and criminals. It causes man to share the evil fate of
.theirs

In principle, the unjust, tyrants, and persons like Pharaoh are some particular members who always exist in every society, and if the crowds of people do not cooperate with them the tyrannical kings will not become so tyrant. When a group of vile and weak fellows, or the seekers of an occasion and mammonists gather around them and become as their aids or, at least, as their multitude of soldiers, they usually provide a satanic power for them

This Islamic and humane principle has repeatedly been emphasized on in the Holy Qur'ān. For example, Allah in Sura Al-Mā'idah, No. ٥, verse ٢ says: "... And cooperate in righteousness and piety, but do not cooperate in sin and transgression; ...". There are some other evidences in it, too

The Qur'ān explicitly says: "And do not incline to those who are unjust, lest the Fire will touch you; ..." (١)

The Qur'ānic word /rukūn/, whether it may be meant in the sense of heartily inclination, outward cooperation, or expressing content, or friendship and benevolence, or obedience on which each of commentators have delivered a commentary, or a concept that envelops all of them and it is reliance, confidence and dependence, is a lively evidence and attestation to our purpose

Muhammad-ibn-Muslim Zuharī was a learned man who had cooperation not only with the system of Umayyads but also with Hushām-ibn-'Abdul-Malik in particular. Imam Zayn-ul-Ābidīn Ali-ibn-il-Husayn (a.s.), after avoiding him of helping the unjust, in his shaking words told him: "Did they not invite you to their own group and did they not form a center by you that the mill of their oppression turns around its axis? Did they not set you as a bridge for their passing unto

their afflictions, as a ladder for their aberrations, an emissary for their misguidance, and a follower for their shameful path? They create doubt the scholars by you, and through you they entrap the hearts of ignorant simple-minded ones. What a little price they gave you for that which they took from you, and instead of what they ruined from you, how little they built

Ponder upon yourself, because there is no one to be sympathetic for you save yourself; and as a responsible man reckon your account. (1)

Truly this clear expressive logic of the Imam (a.s.) can attract the attention of any courtier and dependent scholar to his evil end

Concerning the verse under discussion, Ibn ‘Abbas says: “This verse is among the verses which attest that supporting the guilty is a crime and a sin, while helping the believers is obeying the commandment of Allah

Once one of the scholars was told: “So and so is the writer of an unjust person, and what he writes is only his accounts. If he takes a salary for this work, his living will be safeguarded, otherwise he and his family will seriously be involved in poverty

In answer to this question, the scholar only said: “Have you not heard the word of that righteous man (Moses) who said: ‘... My Lord! For the bounty You have bestowed on me, never shall I be a supporter of the guilty

Ali (a.s.) in a tradition said: “Avoid tyranny because verily a tyrant will never smell the smell of Paradise.” (2)

The Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) said: “Allah, Almighty and Glorious, says: ‘By My Honour (and Glory) I will

certainly take vengeance from the unjust in this world and the next; and take vengeance from the one who sees an oppressed and he can help him but he does not [help him.”](#)⁽¹⁾

The Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) says: “The Wrath of Allah is violent on the one who is [unjust upon whom that finds no helper save Allah.”](#)⁽²⁾

Imam Sādiq (a.s.) said: “The oppressor, the one who helps him, and he who is content [of it all three are the associates of the oppression.”](#)⁽³⁾

Imam Ali (a.s.) advised both Hassan and Husayn (a.s.), saying: “... Be enemy of the [oppressor and the helper of the oppressed. ...”](#)⁽⁴⁾

Imam Şādiq (a.s.) said: “No oppression is more serious than oppressing the one who [finds no helper for it except Allah.”](#)⁽⁵⁾

The Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) said: “Whoever breaks the oath of allegiance, or establishes an aberration, or hides a knowledge, or occupies one’s property unjustly, or helps an oppressor in his oppression while he knows that he is surely an oppressor, [he has certainly refused Islam.”](#)⁽⁶⁾

The holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) once said: “When people see an oppressor (who is committing cruelty) and do not take his hands (do not hinder him of it) it will be nigh [that Allah inflicts a punishment upon them.”](#)⁽⁷⁾

p: ۲۶۰

Kanz-ul-‘Ummal, P. ۷۶۴۱ –۱

Sunan Ibn-Dāwūd, Vol. ۲, P. ۴۳۶ –۲

Al-Kāfī, Vol. ۲, P. ۳۳۳, No. ۱۶ –۳

Nahj-ul-Balāqah, Letter No. ۴۷ and sermon No. ۳ –۴

Bihār, Vol. ۷۲, P. ۳۲۹ –۵

Mustadrak-ul-Wasā’il, Vol. ۲, P. ۱۳۷ –۶

Sunan Ibn-Dāwūd, Vol. ۲, P. ۴۳۶ –۷

The Holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) said: “There have been written three words on the fourth door of the doors of Hell: Allah abases the one who disgraces Islam; Allah abases the one who disgraces Ahl-ul-Bayt; Allah abases the one who helps the oppressors in [\(their injustice upon people.”](#) [\(1](#)

Imam Amir-ul-Mu'minīn Ali (a.s.) said: “The most vicious of people is the one who helps [\(the oppressor\) against the oppressed.”](#) [\(2](#)

p: ۲۶۱

Safīnat-ul-Bihār, Vol. ۲, P. ۱۰۷ –۱
Mustadrak-ul-Wasā'il, Vol. ۲, P. ۴۳۷ –۲

(١٨) فَأَصْبَحَ فِي الْمَدِينَةِ خَائِفًا يَتَرَقَّبُ فَإِذَا الَّذِي اسْتَنْصَرَهُ بِالْأَمْسِ يَسْتَصْرِخُهُ قَالَ لَهُ مُوسَى إِنَّكَ لَغَوِيٌّ مُبِينٌ

And he was in the city, fearing, awaiting, when behold, the man who had, the day “ ١٨ . before, sought his help called aloud for his help (again). Moses said to him: ‘Verily you .’are one erring manifestly

Commentary, verse: ١٨

Not any fear is blameworthy. The fear of failing in reaching some good aims and .wishes is a praiseworthy fear

In this verse, and the next verses, we are faced with the fourth scene of this .adventurous story

The news of slaughter of a man from Pharaoh’s people quickly spread in Egypt, and perhaps it was known by the frame of references that the slaughterer was a man .from the Children of Israel, and perhaps the name of Moses was also mentioned in it

This slaughter, of course, was not a simple one. It was counted a spark for a revolution, or a prerequisite for it, and the system of the government of Pharaoh could not simply ignore the event that the slaves from among the Children of Israel .might intend to kill their lords. So, as a fact next to this event, the verse says

”... ,And he was in the city, fearing, awaiting “

The Arabic word /taraqquḥ/ means ‘wait for’; and the term /ṣurāḫ/ means ‘seeking .’help

:Suddenly Moses was faced with a scene, as the verse says

when behold, the man who had, the day before, sought his help called aloud for his ...“

”.’help (again). Moses said to him: ‘Verily you are one erring manifestly

Moses told the man that he was clearly an ignorant person, because every day he fought with a man and created trouble and did some deeds which were not suitable at that time. Moses then added that the sequences of his yesterday programs were still .continued that he began another one

p: ۲۶۳

(١٩) فَلَمَّا أَنْ أَرَادَ أَنْ يَبْطِشَ بِالَّذِي هُوَ عَدُوٌّ لَهُمَا قَالَ يَا مُوسَى أَتُرِيدُ أَنْ تَقْتُلَنِي كَمَا قَتَلْتَ نَفْسًا بِالْأَمْسِ إِنْ تُرِيدُ إِلَّا أَنْ تَكُونَ جَبَّارًا فِي الْأَرْضِ وَمَا تُرِيدُ أَنْ تَكُونَ مِنَ الْمُصْلِحِينَ

So when he intended to assault him who was the enemy of them both, the man “ .١٩ said: ‘O Moses! Do you intend to kill me as you killed a person yesterday? You desire ”.’nothing but to be a tyrant in the land; and you do not desire to be of the reformers

Commentary, verse: ١٩

Moses had killed the Coptic man for the help of the Israelite man

.’The Arabic word /baṭṣ/ means: ‘anger accompanied with severity and power

Criticism upon the friends’ fault should not cause them to leave the fact and do not support their right. (Though Moses criticized his friend, saying: ‘... You are one erring :manifestly’, yet he decided to support him again.) The verse says

So when he intended to assault him who was the enemy of them both, the man said: “ ‘O Moses! Do you intend to kill me as you killed a person yesterday? You desire ”.’nothing but to be a tyrant in the land; and you do not desire to be of the reformers

This sentence shows that Moses had already expressed his reforming intention both in the castle of Pharaoh and outside of it, and some narrations indicate that he had some conflicts in this field with Pharaoh, too. That is why the Coptic man says to Moses that every day he wanted to kill a man; what a reformer he was! While if Moses .decided to kill this tyrant, too, it would be a step on the way of reform

However, Moses understood that the yesterday event had been revealed and, in order that he would not face with some more difficulties, he did not follow the matter

By the way, Ibn Abbas, as well as the majority of the commentators of both sects, have said that the subject of the Qur'ānic verb /qāla/ is the Israelite man for whose support Moses had killed the Coptic man the previous day, and who fearfully said that Moses wanted to kill him as he killed the Coptic man. (The commentaries of Qurṭabī, Majma'–ul–Bayān, Aṭyab–ul–Bayān, Sāfī, Jawāmi'–ul–Jāmi', Manhaj–uṣ–Ṣādiqīn, (Burhān, and Makhzan–ul–'Irfān, Vol. ۹

p: ۲۶۵

(٢٠) وَجَاءَ رَجُلٌ مِنْ أَقْصَا الْمَدِينَةِ يَسْعَى قَالَ يَا مُوسَى إِنَّ الْمَلَأَ يَأْتَمِرُونَ بِكَ لِيَقْتُلُوكَ فَاخْرُجْ إِنَّ سِي لَكَ مِنَ النَّاصِحِينَ

(٢١) فَخَرَجَ مِنْهَا خَائِفًا يَتَرَقَّبُ قَالَ رَبِّ نَجِّنِي مِنَ الْقَوْمِ الظَّالِمِينَ

And there came a man from the furthest part of the city, running. He said: ‘O .٢٠
Moses! Verily the chiefs are consulting to slay you. So depart (from here at once);
”.’Verily I am one of Your sincere advisers

So he departed there from, fearing, awaiting, (and) he said: ‘My Lord! Deliver me “ .٢١
”.’from the unjust people

Commentary, verses: ٢٠–٢١

The believer of the people of Pharaoh helped Moses

The purpose of the Arabic word /rajul/, in this verse, is ‘the Believer of the people of Pharaoh’ that Sura ‘Mu’min’ (Qāfir) in the Qur’ān has been entitled by his name. He concealed his faith and in the guise of ‘taqiyyah’ (precautionary concealment) helped Moses. Moses (a.s.) had a penetrating factor and supporter in the court of Pharaoh. Sometimes, giving information promptly and on time may change the fate of a nation. (If this man did not give the news to Moses (a.s.) and Moses did not go out from the city, then he might be killed by the men of Pharaoh.) This is why that revealing the .treacherous plots is incumbent

However, this holy verse implies that the event was informed to both Pharaoh and his entourage, and they took its repetition as a threat against their own situation. They .held a meeting of consultation, and issued the command of Moses’ slaughter

At this time, an unexpected incident saved Moses from a certain death, as the verse
:says

And there came a man from the furthest part of the city, running. He said: ‘O Moses! “
Verily the chiefs are consulting to slay you. So depart (from here at once); Verily I am
”.’one of Your sincere advisers

This man apparently is the same one who later became known as ‘the Believer of the
people of Pharaoh’. It is said that his name was Hezqīl and he was one of the close
relatives of Pharaoh. Hezqīl had such a communication with them that he could take
part in that kind of meetings. He was suffering from the crimes of Pharaoh and he was
.waiting for a godly raise to happen against him so that he could join to it

His hope was apparently to Moses in whose feature he had observed to be a godly
revolutionary man. For this reason, when he felt that he was in danger, he quickly
approached him and saved Moses (a.s.) from the grips of that danger. We will see
later that not only in this event but also in some other circumstances he was a support
for Moses (a.s.), and he was counted as a keen-eyed person for the Children of Israel
.in the castle of Pharaoh

The next holy verse implies that Moses (a.s.) took this information very earnest, and
valued the benevolence of that faithful man. According to his advice, Moses went out
from the city while he was terrified and every moment he expected an event to
:happen. The verse says

”... ,So he departed there from, fearing, awaiting “

He concentrated his whole heart to Allah and for solving this great problem he sought
:His Grace. The verse continues saying

”and he said: ‘My Lord! Deliver me from the unjust people) ...“

This means: I know that they are unjust and cruel, and I defended the oppressed while I was not the supporter of the unjust; then, as I repelled the vice of the oppressors from the oppressed so much that I could, You, too, O’ Almighty Lord! repel
.the vice of the oppressors from me

p: ۲۶۸

Section ٢: Moses weds Laban's daughter

Point

Moses in Madyan – Moses helps Shu‘ayb’s daughters – One of Shu‘ayb’s daughters wedded to Moses

(٢٢) وَلَمَّا تَوَجَّهَ تَلْقَاءَ مَدْيَنَ قَالَ عَسَىٰ رَبِّي أَن يَهْدِيَنِي سَوَاءَ السَّبِيلِ

And when he turned his face towards Madyan, he said: ‘I do hope that my Lord “ .٢٢
”.’will guide me in the right path

Commentary, verse: ٢٢

Moses stored to go toward Madyan

Change of residence, migration, and application of various tactics are usually the means of a revolution. That is why it is necessary that at first we move and then we .utter invoke and be hopeful

Hadrat Moses (a.s.) decided to go toward Madyan, a city in the south of Syria and the North of Arabia, which was out of the domain of Egypt and the government of Pharaoh. But a youth, who has grown up in a comfortable and bountiful environment, and goes on a trip for the first time in his life, neither has any provision, nor a companion and guide with him, his situation is clear, in particular that he always fears that the informers arrive and capture him in order to kill him. Yes, Moses must tolerate hardships and difficulties, and come out from the webs that the castle of Pharaoh had twisted around his personality, live beside the oppressed, feel their pain with all his entity, and

.become prepared for a godly raise in their favour and against the oppressors

Therefore, when he started to go toward Madyan, he said he hoped that the Lord
:would guide him in the right path. The verse says

And when he turned his face towards Madyan he said: ‘I do hope that my Lord will “
”.’guide me in the right path

.’The Arabic word /tilqā’/ here means: ‘direction

p: ۲۷۰

(٢٣) وَلَمَّا وَرَدَ مَاءَ مَيْدْيَنَ وَجِدَ عَلَيْهِ أُمَّةً مِنَ النَّاسِ يَسْقُونَ وَوَجَدَ مِنْ دُونِهِمُ امْرَأَتَيْنِ تَذُودَانِ قَالَ مَا خَطْبُكُمَا قَالَتَا لَأَنْسِيْقِي حَتَّى يُصْدِرَ الرِّعَاءُ وَأَبُونَا شَيْخٌ كَبِيرٌ

(٢٤) فَسَقَى لَهُمَا ثُمَّ تَوَلَّى إِلَى الظِّلِّ فَقَالَ رَبِّ إِنِّي لِمَا أَنْزَلْتَ إِلَيَّ مِنْ خَيْرٍ فَقِيرٌ

And when he arrived at the watering (place) in Madyan, he found on it a group of “ .٢٣ men watering (their flocks), and besides them he found two women keeping back (their flocks). He said: ‘What is the matter with you?’ They said: ‘We cannot water (our flocks) until the shepherds take away (their sheep from the water), and our father is a ”.very old man

So he watered (their flocks) for them, then he turned back to the shade, and said: “ .٢٤ ”.‘My Lord! Verily I stand in need of whatever good You may send down to me

Commentary, verses: ٢٣–٢٤

Point

We must not misuse the modesty and weakness of women. If a system of law does not interfere, many men ignore the rights of women. The enclosure between man and woman is a value, so the daughters of Shu‘ayb observed this enclosure when .watering their sheep

Here we are confronted the fifth scene of this story. It is the arrival scene of Moses .into Madyan

This pure youth was paving the way to this city for several days, a way which he had never seen before and was not

acquainted with it. As some commentators say, he had to walk the way in barefoot. It has been said that he was in the way for eight days, and he walked so much so that his feet was wounded

Moses consumed the plants of the desert

To remove his hunger, he (a.s.) consumed the plants of the desert and the leaves of the trees; and alongside all of these difficulties he had only one satisfaction and it was that, by the grace of Allah, he had been delivered from the unjust grips of the people of Pharaoh

Little by little the landscape of Madyan appeared in the horizon and his heart got calm. When Moses reached the city, a crowd of people attracted his attention. Before long, he understood that they were some shepherds who had crowded around a well in order to give water to their flocks. The verse says

And when he arrived at the watering (place) in Madyan, he found on it a group of “... (men watering (their flocks

Then the verse continues stating about two women who were taking care of their sheep but did not approach the well. It says

”... (and besides them he found two women keeping back (their flocks ...“

The Arabic term/ tazūdān/ is derived from the word /zawd/ which means: ‘to hinder, to prevent

The condition of those chaste girls who were standing in a corner and none was there to help them, where there were some rude shepherds who thought only about their own flocks and did not give turn to anyone, attracted the attention of Moses. He went to them and asked them why they did not go forth for watering their sheep. The verse says

”... ’?He said: ‘What is the matter with you ...“

He left the castle of Pharaoh for his home

This discrimination, injustice, cruelty, and this absence of observing the right of the oppressed, which was seen at the threshold of that city, Madyan, was not tolerable for Moses. He was the defender of the oppressed people, and because of it, Moses left the castle of Pharaoh and its favours and went vagrant of his home. He could not .abandon his custom and be silent in the face of injustices

:Now, here is the answer of the girls, as the Qur'ān says

They said: 'We cannot water (our flocks) until the shepherds take away (their ... " "... ,(sheep from the water

In order that this question would not remain without any answer for Moses that why :the father of these chaste girls sent them after this action, they added

"?and our father is a very old man ..."

They implied that their father was very old and he was not able water the sheep, nor did they have a brother to undertake that action, and in order not to be a burden over .the shoulder of others, they could not be helped but they did it themselves

When Moses heard this word from them, he became very inconvenient and said to himself that how unjust were those people that they all thought of their own affairs ?and did not do the least support for the oppressed ones

He came forth and, taking the heavy bucket, threw it into the well. It was so heavy that, as it is said, several persons had to bring it out from the well, hut Moses, by his strong hands, brought it out by himself and watered the sheep of those two. The :verse says

"... ,So he watered (their flocks) for them "

It is said that when he approached the crowd, he told them what kind of people they

were that they thought not for any

p: २१३

one other than them. Then the crowd went aside and gave the bucket to him. They told him to come and if he could he would rinse. They knew that the bucket was so heavy that it needed ten persons to be brought out from the well. They let Moses (a.s.) be alone, but the power of Faith came to help him and increased his bodily strength. Though he was tired, hungry, and inconvenient, he watered completely all the sheep of those two girls by pulling out only one bucket of water from the well. The verse continues saying

then he turned back to the shade, and said: ‘My Lord! Verily I stand in need of ... “
”.’whatever good You may send down to me

Yes, Moses was tired and hungry. He was a stranger in that city and had no place to refuge. But, in the meanwhile, he was not impatient, and he was so polite that even at the time of supplication he did not say: ‘O Lord! Do so and so’, but he said: “... ‘My Lord! Verily I stand in need of whatever good You may send down to me’.” That is, he mentioned only his need and left the rest of it to the grace of Allah

Through a divine utterance, Allah said: “O Moses! Ask Me for whatever you are in need of, even if it is the grass for your sheep and the salt of your bread.” [\(1\)](#)

p: ۲۷۴

(٢٥) فَجَاءَتْهُ إِحْدَاهُمَا تَمْشِي عَلَى اسْتِحْيَاءٍ قَالَتْ إِنَّ أَبِي يَدْعُوكَ لِيَجْزِيَكَ أَجْرَ مَا سَقَيْتَ لَنَا فَلَمَّا جَاءَهُ وَقَصَّ عَلَيْهِ الْقِصَصَ قَالَ لَا تَخَفْ نَجَوْتَ مِنَ الْقَوْمِ الظَّالِمِينَ

Afterwards one of the two (damsels) came to him walking bashfully. She said: “ ٢٥. ‘Verily my father invites you that he may give you the reward of your having watered for us’. So when he came to him and narrated unto him his story, (the old man) said: ”.‘Be not afraid; you are secure from the unjust people

Commentary, verse: ٢٥

A woman must ply outside of the house with modesty

According to the holy Qur’ān, modesty is one of the most distinguished accomplishments of a chaste woman. Therefore, a woman must ply outside of the house with modesty and chastity. Father must be aware of the conduct of his children and show a suitable reaction for their actions. (When Shu‘ayb noticed that his daughters came back sooner than other days, he asked them its reason and decided (to thank Moses

Now, look that how significant a deed of benevolence is! And how much marvellous bounties it has! Doing a single action for Allah, and bringing one bucket of water out of a well in order to support an unknown oppressed person, causes a new chapter to appear in the life of Moses, and brings so much material and spiritual bounties for him. He obtained a gift, his wife, for which he had probably to search for many years. It :began as follows

Afterwards one of the two (damsels) came to him walking bashfully. She said: ‘Verily “ my father invites you that he

”... ’may give you the reward of your having watered for us

A special light of hope appeared in his heart, as if Moses (a.s.) felt that an important event was going to happen, and he would meet a great man, a gratitude man who did not agree that even the labour of a person, even as much as driving a bucket of water from the well, remained without being rewarded. He must be a particular man, a !godly man. O my Lord! What a precious chance

Yes, that old man was Shu‘ayb, the Divine prophet, who had been inviting people to Allah in that city for many years. He was an example of ‘gratitude’ and devotion to truth and justice, and when he was informed of the subject, he decided to pay his .debt to this unacquainted young man, whoever he might be

Moses started going towards Shu‘ayb’s house. According to some Islamic narrations, in order to show the way, the girl went ahead and Moses walked behind her. The wind was blowing to the girls’ clothing so hard that the clothes might be removed from her body. The modesty and chastity of Moses (a.s.) did not let him be so. Then he told the [girl](#) that he would go ahead and on the crossroads she could guide him. [\(1\)](#)

Moses entered Shu‘ayb’s house. It was a house in which the light of prophethood and spirituality was seen everywhere. An old man, with majesty and dignity, having white .hair on his head, said welcome to Moses

He said to Moses: “Where do you come from? What is your business? What do you do in this city? What is your purpose here? Why are you alone?” And some other .questions like them

p: ۲۷۶

:Moses told his own story for Shu‘ayb. The Qur’ān says

So when he came to him and narrated unto him his story, (the old man) said: ‘Be ... “
”.’not afraid; you are secure from the unjust people

Our region is out of their realm, and they do not dominate here. Let no horror be in
your heart. You are in a secure land, and you may not suffer from loneliness and
.strangerhood, because everything will be solved by the Grace of Allah

Soon Moses (a.s.) realized that he had found a great teacher, Shu‘ayb, in whose entity
there were pure springs of knowledge, gnosis, piety, and spirituality, and he could
.sate him well

Shu‘ayb also felt that he had got a worthy, receptive and qualified learner to whom he
could transfer the science, knowledge and experiences of his whole life. Yes, as much
as that a learner gets gratification from finding a great teacher, the teacher is also
.happy for finding a worthy student

p: ۲۷۷

(٢٦) قَالَتْ إِحْدَاهُمَا يَا أَبَتِ اسْتَأْجِرْهُ إِنَّ خَيْرَ مَنِ اسْتَأْجَرْتَ الْقَوِيُّ الْأَمِينُ

One of the two (damsels) said: ‘O my father! Employ him. Verily the best of those “ .٢٦
”.’that you can employ is the strong man, the faithful one

Commentary, verse: ٢٦

Point

Haḍrat Imam Riḍā (a.s.) once said: “Haḍrat Shu‘ayb asked her daughter: ‘How did you recognize the trustworthiness of this youth that you called him faithful?’ She said: ‘When I conveyed your invitation to him, he told me to guide him from his behind in (order that he might not look at my stature.” (1)

The girls of a family have the right of suggestion based upon logic and wisdom, too; and good relations between parents and children, and freedom of exposition and .declaration in the family is a value

.This is the sixth scene from the life of Moses (a.s.) in this great event

Moses (a.s.) entered the house of Shu‘ayb; it was a simple rural house, a pure house full of spirituality. When he explained his story life for Shu‘ayb, one of his daughters began speaking and by a short but expressive expression suggested her father to employ him for protecting their sheep, because he had taken the examination of his :power and purity and faithfulness both. The verse says

p: ٢٧٨

The girl found Moses' strength when he put the shepherd aside

One of the two (damsels) said: 'O my father! Employ him. Verily the best of those that "you can employ is the strong man, the faithful one

A girl who has been grown up in the house of a great prophet must speak like this, so politely and accurately, and she utters the Truth with the least words and in some short sentences

How did this girl know that this young man was both strong and trustworthy, notwithstanding it was the first time that she had seen him beside the well and his background was not clear for her

The answer to this question is evident. She found out his strength when he went toward the well and put the shepherds aside for getting the right of these oppressed girls, and driving the bucket out of well by himself. His trustworthiness and honesty was proved when, on the way to the house, he did not agree that a young girl walks in front of him and the wind might displace her clothes

Moreover, through the truthful explanation of his life story that he stated for Shu'ayb both his strength became clear, because he struggled against the Coptic, and his trustworthiness and honesty, because he did not collude with the tyrants

(٢٧) قَالَ إِنْ سِى أَرِيدُ أَنْ أَنْكَحَكَ إِحْدَى ابْنَتَيْ هَاتَيْنِ عَلَى أَنْ تَأْجُرْنِي ثَمَانِي حَجَجٍ فَإِنْ أَتَمَمْتَ عَشْرًا فَمِنْ عِنْدِكَ وَمَا أَرِيدُ أَنْ أَشُقَّ عَلَيْكَ سَتَجِدُنِي إِنْ شَاءَ اللَّهُ مِنَ الصَّالِحِينَ

He said: ‘Verily I intend to wed one of these two daughters of mine to you on “ .٢٧ condition that you serve me for eight years, but if you complete ten, it will be of your own free will, and I do not wish to be hard to you, if Allah wills, you will find me one the ”.righteous ones

Commentary, verse: ٢٧

Point

Here Shu‘ayb welcomed the suggestion of her daughter, as it is mentioned in the translation of the verse. But there are a few questions in this regard. Firstly, doubt in marrying one of these two girls is meaningless, since both husband and wife must be specified. Secondly, doubt in the length of time, where eight years or ten years, is not correct either. Thirdly, the contract of hire is on behalf of Shu‘ayb, whereas the wife is .the possessor of the wedding gift

The answers to these questions are as follows: A, doubt here means that each of the girls that both parties agree is defined at the time of marriage. B, the contract of hire is based on eight years, but at last, if Moses desires, he can add two years. C, it does not matter that the wife appoints her dower on benefit of someone else. For example, she may say that her dower is one hundred Dollars which will be given to the poor as charity. Some Islamic narrations indicate that at the time of the Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) many people married with the dower of teaching a Sura of the Qur’ān, or one derham, or a

pound of wheat given to the poor. However, Moses (a.s.) accepted to be at the service of Shu‘ayb. In the mead-time, Shu‘ayb (a.s.) said he did not want that during that time (eight or ten years) to be strict and severe to Moses and put on his shoulder some labours other than protecting their sheep. The verse says

He said: ‘Verily I intend to wed one of these two daughters of mine to you on “ condition that you serve me for eight years, but if you complete ten, it will be of your own free will, and I do not wish to be hard to you, if Allah wills, you will find me one the righteous ones ”.

The last sentence of the verse means: if Allah lets him (Moses) be alive, they will find righteousness and competency in him; otherwise, Allah may take his life from him and He does not give him the success of offering righteousness and competency from him.

Yahy-ibn-Salām says: “Shu‘ayb told Moses that every new born lamb whose colour was not like that of its mother would belong to Moses. Then all the new born lambs had a colour different from their mothers

Some other commentators have said that Shu‘ayb promised Moses that in that year every lamb whose head was black and its body was white it would belong to Moses. Then all the children of the sheep were born in the same colour

:some points

.There are two main conditions for correct administration –\

In the short sentence which was mentioned in the above verses from the tongue of Shu‘ayb’s daughter about employing Moses, the Most important and the most methodical conditions of administration were stated in a summarized and general form: power and trustworthiness

It is evident that the purpose of power is not only the bodily strength, but the objective is the power and ability of performing the responsibility. A powerful and trustworthy physician is the one who is acknowledged enough of his job and has a full dominance on it

A strong administrator is a person who knows his realm of mission well, is rather aware of the 'motives', is mastered in planning, has enough share of originative faculty, and has the necessary skill in 'arranging the affairs'. He must make the aims clear, and mobilize the powers for reaching the aim. In the meantime, he must be kind, sympathetic, benevolent, trustworthy and honest

Those who suffice to only trustworthiness and honesty for giving the responsibilities and jobs to someone are in fault as much as they consider that, for accepting responsibility, having expertness is enough. The treacherous specialists and evil conversant factors are as harmful as the unaware honest persons

If we decide to destroy a country, we must give the affairs to one of these two groups: the treacherous administrators, and the honest ones who are not administrator, and the fruit of both is the same

The logic of Islam is that every affair should be given to some powerful, capable, and trustworthy persons so that the system of the society ends properly. If we study the causes of the defection of governments in the length of history, we will see that the main factor has been giving the affairs to one of the abovementioned two groups

It is interesting that everywhere in Islamic programs often 'knowledge' and 'piety' have come beside each other. An authority of imitation must be just and expert in the Islamic jurisprudence. A judge and a leader must be both expert in

Islamic jurisprudence and also be just. (Besides these two conditions there are also some other conditions, but these two are the basic ones: 'knowledge' and cognizance .(accompanied with justice and piety

The second subject is the answer to a few questions about the marriage of Shu'ayb's .daughter with Moses

We said that the above noble verses have caused a lot of questions to come forth all :of which must be answered in a condensed way

A: Is it correct that a girl who wants to be married with a person may not be precisely distinguished, and at the time of reciting the marriage contract it is said to the ?bridegroom that one of these two girls is married with you

Answer: It is not definite that the above expression has been said at the time of the recitation of marriage contract, but the apparent is that at first there is the primary debate and agreement, and after the agreement of Moses, the two parties choose .each other and then the formula of marriage contract is executed

?B: Can dower be set ambiguously, and between a small and a large sum

Answer: From the tone of the verse, it is clearly understood that the real dower had been serving for eight years, and the other two years depended on the will and desire .of Moses

C: In principal, can 'working and service' be set as dower? And how this spouse can be touched and associated with while the time of the payment of the dower has not ?come yet, and he is not even able to pay all of it at once

Answer: There is no evidence for the lack of permission of such a dower, but in our religion, everything which has value is also included for dower. It is not compulsory that the entire of the dower must be paid in a lamp. It is enough that all of it

is in protective covenant of the husband and the wife owns it. The principle of health and ‘authorizing the previous state’ also judges that this husband will remain alive and will have the ability of doing this service

D: In principal, how can serving to the father be the dower of the daughter? Is the girl ?a material that may be sold for a service

Answer: No doubt Shu‘ayb had got the agreement of his daughter about this issue, and he had a representation and authority to execute the formula of such a marriage contract. In other words, the main owner of Moses’ protective covenant was that very daughter of Shu‘ayb, but in view of the fact that the living of all of them was passing in a common form with utmost serenity, and purity so that there was not any separation between them, (as even now in many old or rural families it is seen that the living of a family is completely mixed), it was no problem that how that debt ought to be paid. Shortly speaking, the owner of the dower was only the daughter, not the father, and .the service of Moses (a.s.) was also in this way

E: The dower of Shu‘ayb’s daughter had been a rather heavy dower, because if we count the work of an ordinary worker in a month and in a year and then multiply it to .eight, it will be a considerable sum

Answer: Firstly, this marriage was not a simple marriage, but it was a preliminary cause for Moses to remain in the school of Shu‘ayb. It was a preparation for Moses to study in a great university during that long term, and only Allah knows how many .things Moses learnt from the learned old man of Madyan

Moreover, if Moses worked for Shu‘ayb during this term, instead of it Shu‘ayb would safeguard all the living of Moses and his wife from the same way. Therefore, if we decrease the

expenditure of Moses and his wife from the wage of this labour, there will not remain
so considerable sum, and we will attest that it was a simple and light dower

The third matter is that it is understood from this story that our nowadays custom that we consider the suggestion of the father and relations of the girl for marriage with a youth as a blemish, is not correct. There is no impediment that the close relatives of the girl find a person who is appropriate for marrying their child and suggest him, as Shu‘ayb did. Similar to this action has been seen among some of the
notables of Islam

The fourth matter is that the names of Shu‘ayb’s daughters have been recorded
(‘Şafūrah’ (or Safūrā) and ‘Layā’, that the former married Moses. (1)

The fifth matter: Labour and labourer: Allah has desired people to work and make the earth habitable, which will not obtain unless with effort and endeavour. The Qur’ān says: “... It is He Who produced you from the earth and settled you therein: ...” (2) The Qur’ān thoroughly emphasized on righteous deed which has a very vast meaning. Many prophets of Allah have been farmer, shepherd, tailor, and carpenter. In Islam working is worship and it is considered as Holy Struggle, (3) and the invocation of a
jobless person is not accepted

p: ۲۸۵

Majma‘-ul-Bayān, Vol. ۷, P. ۲۴۹ -۱
Sura Hūd, No. ۱۱, verse ۶۱ -۲
Wasā’il-ush-Shī‘ah, Vol. ۱۲, P. ۴۳ -۳

Work is a means of training both body and spirit, filling the hours of leisure, a hindrance of mischief and disturbance. It is a factor of growth, genius, originaive faculty, economic development, honour, self-sufficiency, and helping others. The Qur’ān says: “It is He Who has made the earth manageable for you, so traverse you [\(through its tracts and enjoy of the sustenance which He furnishes ...\)](#)”[\(1\)](#)

Islam has considered a special value and respect for labour, and has advised that the right of labourer must be observed, his consent be gained, his wage be paid quickly with some addition to the appointed one, and respecting him in all instances. In Islam, [.satiating the trees by a farmer deserves the satiating believers](#)

Haḍrat Ali (a.s.) advised one of his governor-generals that the farmers might not be [\(done unjustly, and they should be favoured when taking tax from them.\)](#)[\(2\)](#)

In Islam mental activities are also valued highly, so much that a useful hour of contemplation is better than some hours of worship. Laziness and carelessness in work is criticized. The Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) said: “Allah likes that whoever does [\(a thing, he does it well.\)](#)”[\(3\)](#)

The Qur’ān advises that after finishing an important action another action should begin. Therefore, laziness is forbidden. The Qur’ān says: “So when you have finished [\(with your immediate task\), still strive hard, \(then toil\).](#)”[\(4\)](#)

Yes, idleness causes fatigue, laziness, weariness, and a chance for Satan to [.penetrate, creation of corruption, and spread of vice](#)

p: ۲۸۶

Sura Al-Mulk, No. ۶۷, verse ۱۵-۱

Tafsīr-i-Nūr, No. ۹, P. ۴-۲

Ibid -۳

Sura ’Inshirāh, No. ۹۴, verse ۷-۴

Islam, of course, has assigned some hours and wages for working, and those who
work during holidays are entitled ‘oppressors’.

Hadrat Imam Riḍa (a.s.) said: “A believer must divide his busy time into four parts: a part for working, a part for worship, a part for friends and dealing with social affairs. Otherwise, man will turn to be a greedy person who deserves all critics which are
about greed.”

Islam has a special attention to the quality of the work, not its quantity. The Qur’ān
says: “... which of you is the best in conduct. ...”

However, Islam attaches importance to work, so much that we read in Islamic traditions: “Allah takes the one who sleeps too much and an idle, jobless (disengaged)
person as an enemy.”

Imam Bāqir (a.s.) said: “He who is lazy in his worldly work, is also lazy in his hereafter
work.”

A tradition indicates that once a poor jobless man came to the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) and asked help. The Prophet asked the companions whether there was anyone who had an ax in his home. Someone answered he had. He fetched it and the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) equipped it with a steak and gave it to that jobless man and said: “Here is the tool of
job, but you must strive yourself.”

:We can understand several points from this tradition, as follows

p: ۲۸۷

Sura Al-Baqarah, No. ۲, verse ۶۵ – ۱

Tafsīr-i-Nūr, Vol. ۲, P. ۴۱ – ۲

Sura Hūd, No. ۱۱, verse ۷ – ۳

Wasā’il-ush-Shī’ah, Vol. ۱۱, P. ۳۷ – ۴

Ibid – ۵

Tafsīr-i-Nūr, Vol. ۹, P. ۴۲ – ۶

.The Divine prophets take the life of people under consideration, too –۱

.The weakest person of the society can meet the first personality of the society –۲

Society is in need of help and cooperation. One gives an ax, another person – ۳
.provides its stick, and the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) arranges them and makes an ax

For struggling against poverty, the implements of production must be given to the –۴
active factors of the society. However, for employing persons, they necessarily must
.have two elements of: ability (expertness) and trustworthiness

The abilities and trustworthiness of persons of course, must be made known and
defined in ordinary conditions and without the attention of the concerning person.
(Many persons cover their reality artificially, flatteringly and hypocritically. But Haḍrat
Moses, in a natural scene, showed himself by a supporting action and a modestly
(.meeting

Once Imam Ṣādiq (a.s.) was asked which girl went after Moses (a.s.). He answered:
“The one who became his wife.” They asked him which term of the two terms Moses
finished. Imam answered the longer and more complete one, (that is, ten years). They
asked whether Moses wedded his wife before ten years or after it. He answered:
“Before ten years”. They asked him whether a man can marry a woman and makes a
condition with her father to be hired for two months for him. He answered: “Moses
knew that he would finish this condition.” They asked: “How did he know it?” Imam
(a.s.) said: “He knew that he would remain alive and act according to the condition.” (۱)

p: ۲۸۸

Some Islamic narrations indicate that marriage causes half of the person's religion to be protected. Two units prayer of the person who has spouse is better than seventy units prayer of those who are not married. The sleep of the married persons is better [\(than the fast of the wakeful unmarried ones.\)](#)⁽¹⁾

Yes, in spite of those who think of marriage as the factor of poverty, the Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) said: "Marriage causes the sustenance to be increased." Also he said: "He who abandons marriage because of the fear of poverty is not of us, and has [\(thought ill of Allah.\)"](#)⁽²⁾

Some Islamic narrations denote: he, who takes an action on the marriage of his [\(brethren, will be favoured by a special favour of Allah on the Day of Hereafter.\)](#)⁽³⁾

Regarding the 'formation of a family' and taking an action for marriage, the Holy Qur'an has seriously ordered and recommended not to be afraid of poverty. If you [\(are poor, Allah will enrich you out of His grace. \(Sura An-Nūr, No. 24, verse 32](#)

Marriage is a means of peace, [\(the Holy Qur'an, Sura Ar-Room, verse 21\)](#). By marriage families approach each other and the hearts will become kind, then the suitable [.ground of training a pure generation with a spirit of cooperation will be prepared](#)

We read in Islamic narrations to hasten for marriage. The girl whose term of marriage has come is like a ripe fruit that if it does not be separated from the tree, it will [\(decay.\)](#)⁽⁴⁾

p: 289

Mizān-ul-Ḥikam, narrated from Bihār-ul-'Anwār, Vol. 103, P. 25/221 -1

Kanz-ul-'Ummāl, No. 44460 -2

Kāfī, Vol. 5, P. 331 -3

Wasā'il-Ush-Shī'ah, Vol. 14, chapter 33 and 38 -4

The criteria of choosing a good spouse among people are: wealth, beauty, lineage and nobility, while an Islamic tradition indicates that you must pay attention to belief, [\(kind of thought and insight.\)](#)⁽¹⁾

Another tradition indicates that there had been many beauties that caused [\(destruction, and wealth that caused disobedience.\)](#)⁽²⁾

The Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) said: “If a person came to solicit your daughter in marriage and you approved his religion and trustworthiness, you should not refuse [\(him, else you will get into a great disturbance and decadence.\)](#)⁽³⁾

Hadrat Imam Hassan (a.s.) told the one who was consulting him (a.s.) for the marriage of his daughter: “Choose a pious bridegroom so that if he loves your daughter, he will respect her, and if he does not love her, because of his piety he will not do unjustly to [\(her.\)](#)⁽⁴⁾

Some Islamic narrations indicate that daughters must not be married to men who drink alcoholic liquors, are ill-tempered, and have not a safe line of thought, and those [\(who have grown up in corruptive families.\)](#)⁽⁵⁾

Once the Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.), addressing people, said: “Avoid the plants grown in ruins.” He was asked: “What are the plants grown in ruins?” He said: “A [\(beautiful lady who has been grown up in a corrupt family.\)](#)⁽⁶⁾

p: 290

Kanz-ul-‘Ummāl, No. 46602-1

Sunan Ibn-Mājeḥ, No. 1859, and Mīzān-ul-Ḥikam, Vol. 5, P. 2256-2

Bihār, Vol. 103, P. 372-3

Makārim-ul-Akhlāgh, Vol. 1, P. 446-4

Bihār-ul-’Anwār, Vol. 79, P. 142 and Mīzān-ul-Hikam, Vol. 5, P. 2558-5

Bihār, Vol. 103, P. 232-6

The Holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) said: “The best women of my Ummah are the most
(beautiful ones and have the least dower.” (1)

It should also be mentioned that marriage is of two kinds: permanent marriage and temporary marriage about both of which there are special commandments and recommendations in the Qur’ān and Islamic narrations. Unfortunately, because of some incorrect customs and pretexts and undue expectations of some of the members of the family of bride or bridegroom and having vain desires, the permanent marriage has appeared in the form of a difficult, puzzle or an impracticable pass; and the temporary marriage has also been counted so ugly and reprobated that .indecenty has occupied its place

p: ۲۹۱

Bihār, Vol. ۱۰۳, P. ۲۳۷ –۱

(٢٨) قَالَ ذَلِكَ بَيْنِي وَبَيْنَكَ أَيَّمَا الْأَجَلَيْنِ قَضَيْتُ فَلَا عُدْوَانَ عَلَيَّ وَاللَّهُ عَلَيَّ مَا نَقُولُ وَكِيلٌ

Moses accepted Shu‘ayb’s suggestion and) said: ‘This shall be (an agreement)) “ .٢٨ between me and you, whichever of the two terms I fulfil, there shall be no injustice ”.unto me, and Allah is a witness of what we say

Commentary, verse: ٢٨

In marriage contracts, faith in Allah guarantees the safety of contracts. Here is the :statement of Moses as the acceptance of this contract

Moses accepted Shu‘ayb’s suggestion and) said: ‘This shall be (an agreement)) “ between me and you, whichever of the two terms I fulfil, there shall be no injustice ”... ,unto me

:Then, in order to fasten it and getting help from the Name of Allah, he added

”.’and Allah is a witness of what we say ...“

.(So simply and easily Moses (a.s.) became the son-in-law of Shu‘ayb (a.s

In all his affairs, even in his own voluntary deeds, man is not independent; he is under the will of Allah and Divine providence. Whatever Allah desires, it ‘will Be’, and whatever Allah does not desire, it ‘will not Be’; and also ‘there is neither might nor strength but in Allah’. In any circumstance man’s reliance must be to Allah; and reliance and trust is one of the concerns of unity of Divine Acts. Absolutely, man must .set the tools aside and be in an entire submission. This is a particular Unity

By the way, some commentators have said that Moses asked for a stick from Shu‘ayb in order to drive the sheep. Shu‘ayb had several sticks and he told Moses to take one of them. He took the stick, which Gabriel had brought from Heaven for Adam. That stick had a light at night. Imam Bāqir (a.s.) said: “A stick was brought from Heaven for Adam, then it came to Shu‘ayb. Then, it was given to Moses and now that stick is with us. It spoke whenever it was spoken to, and it accomplished whatever it was ordered (to do.” (1)

p: ۲۹۳

Atyab-ul-Bayān, Manhaj-us.Sādiqīn, Majma‘-ul-Bayān, Sāfī, Burhān, following the’ –۱
verse

Section ۴: Moses Commissioned with Apostleship

Point

Moses was commissioned with Apostleship, given the miracles and commanded to proceed against Pharaoh – Moses fears and prays to Allah for Aaron’s assistance – Moses given Aaron’s assistance – Pharaoh and his men disbelieve Moses and Aaron, and they are destroyed

(۲۹) فَلَمَّا قَضَىٰ مُوسَىٰ الْأَجَلَ وَسَارَ بِأَهْلِهِ آنَسَ مِنْ جَانِبِ الطُّورِ نَارًا قَالَ لِأَهْلِهِ امْكُثُوا إِنِّي آنَسْتُ نَارًا لَعَلِّي آتِيكُمْ مِنْهَا
بِحَبْرٍ

أَوْ جَذُوهٍ مِنَ النَّارِ لَعَلَّكُمْ تَصْطَلُونَ

So when Moses had fulfilled the term, and he journeyed with his family, he “ ۲۹. observed a fire in the direction of Mount Tūr. He said to his family: ‘Tarry you here; verily I observe a fire. Perhaps I shall bring you news of it, or a brand of the fire, so ’.that you may warm yourselves

Commentary, verse: ۲۹

Point

The Arabic term /ʾānastu/ means to observe something in which there is intimacy and peace. The word /jaŏwah/ means ‘a piece’, and the Qurʾānic phrase /taṣṭalūn/ is derived from /ṣaly/ which means ‘to be heated by fire’. Haḍrat Mūsā had addressed his wife with plural form of Arabic pronoun, in terms such as /ʾumkuθū/, /ʾātikum/, /laʿallakum/ and /taṣṭalūn/. It is perhaps for the reason that during the

.ten years that Moses was living with his wife he got a child or children

Moses spent ten years in strangerhood

It is understood from the sentences: ‘he journeyed with his family’, ‘I shall bring you news of it’, and ‘so that you may warm yourselves’, and also the sentence which says:

“... or may find some guidance at the fire”,

that Moses (a.s.) has traveled by night. It was a cold and dark night during the time when Moses lost his way, too

(Here we reach the seventh scene of the story life of Moses (a.s.

No one exactly knows how Moses spent that term of ten years, but certainly that term was among the best years of Moses’ lifetime. It was some wholesome, sweet and peaceful years when he became prepared for a great mission

Indeed, it was necessary for Moses (a.s.) to pass a ten-year-term in strangerhood and beside a great prophet. He had to be a shepherd so that if the habit of living in a castle had left any effect on his thought and spirit, it would have been washed off entirely. Moses must be among some poor people in order to understand their pain and be prepared for struggling against rich tyrants

On the other hand, Moses ought to have a long time for contemplation upon the secrets of creation and for self-improvement. Where was it for him better than the desert of Madyan? And where was it better than the house of Shu‘ayb for him to remain

The mission of an arch-prophet is not so simple that it can be easily undertaken. It can be said that, next to the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.), from one point of view, the mission of Moses (a.s.) among the Divine prophets on the earth put an end to the captivity of a large nation, and he wiped out the traces of the

.culture of slavery from their spirit, all of which were not so easy

It is written in Torah, as well as the Islamic narrations, that Shu‘ayb had promised Moses to give him the lambs which were born with a special colour, in order to appreciate Moses’ troubles. By chance, in the last year, when Moses intended to say good-bye with Shu‘ayb and return to Egypt, all or most of the lambs were born with the [same specialty and Shu‘ayb willingly gave all of them to Moses, too.](#)

It is obvious that Moses did not suffice to be a shepherd until the end of his life, though being at the presence of Shu‘ayb was very enjoying for him. He ought to hasten to help his people who were captured in the chains of captivity and ignorance. He ought to put an end to the injustices in Egypt, to break the idols, to abase the despots, and to elevate the oppressed by the help of Allah. An innate feeling encouraged Moses for this journey

.At last, Moses gathered his furniture, provision, and sheep and set out for the journey

However, the application of the Arabic word /’ahl/ (family) mentioned in numerous verses of the Qur’ān, shows that, besides his wife, Moses had a child (or children) with him in that journey. Some Islamic narrations verify this meaning, and in Torah, Exodus, it has been stipulated. Moreover his wife was pregnant at that time

When he was coming back, he lost the way, and perhaps it was for the reason that he .went a by-way so that he might not be seized by the grips of the Syrian oppressors

:However, the Qur’ān says

p: ٢٩٦

So when Moses had fulfilled the term, and he journeyed with his family, he observed “ a fire in the direction of Mount Tūr. He said to his family: ‘Tarry you here; verily I observe a fire. Perhaps I shall bring you news of it, or a brand of the fire, so that you ”.’may warm yourselves

There is not anything mentioned in the verse about the situation of Moses’ wife, but it is generally accepted by the commentaries and narrations that she was pregnant and at that time she felt the pain of delivery, and Moses was also anxious from this point .of view

p: ۲۹۷

(٣٠) فَلَمَّا أَتَاهَا نُودِيَ مِنْ شَاطِئِ الْوَادِ الْأَيْمَنِ فِي الْبُقْعَةِ الْمُبَارَكَةِ مِنَ الشَّجَرَةِ أَنْ يَا مُوسَى إِنِّي أَنَا اللَّهُ رَبُّ الْعَالَمِينَ

Then when he came to it (he) was called (by a voice) from the right side of the “ ٣٠ . valley, in the blessed spot, from the tree, saying: ‘O Moses! Verily I am Allah, the Lord of the worlds’.

Commentary, verse: ٣٠

Allah speaks with Moses through a tree

When Moses approached the fire he saw that it was a fire not alike other fires; it was not hot and not burning. It was entirely light and serenity. Meanwhile, Moses was seriously wondered, suddenly from the right side of the valley in that blessed high land, from inside of the tree, a voice was heard, addressing Moses, saying that He was Allah, the Lord of the worlds. Here is the verse

Then when he came to it (he) was called (by a voice) from the right side of the valley, “ in the blessed spot, from the tree, saying: ‘O Moses! Verily I am Allah, the Lord of the worlds’.

The Arabic word /šāṭi/ means ‘bank’; and the term /wādī/ means ‘valley’ or ‘the pass way of a torrent’; and the Qur’ānic word /’ayman/ means ‘right’ which is a modifier for the Qur’ānic word /šāṭi/; and the Arabic word /buq‘ah/ means a piece of land which is usually distinguished with respect to the lands around it

No doubt Allah is able to create the sound waves inside whatever He desires. Here He created it inside a tree for He wanted to speak with Moses, and Moses was a body and he had ears and needed the sound waves. Many of the divine

prophets, of course, received the revelation by their inward inspiration, and sometimes by dream, but sometimes by means of hearing the sound waves. However, there is no room for this delusion that we consider a physical being for Allah

Some narrations indicate that when Moses went near the fire, he noticed that the fire glittered from inside of a green branch and every moment it became brighter and more beautiful. He bent to take some of it with the small piece of wood he had in his hand, but the fire came toward him. He terrified and came back. Sometimes he went toward the fire and sometimes the fire came towards him. Then, all of a sudden, a voice gave him the glad tidings of revelation. Thus, by the undeniable frame of references it became clear for Moses that this call was the call of Allah (s.w.t.), not other than Him

p: ۲۹۹

(٣١) وَأَنْ أَلْقِ عَصَاكَ فَلَمَّا رَءَاهَا تَهْتَزُّ كَأَنَّهَا جَانٌّ وَلَّى مُدْبِرًا وَلَمْ يُعَقِّبْ يَا مُوسَى أَقْبِلْ وَلَا تَخَفْ إِنَّكَ مِنَ الْأَمِينِينَ

And saying: ‘Cast down your staff.’ So when he saw it in motion as if it were a “ .٣١ serpent, he turned back retreating, and did not return. (Then it was said to him): ‘O ”!Moses! Come you forward and fear you not! For surely you are in security

Commentary, verse: ٣١

Moses saw the different shapes of the snake

Regarding the heavy and great responsibilities that Moses had, there should have been bestowed on him some great miracles proportionate to them from the side of Allah that two important parts of which are referred to in this verse

The first thing was that Moses was called to cast down his staff and Moses did. When he looked at it he saw that it was a serpent which was moving swiftly. Moses returned :back because of fear so that he did not look at his behind. The verse says

And saying: ‘Cast down your staff.’ So when he saw it in motion as if it were a “ ”... .serpent, he turned back retreating, and did not return

The day when Moses chose this staff for him to lean on it, and to beat down leaves with it for his sheep(١), he did not believe that there was such a great power in it by the command of Allah. This simple staff of a shepherd caused the castles of the tyrants to shake, and thus are the beings of this world that

p: ٣٠٠

they seem small in our view but there are great potentialities in them which can be
.revealed by the command of Allah

.At this time, Moses heard the voice again as a command. The verse continues saying

Then it was said to him): ‘O Moses! Come you forward and fear you not! For surely) ...“
”!you are in security

The Arabic word /jānn/ originally means ‘an unseen being’, and it is also applied for small snakes, because they pass through grasses and furrows of the land in an unseen way. Of course, in some other verses of the Qur’ān, it has been referred to as /θu‘bān un mubīn/ (a clear serpent) (Sura Al-’A’rāf, No. ۷, verse ۱۰۷, and Sura Ash-Shu‘arā, No. ۲۶, verse ۳۲). Formerly we have said that these differences of meaning may state the different shapes of that snake which at first was small and then appeared as a great serpent. This is also probable that when Moses saw it for the first time in Tūr land, it was in its smallest size, and in later stages it became bigger and
.bigger

However, Moses should become acquainted with this fact that at the presence of Allah there is an absolute security, and in that rank there is no room for any fear and
.scare

(٣٢) اَسِيْلُكَ يَدِكَ فِي جَيْبِكَ تَخْرُجُ بَيضَاءَ مِنْ غَيْرِ سُوءٍ وَاَضْمُمِ اِلَيْكَ جَنَاحَكَ مِنَ الرَّهْبِ فَذَانِكَ بُرْهَانَانِ مِنْ رَبِّكَ اِلَى فِرْعَوْنَ وَمَلِيْئِهِ اِنَّهُمْ كَانُوْا قَوْمًا فَاْسِقِيْنَ

(٣٣) قَالَ رَبِّ اِنِّي قَتَلْتُ مِنْهُمْ نَفْسًا

فَاَخَافُ اَنْ يَقْتُلُوْنِ

Now) enter your hand into the your bosom, and it will come forth white (radiant)) “ ٣٢ without evil, and draw your arm to yourself to ward off fear; and these (two miracles) be two proofs from your Lord unto Pharaoh and his chiefs, verily they have been a transgressing people”.

He said: ‘My Lord! Verily I have killed one of them, so I fear that they would slay “ ٣٣ me’.

Commentary, verses: ٣٢-٣٣

Moses was ordered to draw his arm to himself

The first miracle of Moses, that his staff became a serpent, was a sign of terror. After that, he was ordered to apply his second miracle, which was a sign of light and hope. Then both of them are a combination of ‘warning’ and ‘glad tidings’. Moses was ordered:

Now) enter your hand into the your bosom, and it will come forth white (radiant)) “ ... ,without evil

This whiteness and radiance was not because of the disease of leprosy, and the like; it was a Divine light for him which was completely new

The observation of those wonderful supernatural events, in that dark night and in that empty desert, caused Moses (a.s.) to shake vigorously. In order that he could regain his peace and calmness, he was ordered another commandment. It was as follows

”... ;and draw your arm to yourself to ward off fear ...“

Some commentators have said that this sentence ironically means the necessity of decisiveness and firm decision in fulfilment of the responsibility of prophethood, and the lack of any fear and horror from any rank and any power

Some other commentators have also thought that when the staff was changed into a snake, Moses (a.s.) stretched his arms to defend himself, but Allah ordered him to draw back his arms and he should not fear, because he did not need to defend himself

The application of /janāḥ/ (wing) instead of ‘hand’ is a beautiful meaning that, perhaps, its purpose is to liken the state of man’s tranquility and calmness to the state of a bird that when it observes a frightening thing, it flies, but when it regains its calmness, it gathers its wings

:Again, Moses heard the same voice, saying

and these (two miracles) be two proofs from your Lord unto Pharaoh and his ... “
”chiefs, verily they have been a transgressing people

Yes, these people have gone out from the obedience of Allah, and they have disobeyed Him very violently. It is upon you that you advise them, but if it is of no avail, you must struggle against them

Here Moses remembered the important event of his life in Egypt, the event of killing that Coptic man and mobilization of the forces of Pharaoh to avenge his blood. Although Moses had combated with that oppressor, these things had no meaning in the logic of Pharaoh. He is still decided to kill Moses without dispute if he finds him.

:That is why here Moses speaks to Allah: as follows

”.’He said: ‘My Lord! Verily I have killed one of them, so I fear that they would slay me “

p: ٣٠٤

(٣٤) وَأَخِي هَارُونَ هُوَ أَفْصَحُ مِنِّي لِسَانًا فَأَرْسَلْهُ مَعِيَ رِدْءًا يُصَدِّقُنِي إِنِّي أَخَافُ أَنْ يُكَذِّبُونِ

(٣٥) قَالَ سَنَشُدُّ عَضُدَكَ بِأَخِيكَ وَنَجْعَلُ لَكُمَا سُلْطَانًا فَلَا يَصِلُونَ إِلَيْكُمَا بِآيَاتِنَا أَنْتُمْ وَمَنِ اتَّبَعُكُمَا الْغَالِبُونَ

And my brother Aaron, he is more eloquent in speech than I, so send him with me “ .٣٤
”as an assistant, to testify me, surely I fear that they would reject me

Allah) said: ‘We will strengthen your arm with your brother, and We will give you) “ .٣٥
both an authority, so that they shall not reach you; (go) with Our signs; you two and
”.’those who follow you two shall be the triumphant

Commentary, verses: ٣٤-٣٥

Moses confessed the virtue of his brother

In giving heavy responsibilities to someone, all dimensions of the concerning person must be regarded. Although Haḍrat Hārūn (Aaron) was older and more eloquent than Haḍrat Moses (a.s.), but for other good qualities and competencies that Moses had, he became responsible of this mission, while Aaron was a Divine prophet, too

In the way of propagation, guidance, enjoining what is right and forbidding what is wrong, sometimes two or more persons must take an action. “... so send him with me
”...

That is why in the verse Moses (a.s.) implicitly utters that he is alone and his tongue is :not eloquent. The verse says

And my brother Aaron, he is more eloquent in speech than I, so send him with me as “
”an assistant, to testify me, surely I fear that they would reject me

The Arabic term /ʾafṣaḥ/ is derived from /fasīḥ/ which originally refers to ‘the purity of something’; and it is used for a pure, expressive speech which is free from any
’redundancy and unnecessary words. The Qur’ānic word /rid’/ means: ‘Assistant

However, in view of the fact that this mission was very great and heavy, and Moses
.wanted not to fail in it, he asked Allah for it

By the way, confessing the accomplishments of others is a virtue and a value.
Therefore, though Moses (a.s.) was an arch prophet he confessed the virtue of his
brother, because an eloquent speech is one of the factors of attracting people and
.that of a successful propagation

By the next verse, Allah accepted Moses’ invocation, too, and gave him enough
:confidence, as it says

Allah) said: ‘We will strengthen your arm with your brother, and We will give you) “
both an authority, so that they shall not reach you; (go) with Our signs; you two and
”.’those who follow you two shall be the triumphant

What a great glad tidings! It was a glad tidings that not only encouraged the heart of
Moses, but also caused his decision to become firm, and made his will very strong, the
.clear sequels of which will be explained later through some other topics of this story

(٣٦) فَلَمَّا جَاءَهُمْ مُوسَى بِآيَاتِنَا بَيِّنَاتٍ قَالُوا مَا هَذَا إِلَّا سِحْرٌ مُفْتَرَى وَمَا سَمِعْنَا بِهَذَا فِي آبَائِنَا الْأَوَّلِينَ

So when Moses came to them with Our clear signs, they said: ‘This is nothing but “ .٣٦
”.’a forged sorcery, and we never heard of it amongst our fathers of old

Commentary, verse: ٣٦

Moses informed Aaron of his prophecy

Accusation and slander is one of the greatest weapons of the tyrants against the
.reformers

In accepting beliefs, the criterion is logic and reasoning, not the habit of the fathers,
“... and we never heard of it ...”. The teachings of the divine prophets are not to follow
.the old customs

However, at that dark night and in that holy land Moses (a.s.) received the command
of prophethood from Allah. He came into Egypt and informed his brother, Aaron, of
this important mission and conveyed the message of the great prophecy to him. Both
of them went toward Pharaoh, and after tolerating many difficulties, they could meet
him. While his entourages and the elect ones were around him, Moses communicated
the invitation of Allah to them. Now we are going to see what was their reaction in the
:face of this divine message. The Qur’ān says

So when Moses came to them with Our clear signs, they said: ‘This is nothing but a “
”.’forged sorcery, and we never heard of it amongst our fathers of old

Alongside of the great miracles of Moses, they betook the same weapon that in the
length of history all tyrants and misguided ones used to betake in the face of Divine
,prophets

miracles, that is, the weapon of sorcery, because that was extraordinary and this was
?also a supernatural event, but how one can reconcile these two

Sorcerers are some deviated and mostly mammonist persons whose foundation of
work is an alteration of facts and by this sign they can be recognized, while the
.invitation of Divine prophets, as well as its content, is a witness upon their miracles

Moreover, since sorcerers rely on the power of man, their acts are always limited, but
the divine prophets, who enjoy of the Power of Allah, have great and unlimited
.miracles

The Qur'ānic phrase /'āyātin bayyināt/ (clear signs), which points to the miracles of
Moses (a.s.), is in plural form because besides these two miracles Moses might have
shown them other miracles, too, that with the combination of each of these two there
would have been many miracles. The change of his staff into a great snake is a
miracle, and its return to the first state is another miracle. Again the brightness of
Moses' hand in a moment is a miracle, and its return to the first state is another
.miracle

The usage of the Qur'ānic term /muftaran/ (forged), derived from /faryah/ in the sense
of accusation and slander, is for the sake that they wanted to say that Moses had
.falsely attributed it to Allah

They said "... we never heard of it amongst our fathers of old," though before Moses
the invitation of Noah, Abraham, and Yūsuf had been heard in that land. It is either
because of the long length of time, or for the sake that they wanted to say that their
.ancestors did not submit to such invitations, too

(٣٧) وَقَالَ مُوسَى رَبِّىَ أَعْلَمُ بِمَن جَاءَ بِالْهُدَىٰ مِنْ عِنْدِهِ وَمَن تَكُونُ لَهُ عَاقِبَةُ الدَّارِ إِنَّهُ لَا يُفْلِحُ الظَّالِمُونَ

And Moses said: ‘My Lord knows best who comes with guidance from unto Him, “ .٣٧
”and whose end will be best in the Hereafter, verily the unjust will not prosper

Commentary, verse: ٣٧

Moses reported the failure of the unjust

In the previous verse, the entourage of Pharaoh boldly introduced the Divine miracles as sorcery and implicitly said that they had not heard such words in the history of their ancestors. In this verse, Moses in allusion says that they told lie, because before him there were persons, like Haḍrat Yūsuf, who had the torch of guidance of their ancestors in hand and had been circulating the religion of Abraham

And also, with a threatening tone, in answer to them, Moses started speaking, as the
:verse says

And Moses said: ‘My Lord knows best who comes with guidance from unto Him, and “
”... ,whose end will be best in the Hereafter

It indicates that Allah is well aware of his situation, though they accuse him of telling lie. How is it possible that Allah gives such a supernatural event to a liar who was the cause of His servants’ aberration? The best proof of the legitimacy of his invitation is
.that Allah knows his intention and He has given him this position

Moreover, a liar can continue his job only for a short time, and at last the curtain will be removed from his deeds. You may wait to see that whose good end and victory will
.be, and who is the failing one

This meaning is similar to what has come in Sura TāHā, No. ٢٠, verse ٦٩ which says: “...
”and the sorcerer will not be successful wherever he goes

This sentence may refer to the situation of the obstinate and arrogant people of Pharaoh, meaning that you have found out the situation of my miracles and the legitimacy of my invitation, but you oppose me unjustly. You should know that you will
.not win and at last the prosperity will belong to me, not to you

The application of the Qur’ānic phrase /‘āqibat-ud-dār/ in the verse may refer to their end in this world, or in the next world, or both of them. The third meaning, of course,
.seems more comprehensive and more fitting

:The verse continues saying

”verily the unjust will not prosper ...“

By this polite logical statement, Moses reported them their failure both in this world
.and the Hereafter

p: ٢١٠

(٣٨) وَقَالَ فِرْعَوْنُ يَا أَيُّهَا الْمَلَأُ مَا عَلِمْتُ لَكُمْ مِنْ إِلَهٍ غَيْرِي فَأَوْقِدْ لِي يَا هَامَانَ عَلَى الطَّيْنِ فَاجْعَلْ لِي صَيْرُوحًا لَعَلَّيْ أَطَّلِعُ إِلَى إِلَهِ مُوسَى وَإِنِّي لأظنُّهُ مِنَ الْكَاذِبِينَ

And Pharaoh said: ‘O Chiefs! No god do I know for you but myself; therefore, O’ “ ٣٨. Hāmān, light me a fire upon the clay, and build for me a tower, so that I may obtain knowledge of Moses’ God, and verily I think him

”.’to be one of the liars

Commentary, verse: ٣٨

The news of Moses’ victory spread in Egypt

The existence of an arrogant mentality usually hinders the acceptance of the truth. As the verse indicates, Pharaoh said that he knew no god for his people but himself. The arrogant persons impose their beliefs and thoughts upon others and their slogan is that: whatever thing they do not know, then it does not exist

In this noble verse, we are faced with the ninth scene from this adventurous and instructive story, and it is the scene of making a tower by the command of Pharaoh in (order to knock out Moses (a.s

We know that one of the customs of the skilful politicians is that whenever an important event occurs which is against their desire, they immediately begin to create a new scene so that it can attract, the attention of people to itself and dissuade their thought from that undesirable event

It seems that the story of building a great tower had happened after the event of ,Moses’ struggle against sorcerers

since it is understood from Sura Mu'min in the Qur'ān that this action was done at the time when the people of Pharaoh were planning to kill Moses (a.s.) and the believer of the people of Pharaoh attempted to defend him; and we know that there was not such a thing existed before the struggle of Moses (a.s.) with the sorcerers, but they were searching about Moses and that how they could beat him by means of the sorcerers. Since the Qur'ān has explained the event of the struggle of Moses against sorcerers in Suras: TāHā, 'A'rāf, Yūnus, and Ash-Shu'arā', it has relinquished speaking about it again here and it has only referred to the subject of building the tower. This subject has been mentioned merely in this Sura and Sura Mu'min

However, the news of Moses' victory against sorcerers spread throughout Egypt. The subject of sorcerers' belief in Moses (a.s.) strengthened the matter, too. The stability of the government of Pharaoh was going to be in danger seriously, and it was very probable that the captured people might awake. In any rate, the common thought and attention should be deviated from this issue, and there must be provided some mental engagements which, in the meantime, were accompanied with the munificence of the governmental organizations so that it could beguile people

In this regard, Pharaoh started consulting and, consequently, his thought reached to the thing which is mentioned in the above verse. It says

”... ;And Pharaoh said: ‘O Chiefs! No god do I know for you but myself “

Pharaoh implicitly says that it is certain that he is the only god on the earth but, as for the god of heaven, there is no proof available for its existence. Yet, he does not miss caution and

begins to search about it. Then he turned to his minister, Hāmān, and, addressing him,
:said

”... ,therefore, O’ Hāmān, light me a fire upon the clay ...“

He ordered Hāmān to build a very high tower for him to climb it and get some information about the God of Moses, though it did not seem to him that Moses could
:be truthful. The verse says

and build for me a tower, so that I may obtain knowledge of Moses’ God, and verily ...“
”I think him to be one of the liars

When the building of the tower was finished, and they were not able to make it higher than that, one day Pharaoh went there with some ceremonies to climb that great tower personally. When he reached the top of the tower, he looked at the sky and observed its scenery like the same form that he used to see it on the level land and he
.found no change and variation in it

It is said that he put an arrow in the bow and threw it toward the sky. The arrow struck a bird, or by his own aforetime plot, it returned back while it was bloody. Pharaoh came down from that tower and told people: “Go home, and have no anxiety,
(for I killed Moses’ God.”[\(1\)](#)

Surely, some of the contemporary simple-minded people of the government believed it and spread its news everywhere. They made a new amusement out of it for
.deluding people of Egypt

It is notable that in this saying: “... No god do I know for you but myself, ...” Pharaoh did his utmost satanic deed. He

p: ۳۱۳

counted his divinity certain and continued that whether there was any god other than
.him. Then, because of the lack of any proof, he negated it either

In the third stage, in order to bring forth a proof for the absence of the existence of
.any other god, he designed the subject of the great tower

All of these affairs show that he knew the matter well, but in order to beguile the
.people of Egypt and protecting his own position, he said those words

p: ۳۱۴

(٣٩) وَاسْتَكْبَرَ هُوَ وَجُنُودُهُ فِي الْأَرْضِ بِغَيْرِ الْحَقِّ وَظَنُّوا أَنَّهُم إِلَيْنَا

لَا يُرْجَعُونَ

And he and his hosts prided in the land without any right, and they thought that “ ٣٩ .
”they would not be returned unto Us

Commentary, verse: ٣٩

?How can a man claim divinity

The lack of belief in Resurrection and Reckoning is the ground for formation of
.arrogance

In this verse, the Qur’ān refers to the arrogance of Pharaoh and his people as well as
the lack of their submission in the face of ‘Origin’ and ‘End’. Their crimes originated
:from the denial of these two principles. The verse says

And he and his hosts prided in the land without any right, and they thought that they “
”would not be returned unto Us

A feeble human being who sometimes is not able to send away a mosquito from him,
and sometimes an atomic being called microbe may send the strongest man of his
?members under the ground, how can he introduce himself grand and claim divinity

A divine tradition indicates that Allah says: “Majesty is My mantle, and Greatness in My
wrapper. Then whoever disputes with Me about each of these two, I will send him into
[\(\(Hell\) Fire.”](#)

p: ٣١٥

The Commentary of Rūh-ul-Ma‘ānī, Tafsīr-i-Kabīr, and Tafsīr-i-Al-Mizān, following –١
.the verse

(٤٠) فَأَخَذْنَاهُ وَجُنُودَهُ فَنَبَذْنَاهُمْ فِي الْيَمِّ فَاَنْظُرْ كَيْفَ كَانَ عَاقِبَةُ الظَّالِمِينَ

So We seized him and his hosts, and We cast them into the sea; behold then how “ .٤٠
” .was the end of the unjust

Commentary, verse: ٤٠

In this verse, Pharaoh and his hosts have been likened to a worthless thing which is taken from the ground and is thrown into the sea. This despise is for the sake that all powers are insignificant before the Might and Wrath of Allah

The Qur’ānic word /nabaḥa/ means: ‘to throw away’, or ‘to discard, something which is worthless

And, finally, we may see where the end of pride and arrogance reached. The Qur’ān says

”... ;So We seized him and his hosts, and We cast them into the sea “

Yes, Allah caused their death by means of what was the essence of their life, and changed Nile, which was the secret of their greatness and power, into a graveyard for them

Yes, Allah warded off these worthless beings from the society of human beings and wiped out the face of the earth from the dirt of their existence

:At the end of the verse, the Qur’ān addresses the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.) and says

” .behold then how was the end of the unjust ... “

This look is not done with the apparent eyes, it is done by the eye of the heart; and this meaning does not belong to the yesterday oppressors, because the tyrants of today will have the same fate, too

(٤١) وَجَعَلْنَاهُمْ أَئِمَّةً يَدْعُونَ إِلَى النَّارِ وَيَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ لَا يُنصَرُونَ

(٤٢) وَأَتْبَعْنَاهُمْ فِي هَذِهِ الدُّنْيَا لَعْنَةً وَيَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ هُمْ مِنَ الْمَقْبُوحِينَ

And We appointed them leaders who invite unto the (Hell) Fire and on the Day of “ .٤١
” Judgment they shall not be helped

And in this world, we made a curse to follow them; and on the Day of Judgment “ .٤٢
”.they will be of those made to appear hideous

Commentary, verses: ٤١–٤٢

’The leaders are divided into two groups: the leaders of ‘light’ and the leaders of ‘Fire

This holy verse indicates that Allah set the people of Pharaoh as leaders who invited
:others to the Hell, and on the Hereafter Day no one will help them. The verse says

And We appointed them leaders who invite unto the (Hell) Fire and on the Day of “
” Judgment they shall not be helped

This meaning is a question for some commentators that how it is possible that Allah
appoints some people as leaders of falsehood, since His job is to invite to goodness
.and appointing leaders of the truth, not falsehood

But this is not a very complicated matter, because: firstly, they are the leading
members of the hellish people and when some groups of these people are going
towards Hell Fire, they walk in front of them. It will be in the same manner that they
were the leaders of misguidance here in this world, then, they will be also the leaders
.of hellish people there, because next world is the place of embodiment of this world

Secondly, it is in fact, the result of their own deeds that they are the leaders of
misguidance, and we know that the

effect of any cause is under the command of Allah. They paved a way that ended to
.being the leaders of the misguided ones. This is their position in Hereafter, too

Again, for more emphasis, the Qur'ān illustrates their feature in this world and the
.next, as follows

And in this world, we made a curse to follow them; and on the Day of Judgment they “
”.will be of those made to appear hideous

The curse of Allah is the same as exclusion from His Mercy, and the curse of angels
and believers is the curse that they send for them every morning and evening, and
every now and then. Sometimes all the unjust and oppressors are involved in a
general curse, and sometimes they are cursed particularly, because whoever studies
.history about their lives will curse them

However, those who have ugly way of life in this world will have ugly face in the next
.world

Here, the Qur'ān has divided the leaders into two groups: the leaders of 'light', and
the leaders of Fire. In the logic of the Qur'ān, we have two kinds of leader. The
leaders who are in front of the pious ones on the path of guidance, as Sura
Al-'Anbiyā', No. ٢١, verse ٧٣, concerning some divine prophets, says: “And We made
them leaders guiding (the people) by Our command, and We revealed to them the
doing of good deeds, and the establishing of prayer, and the giving of alms, and they
were worshippers of Us (alone).” These are the leaders with clear bright programs,
because pure Monotheism, invitation to goodness, truth and justice have formed the
content of their program. These are the leaders of Light whose manner has been
continued by all prophets and their vicegerents up to the Seal of the Prophets (p.b.u.h.)
.(and his vicegerents (a.s

The second group are the leaders of misguidance, and as the Qurʾān introduces them
in the verses under discussion, they are the leaders of Fire

A tradition narrated from Imam Ṣādiq (a.s.) about the qualities of these two groups of
leaders indicates that the first group give priority to the command of Allah rather than
[\(the command of people and their own will, \(1\)](#)

and consider His Commandment as the highest ordinances, while the second group
give priority to their own command before the command of Allah (s.w.t.) and consider
[\(their own command before His commandment. \(2\)](#)

Thus, by this criterion, the recognition of these two groups of leaders will be very
.clear

On the Day of Resurrection when the rows of people will be specified, every group will
be at the back of their leader. The hellish people follow the hellish ones, and the
people of light follow the people of light, as the Qurʾān says: “On the Day We shall call
[\(every people with their Imam \(leader\), ...” \(3\)](#)

We have repeatedly said that Resurrection is a great embodiment from this small
world, and those who have loved a leader and practically followed his way of
.treatment here, in Hereafter will be on his line, too

Bushr-ibn-Qālib says that once he asked Haḍrat Imam Abū-ʿAbdillah-il-Husayn (a.s.)
about the commentary of the Qurʾānic sentence: “On the Day We shall call every
people with their Imam (leader), ...” [\(4\)](#), and he (a.s.) answered: “A leader invites to
guidance and a group accept him, and a leader

p: ۳۱۹

The Commentary by Ṣāfi, following the verse –۱

Ibid –۲

Sura ʾIsrāʾ, No. ۱۷, verse ۷۱ –۳

Ibid –۴

invites to misguidance and a group accept him, too. The former are in Heaven and the latter are in Hell Fire, and this is the meaning of the word of Allah Who says: "...

[\(When\) some will be in the Paradise and some in the blazing Fire\(۱\).](#)" [\(۲\)](#)

It is interesting that Pharaoh who moved in front of his followers and caused them to be drowned in the waves of Nile, on the Hereafter Day he will walk in front of them

(and will make them enter into the sea of Hell Fire. (Sura Hūd, No. ۱۱, verse ۹۸

We put an end to this discussion with a statement narrated from Haḍrat Amīr-ul-Mu'minīn Ali (a.s.) who said about a group of hypocrites: "... they have continued after the holy Prophet. They gained positions with the leaders of misguidance and callers towards Hell through falsehood and slandering. So, they put them in high posts and

[\(made them officers over the heads of the people. ...\)](#)" [\(۳\)](#)

p: ۳۲۰

Sura Ash-Shurā, No. ۴۲, verse ۷-۱

Amāli by Sadūq, narrated by Nūr-uth-Thaqalayn, Vol. ۳, P. ۱۹۲' -۲

Nahj-ul-Balāqah, Sermon ۲۱۰ -۳

A Book (Torah) was given Moses which was a guidance as well as Mercy from Allah – Apostle Muhammad was not physically present at the scene when Moses was given the Miracles and was Commissioned with the Apostleship, but sent with the knowledge of the past happenings in the world – The people disbelieved Moses and rejected the Book given to him – The Disbelievers challenged to produce a book from their god better than Torah and the Qur'ān

(۴۳) وَلَقَدْ آتَيْنَا مُوسَى الْكِتَابَ مِنْ بَعْدِ مَا أَهْلَكْنَا الْقُرُونَ الْأُولَىٰ بَصَائِرَ لِلنَّاسِ وَهُدًى وَرَحْمَةً لَّعَلَّهُمْ يَتَذَكَّرُونَ

And indeed We gave Moses the Book (Torah) after We had destroyed the earlier “ ۴۳ generations (as a means) of insight for mankind and a guidance and mercy that haply ”.they might receive admonition

Commentary, verse: ۴۳

Allah gave torah to Moses after their destruction

The Arabic word /baṣā'ir/ is the plural form of /baṣīrat/ in the sense of ‘insight and awareness’, and the word /’abṣār/ is the plural form of /baṣar/ which means ‘eye

A man usually will not be guided unless he obtains /baṣīrat/ (insight and awareness), and he will not be guided unless he receives the favour and grace of Allah

Religion is inside the nature of human beings, and the Heavenly Books uncover the dust from it

By this verse, which is the last verse of this section of verses, we reach the tenth scene of the adventurous story of Moses (a.s.). This verse speaks in relation with the revelation

of Divine ordinances and Torah, i.e. the period when the ‘negation of deity’ has finished and the period of construction and proof begins. It says

And indeed We gave Moses the Book (Torah) after We had destroyed the earlier “generations (as a means) of insight for mankind and a guidance and mercy that haply they might receive admonition”.

Concerning the objective of the Qur’ānic phrase: /qurūn al ’ulā/ (the earlier generations who were destroyed) and that who they are, commentators are divided. Some of them have said that it refers to the disbelievers among the people of Noah, ‘Ād, Thamūd, and the like, because, by the past of time, the effects of the former prophets had disappeared and it was necessary that a new Heavenly Book be set at mankind’s disposal.

Some other commentators of the Qur’ān believe that it refers to the destruction of the people of Pharaoh who were the remaining of the early generations, since Allah gave Torah to Moses (a.s.) after their destruction. But it is no problem that the above-mentioned sentence refers to all of these generations and peoples.

The Qur’ānic term /baṣā’ir/, which is the plural form of /baṣīrat/, means insight and awareness and its objective here is the verses and proofs that caused the hearts of believers to be enlightened, and guidance and mercy are also the concomitants of this ‘insight’, and there follows it admonition and vigilance of the receptive hearts

(٤٤) وَمَا كُنْتَ بِجَانِبِ الْغَرْبِيِّ إِذْ قَضَيْنَا إِلَىٰ مُوسَى الْأَمْرَ وَمَا كُنْتَ مِنَ الشَّاهِدِينَ

And you were not on the western side of (Mount Tūr) when We passed to Moses “ .٤٤
”the commandment, and you were not one of the witnesses

Commentary, verse: ٤٤

The Qur’ān informs of the future events

Reiterating the story and adventure of Moses’ prophethood with all its qualities from the tongue of a prophet who did not present at those times, is a sign of legitimacy and inimitability of the Qur’ān

Some of the stories of the Qur’ān are among the heavenly news, not taken and narrated from eyewitnesses. Therefore, in this verse the fact is stated, saying that whatever was said about Moses and Pharaoh, with all its details, is a proof for the legitimacy of your Qur’ān, because you did not attend in these scenes and did not see these events by your eyes. It was only the Grace of Allah that He sent down these verses unto you for the guidance of people. The verse says

And you were not on the western side of (Mount Tūr) when We passed to Moses the “
”commandment, and you were not one of the witnesses

It is necessary to note this point that on his way from Madyan to Egypt, which was in the land of Sinai, Moses (a.s.) was going just from East towards West, and, on the contrary, when the Children of Israel came from Egypt towards Syria and passed Sinai, they were coming from West to Egypt. (That

is why some of the commentators believe that the sentence “Then they (Pharaoh’s
(hosts) pursued them at sunrise”,⁽¹⁾

which is about the hosts of Pharaoh in pursuance of the Children of Israel, points to
(this meaning

Finally the author of Aṭyab-ul-Bayān in the following of the verse says: “Some Islamic narrations indicate that the objective of executorship has been Yūsha‘-ibn-Nūn- and that every prophet that was sent his executor of testament was appointed by Him and the appointment of executor of testament is in His hand. That is, you, O’ Messenger of Allah, too, should appoint your executor of testament. Some of these narrations denote that the purpose was ‘going’ toward Pharaoh, but it apparently means if you were there and saw the affairs of Moses and inform them to the Ummat, this would not be a miracle for them. They would say that he has seen it and informs of it; but now that you inform them of these affairs by means of the Qur’ān, this is itself a miracle that without seeing them you inform of Moses’ affairs as well as other prophets and their nations. The Qur’ān also informs of the future events because Allah (s.w.t.) has the knowledge of everything from beginning to the end of arriving in
(Hereafter; and this itself is a great miracle. (Aṭyab-ul-Bayān, following the verse

p: ۳۲۴

(٤٥) وَلَكِنَّا أَنْشَأْنَا قُرُونًا فَتَطَاوَلَ عَلَيْهِمُ الْعُمُرُ وَمَا كُنْتَ ثَاوِيًّا فِي أَهْلِ مَدْيَنَ تَتْلُوا عَلَيْهِمْ آيَاتِنَا

وَلَكِنَّا كُنَّا مُرْسِلِينَ

But We raised up generations and a long time passed upon them, and you were “ .٤٥ not dwelling among the people of Madyan, reciting unto them Our signs, but We were ”.sending messengers

Commentary, verse: ٤٥

The Qur’ānic word /θāwīyan/ is derived from /θawī/ which means ‘resident’, and also .’the term /maθwī/ derived from the same root, means ‘abode

:So, through this holy verse, Allah says

”... ,But We raised up generations and a long time passed upon them “

A long time passed and the effects of the prophets as well as their guidance went away from their hearts and thoughts. That was why We brought both you and your Qur’ān forth and stated the story life of the old generations in it in order to enlighten :mankind. The verse continues saying

”... ,and you were not dwelling among the people of Madyan ...“

O Prophet! You were not among the people of Madyan to be acquainted with their signs and the news of their lives so that you can reiterate them for the people of Mecca. But We sent you and gave you these exact news related to thousands

:years ago in order that you guide them. The above holy verse continues saying

”reciting unto them Our signs, but We were sending messengers ...“

Of course, the time between the advent of Moses (a.s.) and the advent of the Prophet
.of Islam (p.b.u.h.) lasted about two thousand years

p: ۳۲۶

(٤٦) وَمَا كُنْتَ بِجَانِبِ الطُّورِ إِذْ نَادَيْنَا وَلَكِنْ رَحِمَهُ مِنْ رَبِّكَ لِيُنذِرَ قَوْمًا مَّا أَتَاهُمْ مِنْ نَذِيرٍ مِنْ قَبْلِكَ لَعَلَّهُمْ يَتَذَكَّرُونَ

And you were not on the side of the Mount Tūr when We called (unto Moses), but “ .٤٦ (this revelation is) a mercy from your Lord that you warn a people to whom no warner had come before you, in order that they may receive admonition

Commentary, verse: ٤٦

(The earth always contains the godly Hujjat (proof

Like other people, the Divine prophets do not know the heavenly news without the .contact with the source of Divine revelation

.The Qur’ānic news is entirely from the source of Divine revelation

:Again, for emphasis on this very meaning, this holy verse adds

”... ,(And you were not on the side of the Mount Tūr when We called (unto Moses “

It was that time that Allah (s.w.t.) issued the command of prophethood for Moses. The :Qur’ān continues saying

but (this revelation is) a mercy from your Lord that you warn a people to whom no ... “
”.warner had come before you, in order that they may receive admonition

Shortly speaking, Allah (s.w.t.) reiterated the warnings and awakening events that had occurred in the old nations’ time when the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.) was not present and did not witness them, so that he would recite them for this misguided people, .probably they cause them to awaken

There arises a question here that how does the Qur'ān say that no warner had come for this nation (i.e. the Arabs contemporary with the Prophet (p.b.u.h.)), while we know that there comes no time that the earth is empty of a godly Hujjat (proof) and the ?vicegerents of the prophets had always been present among this nation, too

In answer, we say that its purpose is to send a prophet who had a heavenly Book and was a clear warner, because it prolonged for centuries between the time of Jesus (a.s.) and the advent of the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.) when no arch-prophet came, .and this very matter gave a pretext to the atheists and mischief-makers

In one of his sermons, Ali (a.s.) says: “Verily Allah sent Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) when none among the Arabs read a (heavenly) Book or claimed prophethood. He guided the (people till he took them to their (correct) position and reached them their salvation.”[\(1\)](#)

p: ۳۲۸

(٤٧) وَلَوْلَا أَنْ تُصِيبَهُمْ مُصِيبَةٌ بِمَا قَدَّمَتْ أَيْدِيهِمْ فَيَقُولُوا رَبَّنَا لَوْلَا أَرْسَلْتَ إِلَيْنَا رَسُولًا فَنَتَّبِعَ آيَاتِكَ وَنَكُونَ مِنَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ

And were it not that there should befall them a calamity for what their hands have “ .٤٧ sent before, they would say: ‘Our Lord! Why did You not send to us a messenger so ”?that we might follow Your signs and so be of the believers

Commentary, verse: ٤٧

Allah punishes no nation before sending a prophet for them

The previous verse denoted that the purpose of coming prophets was warning and admonition. This verse states another aim of the mission of the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) which is to complete the argument and to shut the way of seeking pretext. Thus, in the verse under discussion, the Qur’ān, pointing to the grace given unto the Prophet (p.b.u.h.), says

And were it not that there should befall them a calamity for what their hands have “ sent before, they would say: ‘Our Lord! Why did You not send to us a messenger so ”?that we might follow Your signs and so be of the believers

In fact, the verse refers to this point that: the path of Truth is clear, and any intellect judges the falseness of paganism and idolatry. The ugliness of a great deal of their vain deeds, like tyrannies and cruelties, belongs to the judgment of intellect, and even without sending prophets in this regard they can be punished. But, even in this field, upon which the judgment of intellect is clear, Allah sent prophets with heavenly Books and miracles in order to complete the argument and negate any kind of pretexts, so that no one can say their misfortune was

because of lacking any leader and if they had divine leader(s) they would not be
.misguided

However, this verse is among the verses that have indication to the necessity of Grace through sending prophets. It shows that Allah's way of treatment is based on this fact that he should not punish any nation for their sins before sending a prophet for them; as Sura An-Nisā', No. ٤, verse ١٤٥ says: "(We sent) messengers as givers of glad tidings and as warners, so that people might have no argument against Allah
".after the (invitations of) the messengers, and Allah is the Mighty, the Wise

p: ٣٣.

(٤٨) فَلَمَّا جَاءَهُمُ الْحَقُّ مِنْ عِنْدِنَا قَالُوا لَوْلَا أُوتِيَ مِثْلَ مَا أُوتِيَ مُوسَىٰ أَوْلَمْ يَكْفُرُوا بِمَا أُوتِيَ مُوسَىٰ مِنْ قَبْلُ قَالُوا سِحْرَانِ تَظَاهَرَا وَقَالُوا إِنَّا بِكُلِّ كَافِرُونَ

But when the truth came to them from Us they said: ‘Why has he not been given “ .٤٨ the like of what was given Moses?’ (But) did they not believe also in what Moses was given aforetime? They said: ‘A pair of sorceries supporting each other’. And they (also) ”.’said: ‘Verily we disbelieve in all

Commentary, verse: ٤٨

Moses’ two miracles: Rod and white hand

Magic and sorcery was the most current accusation which prophets were accused of. The enemies confuse the logic and truth in order that they pave the way for their own denial. Therefore, in this holy verse the Qur’ān points to their seeking pretexts and implies that, even after sending messengers for them, they did not abandon pretext :seeking and continued their deviated way. It says

But when the truth came to them from Us they said: ‘Why has he not been given the “ ”... ’?like of what was given Moses

They want to say why does not the Messenger of Islam have a staff like what Moses had? Why did he not have a white Hand? Why does not the sea cleave for him? Why ?... do the enemies not drown? Why and why

:The Qur’ān answers these pretext seekers when it says

”... ?But) did they not believe also in what Moses was given aforetime) ...“

Did they not say that these two, Moses and Aaron, were two sorcerers who had exchanged hands with each other to misguide them? And, therefore, they said they :disbelieved them. The verse continues stating

They said: ‘A pair of sorceries supporting each other’. And they (also) said: ‘Verily ... “ ”.’we disbelieve in all

Though customarily there must be said /sāḥirān/ (sorcerers) in the verse instead of saying /sihrān/, it is for the severity of emphasis, because when, in Arabic, it is speaking about a person earnestly, that person is counted as the exact, for example, justice, or injustice, or magic

It is also probable that the purpose of /seḥrān/ is the two great miracles of Moses: Rod .and White Hand

If someone says what is the connection of these denials with the pagans of Mecca, and it relates to the people of Pharaoh who were infidels? Its answer is that the purpose of it is that the subject of seeking pretext is not a new thing. All of them are alike and their statement is very similar to that of each other. Their line, method, and .program are the same

p: ۳۳۲

(٤٩) قُلْ فَاتُوا بِكِتَابٍ مِنْ عِنْدِ اللَّهِ هُوَ أَهْدَى مِنْهُمَا أَتَّبِعُهُ إِنْ كُنْتُمْ صَادِقِينَ

Say (O' Apostle Muhammad): 'Bring you then a Book from Allah that gives better " .٤٩ guidance than both of them (i.e., Torah and Qur'ān), (that) I follow it, if you are ".truthful

Commentary, verse: ٤٩

Man is surely incapable to bring a book better than the Qur'ān and original Torah. The religious leaders must deliver the best speech and the most logical style when confronting the opponents. They must answer the vain sayings of the rejecters with a .suitable reply

:Therefore, this verse, addressing the holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.), says

Say (O' Apostle Muhammad): 'Bring you then a Book from Allah that gives better " guidance than both of them (i.e., Torah and Qur'ān), (that) I follow it, if you are ".truthful

In other words, they are seeking for a Book of guidance and for miracles. What miracle is greater than the Qur'ān and what guiding Book is better than it? If the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.) had not anything other than this Qur'ān, it would be enough for proving the legitimacy of his invitation. But they do not seek the Truth; they are a .group of pretext seekers

(٥٠) فَإِنْ لَمْ يَسْتَجِيبُوا لَكَ فَاعْلَمْ أَنَّمَا يَتَّبِعُونَ أَهْوَاءَهُمْ وَمَنْ أَضَلُّ مِمَّنِ اتَّبَعَ هَوَاهُ بِغَيْرِ هُدًى مِنَ اللَّهِ إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يَهْدِي الْقَوْمَ الظَّالِمِينَ

But if they do not answer you, then know that they only follow their own low “ ٥٠. desires, and who is more astray than he who follows his own low desire without any guidance from Allah? Verily Allah does not guide the unjust people

Commentary, verse: ٥٠

Man should be on the line of Divine guidance

Wherever there is not any eligibility of accepting guidance, sensuality dominates. The rejecters of the Truth and sensualists are the most misguided people. Thus, the relation between these two is explicitly stated in this verse, and even the most aberrant people are introduced as those who have taken their own sensual desire as their leader and they have never accepted the Divine guidance

.Sensual desire is a thick curtain before the eyes of man’s intellect

Sensual desire attracts the man’s attention to a subject so much that he often loses the ability of understanding the facts because the condition of understanding the fact is an absolute submission for realities, leaving any prophecy and attachment, and to be unconditionally submissive unto whatever outwardly exists, whether it is sweet or bitter; it is alongside our innate wishes or opposite of them; it is on the way of our personal interests or against them; but sensual desire is not consistent with these principles

In this regard, there is a detailed discussion explained when commenting on Sura Al-Furqān, No. ٢٥, verse ٤٣

It is interesting that through a lot of Islamic narrations, the abovementioned verse has been rendered into those who have not accepted the Divine leaders and have [\(relied only on their own thoughts.\)](#)

These narrations which have been narrated from Imam Bāqir (a.s.), Imam Sādiq (a.s.) and some other Imams (leaders) of right guidance (a.s.) are, in fact, of the kind of clear aspect. In other words, man is in need of Divine guidance. This guidance sometimes is found in the heavenly Book, sometimes in the person of Prophet (p.b.u.h.) and his way of treatment, sometime in his immaculate vicegerents, and sometimes in the logic of intellect and wisdom. The important thing is that man should be on the line of Divine guidance, not on the line of his own sensual desire, so that he .can enjoy the rays of this guidance

p: ۳۳۵

Usūl-i-Kāfī, Basā'ir-ud-Darajāt, according to Nūr-uth-Thaqalayn, Vol. ۴, P. ۱۳۶' -۱

Section 9: Guidance from Allah had been continuous

Point

The Guidance from Allah had been continuous – Those who know the previous revelations readily believe in the revelations given to Apostle Muhammad – The noble qualities of the Sincere believers – Allah destroys not any town without having sent into it an apostle to rehearse to them His signs – Allah destroys only those who had .been unjust – The provision in the Hereafter is better and lasting

(٥١) وَلَقَدْ وَصَّلْنَا لَهُمُ الْقَوْلَ لَعَلَّهُمْ يَتَذَكَّرُونَ

And We have made the Word to reach them in order that haply they may be “ ٥١ .
”admonished

Commentary, verse: ٥١

The Arabic term /waṣṣalnā/ is derived from /waṣl/ which means ‘to relate’ and ‘to join’. The purpose of this joining is either the continuation of reflections, or harmoniousness .and agreement of the matters which are delivered

One of Allah’s ways of treatment is His guidance upon mankind, which does not cease .even for a moment

The noble verse under discussion speaks about the receptive hearts that by hearing these holy verses found the Truth and remained seriously faithful to it and submitted to it heartily; while the dark, ignorant, and zealous hearts did not show the least .reaction from them

:The verse says

And We have made the Word to reach them in order that haply they may be “
”admonished

Such as rain, these verses were continuously sent down upon them. These noble verses were in various forms and with

different qualities. They were sometimes with promise of divine rewards, sometimes with warning of Hell Fire, sometimes they were some advices, sometimes they were threats and warnings, sometimes they were accompanied with intellectual reasoning, and sometimes they were about the history of old nations as some useful instructive .lessons

To sum up, it is a complete collection with materials of the same kind which attracts to itself any heart that has a little receptivity, but the blind hearted ones have not .accepted it

p: ۳۳۷

”Those to whom We gave the Book before this (Qur’ān), they believe in it “ .٥٢

Occasion of Revelation and Commentary: verse ٥٢

Some Christians came to the Prophet and believed

Upon the occasion of revelation of these verses, it is narrated from Sa‘īd-ibn-Ḥabīr who said that these verses were sent down about seventy Christian priests whom Najāshī sent from Ethiopia to Mecca in order to search. When the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.) recited Sura Yāsīn for them, they shed tears of joy and embraced Islam. (١)

Some other commentators have said that these verses have been sent down in relation to a group of Christians from Najrān, (a city in the North of Yemen), who came to the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.) and heard the verses of the Qur’ān and believed in Islam; (٢) while some others believe that they are in relation to Najāshī and his (٣) companions. (٣)

However, these verses are a lively witness to the fact that a group of the learned persons of the People of the Book believed in Islam when they heard the verses of the Qur’ān, because it was impossible that the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) to say such a thing while no one of the people of the Book had believed in him. If it were so, the pagans of Mecca would immediately reject it and could protest it earnestly

The Holy Qur’ān implies that the People of the Book (from among the Jews and Christians) may believe in the Qur’ān

because they find it consistent with the signs that they have found in their own
:heavenly Book. It says

”Those to whom We gave the Book before this (Qur’ān), they believe in it “

It is interesting that these people were a group of the People of the Book, but the
verse refers to them as ‘the People of the Book’ without mentioning any quality.
Perhaps it means that the real people of the Book were only those ones who believed,
.and others were naught

p: ۳۳۹

(٥٣) وَإِذَا يُتْلَىٰ عَلَيْهِمْ قَالُوا ءَامَنَّا بِهِ إِنَّهُ الْحَقُّ مِن رَّبِّنَا إِنَّا كُنَّا مِن قَبْلِهِ مُسْلِمِينَ

(٥٤) أُولَٰئِكَ يُؤْتَوْنَ أَجْرَهُم مَّرَّتَيْنِ بِمَا صَبَرُوا وَيَدْرَءُونَ بِالْحَسَنَةِ السَّيِّئَةَ وَمِمَّا رَزَقْنَاهُمْ يُنفِقُونَ

And when it is recited to them, they say: ‘We believe in it, verily it is the truth from “ ٥٣ .
” .our Lord, verily even before it we had surrendered

These shall be granted their reward twice for that they patiently endured, and “ ٥٤ .
 .avert evil with good, and spend out of the sustenance We have provided them with

Commentary, verses: ٥٣–٥٤

They were expecting the Prophet of Islam

The seekers of the Truth are searching for the Truth and it does not matter for them
 .who says it, what race he is and in what language he speaks

Of course, if there is receptivity in a person, he may believe in the truth, but if the
 ground is not prepared, there is no hope of faith even with the continuation of citation
 :of the Qur’ān. That is why the verse says

And when it is recited to them, they say: ‘We believe in it, verily it is the truth from “
 ” ... ,our Lord

Yes, the recitation of these verses was enough for them to affirm it and say: “We
 .” ... ,believe in it

Then they add that not only today they are surrendered to the Words of the Lord, but
 :also they were Muslims from before. The verse continues saying

” .verily even before it we had surrendered ... “

They implicitly say that they had found out signs of this Prophet (p.b.u.h.) in their heavenly Book and loved him. They were expecting him, and as soon as they found him, they took him and accepted him eagerly and heartily

Then, in the next holy verse, the Qur'ān refers to the great reward of this group of truth seekers and says

”... ,These shall be granted their reward twice for that they patiently endured “

They will be rewarded once for their belief in their own heavenly Book, to which they were really loyal, and once again for their belief in the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.), the promised prophet whom the earlier Books had informed of

There is also this probability that they will be granted rewards twice, because, as it is understood from the previous verses, they believed in the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.) both before his advent and after his advent. For fulfilling their duty, they showed much patience and perseverance in both stages. Neither the deviated Jews and Christians approved their action, nor the imitation from ancestors and social atmosphere allowed them to leave their former religion. But they stood firm, left their own interests and renounced their sensual desires, and, consequently, they gained the great Divine reward twice

Then, the Qur'ān points to a group of their righteous deeds, each of which is worthier than the other. These actions are ‘averting evil with good’, ‘spending out of the Divine bounties’, and ‘facing with the ignorant magnificently.’ These qualities added to patience and perseverance, mentioned in the former sentence, make four outstanding qualities. It begins saying

”... ,and avert evil with good ...“

They avert evils, such as: ugly words with good sayings, the indecency with virtue, the ignorance with knowledge, the enmity and grudge with kindness, and the rupture of relation with friendship and union of kindred. In short, instead of answering vice with .vice, they try to repel it with goodness

This is a very effective style in struggling against mischief, specially against a group of obstinate persons, and the Qur'ān has repeatedly emphasized it. (There is a detailed explanation in this regard when commenting on Sura Ar-Ra'd, No. ۱۳, verse ۲۲, and (Sura Al-Mu'minūn, No. ۲۳, verse ۹۶

Another thing is that they spend not only out of their property and wealth, but also out of their knowledge, mental power, body strength, and social honour, all of which are :sustenance and merits of Allah that they give in the way of Allah. The verse says

.and spend out of the sustenance We have provided them with ...“

p: ۳۴۲

(٥٥) وَإِذَا سَمِعُوا اللَّغْوَ أَعْرَضُوا عَنْهُ وَقَالُوا لَنَا أَعْمَالُنَا وَلَكُمْ أَعْمَالُكُمْ سَلَامٌ عَلَيْكُمْ لَا نَبْتَغِي الْجَاهِلِينَ

And when they hear idle talk, they turn away from it and say: ‘We shall have our “ .٥٥
”.’deeds and you shall have your deeds. Peace be on you, we do not seek the ignorant

Commentary, verse: ٥٥

A real believer is he who not only does not go into a meeting of vanity and does not
.listen to an idle talk, but also if he heard a vain word, he would react properly

Turning away from speaking and hearing idle talk and also from seeing and
associating with it is a virtue which is praised in all religions. The above verse is about
:the qualities of a group of the People of the Book. Therefore, the verse says

”... And when they hear idle talk, they turn away from it “

They never answer an idle talk with an idle talk, and do not reply ignorance with
:ignorance, but they tell the talkers of idle as follows

”... .and say: ‘We shall have our deeds and you shall have your deeds ...“

Neither you will be punished for our deeds, nor we will be punished for your deeds,
.but soon you will know about the result of the deed of each of us

Then the Holy Qur’ān adds that they say farewell to the ignorant idle talkers, and
those who, by some vicious talks, try to hurt the nerves of the faithful and benevolent
:persons, and their speech is such

”.’Peace be on you, we do not seek the ignorant ...“

Neither we are the people of idle talk, ignorance, and mischief, nor we seek them. We seek for clear-minded scholars, the learned men who practice their own knowledge, and true believers

Thus, instead of wasting their strength and power in struggling against the blind-hearted ignorant and unaware idle talkers, they honourably pass by them and pay to their own fundamental aims and programs

It is worthy to note that when these believers face with such people, their greeting is not salutation of 'meeting' but it is the salutation of 'farewell

p: ۳۴۴

(٥٦) إِنَّكَ لَا تَهْدِي مَنْ أَحْبَبْتَ وَلَكِنَّ اللَّهَ يَهْدِي مَنْ يَشَاءُ وَهُوَ أَعْلَمُ بِالْمُهْتَدِينَ

Verily you cannot guide whom you like, but Allah guides whomever He pleases, “ ٥٦ .
”and He knows best those that are guided

Commentary, verse: ٥٦

Point

Divine prophet’s duty is conveying the Messages of Allah to people and showing the
:right way. Whether people accept or not it does not relate to them. The verse says

”... ,Verily you cannot guide whom you like “

Guiding people is the job of Allah which involves only the pure and receptive hearts.
:The verse continues saying

”but Allah guides whomever He pleases, and He knows best those that are guided ...“

Regarding the fact that the previous verses referred to two groups of the people of Mecca: the obstinate pagans in whom the light of Faith did not penetrate though the Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) tried to guide them. On the contrary, a group of the People of the Book and those who were in some distance places, accepted the Divine guidance and eagerly tried their best in the way of Islam, and they did not fear of the
.opposition of their near relatives and the arrogant ignorant pagans

Keeping these things in mind, the above verse uncovers the curtain from over this fact that the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) could not guide whomever he liked, but Allah guides
.whomever He pleases

Allah knows those who are eligible to accept Faith. He knows which hearts are eager for the Truth, He knows which minds contain the love of Allah. Yes, He knows these persons well and He gives them success, and endows them His grace so that they be
.guided towards Faith

But those dark hearted evil doers who are inwardly enemy of the Truth, and they struggle against the messengers of Allah (a.s.) with all their strength, and, from the point of life, they are so polluted and disdained that are not eligible for the light of
.Faith, Allah (s.w.t.) does not set the torch of success above their way

Therefore, the purpose of guidance, here, is not ‘showing the way’, because showing the way is the main job of the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) and he shows the way to everybody unexceptionally, but the purpose of guidance, here, is remittance to that which is sought and causing them to reach the destination. This is only the job of Allah that He spreads the seed of faith in the hearts, and His deed is not done undue either. He
.looks at the receptive hearts and cast this heavenly light into them

However, this verse is a kind of console for the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) that he regards this fact that neither the persistence of a group of idolaters of Mecca upon polytheism is undue, nor the sincere faith of the people of Ethiopia, or Najrān and the like in
.becoming Muslim

He should never be worried of the disbelief of the first group, because this divine light
.goes only into the receptive hearts, wherever it arrives it erects camp therein

There are many examples of this meaning found in the verses of the Holy Qur’ān. Sura Al-Baqarah, No. ٢, verse ٢٧٢ says: “It is not upon you to guide them (O’
”... .Muhammad), but Allah guides aright whomever He wills

Sura Yūnus, No. ۱۰, verse ۴۳ says: “And some of them look at you, but can you guide
”?(the blind even though they will not see (inwardly

And, in Sura 'Ibrāhīm, No. ۱۴, verse ۴ it says: “... then Allah leads astray whom He
”.pleases and guides whom He pleases, and He is the Mighty, the Wise

The last sentence of the recent verse shows that the will of Allah concerning these
two groups is not undue, but it is according to His Wisdom and upon the
competencies, activities, and efforts of the persons. It is only upon this basis that Allah
.gives the success of guidance to a group and negates it in another group

Now pay attention to this matter that the content of this verse, which is a consolation
for the Prophet (p.b.u.h.), has been repeated in some other verses of the Qur'ān with
some rather different statements and meanings; including, Sura Yūsuf, No. ۱۲, verse
۱۰۳ that says: “And most people will not believe, though you desire it.” Or Sura Al-
Baqarah, No. ۲, verse ۲۷۲ says: “It is not upon you to guide them (O' Muhammad), but
Allah guides aright whomever He wills. ...” Yet, in the commentary of Durr-ul-
Manthūr, Vol. ۵, as well as some other commentaries, there have been narrated some
narrations from Sunnites indicating that when Abūtalib, Ali's father, was going to die,
the holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) went to him and suggested Islam to him but he did not
accept it, and then this verse was revealed. But apart from the fact that what the
occasion of revelation is, or whether it relates to the father of Ali (a.s.) or not, with a
little care, the lack of this relation is proved, because the continuation of the verse is
about a group of the believers of the People of the Book comparing with the pagans of
Mecca. Now, in order to make the fact clear, we discuss on these narrations and the
.faith of Haḍrat Abūtālib

Allāmah 'Amīnī, the author of the worthy book of Al-Qadīr, in Vol. ۸, P. ۱۹ on rejecting all these forged narrations and relying on the historical documents, believes that the narrators of such narrations were either some little infants at the time of the death of .Haḍrat Abūtālib, or, like 'Abū-Hurayrah, had not embraced Islam yet

Again, in pages ۳۳۰ to ۴۱۰ of the same volume, 'Allāmah proves that Haḍrat Abūtālib was a true believer. He narrates hundreds of poems from that Haḍrat himself, ten reminiscences and forty traditions from the Ahl-ul-Bayt of the holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) which denote to his belief in Allah and the Messenger of Allah. Some of these :evidences are as

Some evidences upon the belief of Abūtālib

۱- The words of the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) and the immaculate Imams (a.s.) about him

۲- The grief and sorrow of the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) for Abūtālib's death, so grievous that .(that year was named /'ām-ul-huzn/ (The year of grief

۳- The Prophet's invocation (p.b.u.h.) on the pulpit for 'Abūtālib and attending in his .funeral

۴- The Prophet's tradition (p.b.u.h.) by which he said he would be the interceder of his .parents and his uncle 'Abūtālib on the Day of Hereafter

۵- The testament of 'Abūtālib in which he supported Banī Hāshim and the Prophet of .(Islam (p.b.u.h

۶- His recommendation to his wife and his son, Ja'far, for supporting the Prophet .(p.b.u.h.) and to regard Islam and prayer (salāt) are some evidences

۷- His abundant supports in regard to the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) by the nights of danger when he changed the sleeping place of the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) with the sleeping place of .his son, Ali (a.s.), and that he exposed his son to danger

The life of Fatimah-Bent-Asad with Abū-Tālib, in whose Islam there is no doubt, is –^٨ an evidence, because if Haḍrat 'Abū-Tālib were not Muslim, a Muslim woman would surely not be his wife

The existence of a great deal of poems which denote to his confess to Islam. Yet, –^٩ how ignorance, ingratitude and injustice it is that some people persistently tried to say that this sincere Unitarian believer died in paganism

Of course, it should not be forgotten that the only his unforgivable sin was that he was Ali's father (a.s.). Ali's enemies spent a great deal of money in the way of striking him. They concocted many false narrations, and in order to set a kind of relation between Abūtālib, Ali's father (a.s.), and Abūsufyān, the father of Mu'āwiyah, they accused Abūtālib of paganism

For more information, you may refer to the commentary books of Shi'ah and the narrations of Ahl-ul-Bayt (a.s.) cited following the abovementioned verse

(٥٧) وَقَالُوا إِن نَتَّبِعِ الْهُدَى مَعَكَ نَتَّخِطُفَ مِنْ أَرْضِنَا أَوْ لَمْ نَمُكِّنْ لَهُمْ حَرَمًا ءَامِنًا يُجِبِي إِلَيْهِ ثَمَرَاتُ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ رِزْقًا مِنْ لَدُنَّا وَلَكِنَّ أَكْثَرَهُمْ لَا يَعْلَمُونَ

And they say: ‘If we follow the guidance with you, we shall be driven out from our “ .٥٧ land.’ Have We not settled them in a secure sanctuary to which fruits of everything ”.are drawn, as a provision from Us? But most of them do not know

Commentary, verse: ٥٧

A group of the pagans of Mecca once told the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.) that if they accepted Islam, very soon they would be sent away from their home and, being .homeless, they would be vagrant from their own life and living

This statement, of course, is uttered by those persons who count the Might of Allah naught and the power of ignorant Arabs great. This statement is uttered by those who are not still acquainted with the depth of favours and helps of Allah and they do not know how He assists His friends and how He causes His enemies to fail. So, in :answer to them, the Qur’ān says

And they say: ‘If we follow the guidance with you, we shall be driven out from our “ land.’ Have We not settled them in a secure sanctuary to which fruits of everything ”.are drawn, as a provision from Us? But most of them do not know

The Lord Who set a dry saline land, which had no trees and plants, as a secure sanctuary, and attracted the hearts to it

so strongly that the best products from different parts of the world are brought towards it, has clearly shown His Power. The One Who has proved such a Might and has provided security and those abundant bounties in this land and every one sees their effects and have enjoyed of them for many years, how He is not able to protect them from the attack of a group of idolatrous Arabs

When they were in infidelity, they were enjoying of these two great bounties of Allah: security and the merits of life, how is it possible that Allah deprives them from these bounties after Islam? They must be strong-hearted, stand firm and believe in Islam since the Lord of Ka‘bah and Mecca (s.w.t.) is with them

The Qur’ānic term /yujbā/ (are drawn) is mentioned in the Arabic form of simple present tense. It denotes the continuation of action in both the present and future; and now, after fourteen centuries, we witness the concept of this statement that all kinds of merits are continuously drawn toward this sacred land. Those who go to Mecca see by their eyes that how this dry, hot, grassless land is full of kinds of the best bounties, so that there may not this affluence, from all points of views, be found so easily in any place of the world

(٥٨) وَكَمْ أَهْلَكْنَا مِنْ قَرْيَةٍ بَطَرَتْ مَعِيشَتَهَا فَتِلْكَ مَسَاكِنُهُمْ لَمْ تُسْكَنْ مِنْ بَعْدِهِمْ إِلَّا قَلِيلًا وَكُنَّا نَحْنُ الْوَارِثِينَ

And how many a town We did destroy which exalted in its means of subsistence; “ ٥٨ so these are their abodes, they have not been dwelt in after them save a little, and ”!We are their heirs

Commentary, verse: ٥٨

The Arabic word /baṭira/ means disobedience and inebriate because of abundance of wealth and welfare. In the previous verse we studied that a group of people told the holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) that if they believed in him, the pagans of Mecca would drive them out from their land, and Allah implicitly said that the same Power that made Mecca a secure place for them with plenty of sustenance, can protect His bounties for them after Faith, too. Now, in this verse, He implicitly says they should not forget that the people of those cities, that were inebriate with His bounties and full welfare, were destroyed; then they must be aware that they, too, will meet the Wrath of Allah because they do not believe in Islam in order to protect their own properties and :welfare. The verse says

”... ;And how many a town We did destroy which exalted in its means of subsistence “

Yes, the affluence and pride of bounties invited them to disobedience, and disobedience became the source of injustice and cruelty, and injustice annihilated the :whole their living. The verse continues saying

so these are their abodes, they have not been dwelt in after them save a little, and ... “ ”!We are their heirs

Yes, their ruin houses and cities are empty, silent, and ownerless, and if there came some persons into them to live therein they were a few and it was for a short length .of time

O' the pagans of Mecca! Do you also want to have such a comfortable life, under the shadow of infidelity, the end of which is the same thing that was said? What can the ?worth of it be

The application of the Arabic term /tilka/, which is a demonstrative pronoun pointing to a far place and is often used for perceptible things, may refer to the land of 'Ād and Thamūd and the people of Lot which was not so far from Mecca, viz. in the land of 'Aḥqāf (between Yemen and Syria), or in Wād-il-Qurā, or in the land of Sadūm, all of which were on the way of commercial caravans of Arabs of Mecca to Syria, and those Arabs could see the empty houses of that place with their own eyes and knew that .there had dwelt few persons there after them

The application of the Qur'ānic sentence "... and We are their heirs" points to that place being empty, and is an indication to the real ownership of Allah Who is the owner of everything, and if the nominal ownership of some things is temporarily given to some persons, it will not last long and all of them will disappear and their heirs will .be Allah

p: ۳۵۳

(٥٩) وَمَا كَانَ رَبُّكَ مُهْلِكَ الْقُرَى حَتَّىٰ يَبْعَثَ فِي أُمَّهَاتِ رُسُلًا يَلُوقُوا عَلَيْهِمْ آيَاتِنَا وَمَا كُنَّا مُهْلِكِي الْقُرَىٰ إِلَّا وَأَهْلُهَا ظَالِمُونَ

And your Lord never destroyed the towns until He raised in their centers a “ ٥٩ messenger, reciting to them Our signs, and We never destroyed the towns except ”.when their people were unjust

Commentary, verse: ٥٩

Point

This verse, in fact, is the answer of the probable question saying that: if it is so that Allah (s.w.t.) destroys the disobedient and rebellious ones, then why did He not annihilate by His punishment the pagans of Mecca and Medina who committed the utmost contumacy and there was no ignorance and crime that they did not commit?
:The Qur’ān says

And your Lord never destroyed the towns until He raised in their centers a “
”...messenger, reciting to them Our signs

Yes, He will not punish the people of the towns unless He completes the argument
.and sends messengers with explicit instructions

Moreover, after completing the argument, He has constant attention to their deeds, and if they commit any injustice or oppression that deserves punishment, He will
:punish them. The verse continues saying

”.and We never destroyed the towns except when their people were unjust ...“

The application of the Arabic phrases /mā kāna rabbuka/ (Your Lord never) and /mā kunnā/ (We never) in the verse is an evidence over this fact that it has been the
constant and

permanent way of treatment of Allah that He never punishes any nation before giving them enough proofs

The news of the raise of the Prophet of Islam spread in Arabia peninsula in a short time

The Qur’ānic sentence “... until He raised in their centers a messenger, ...” points to this fact that it is not necessary that He raises a messenger in every town and city. It is enough that a messenger to be raised in a great center where the people of mind and wisdom of a nation are gathered and the news are quickly scattered from it throughout the province and the people of that locality can get the news they need. The news of the raise of the Prophet of Islam in the land of Mecca spread throughout Arabia peninsula in a short time, and it went beyond it since Mecca was ‘Mother of cities’; it was both the spiritual center of Hijāz (Mecca and Medina) and a commercial center. It reached even the important centers of the civilization of that time during a short period

Therefore, the verse states a universal and a general principle, and, thus, the belief of some commentators who say it refers to Mecca is completely baseless; and the usage of the Arabic phrase /fī ’ummihā/ (in their centers) is also a general meaning since the Arabic word /’umm/ means ‘mother’ and ‘the main center’, and it is not allocated to Mecca

(٦٠) وَمَا أُوْتِيتُمْ مِنْ شَيْءٍ فَمَتَاعُ الْحَيَاةِ الدُّنْيَا وَزِينَتُهَا وَمَا عِنْدَ اللَّهِ خَيْرٌ وَأَبْقَى أَفَلَا تَعْقِلُونَ

And whatever things you have been given are only a provision of the life of this “ ٦٠ . world and its adornment, and whatever is with Allah is better and more lasting, have
”?you then no sense

Commentary, verse: ٦٠

Indeed, this is the third answer that Allah (s.w.t.) gives to the infidel pretext seekers of Mecca who used to say if they believed their living would be ruined. This verse implicitly says that whatever they imagine they obtain through disbelief is a worthless perishing thing for the limited life of this world while the things with Allah are better .and more lasting. The verse says

And whatever things you have been given are only a provision of the life of this world “
”... ,and its adornment, and whatever is with Allah is better and more lasting

All the material bounties of this world generally have some unwholesome sequels mixed with different problems, and there is no material bounty free from harm and .difficulty

In addition, the bounties which are with Allah are permanent and are not comparable with the perishing merits of this world; therefore, they are both better and more .lasting

Thus, with a simple comparison, every rational person can understand that he should not devote that lasting bounty for this mortal one. That is why, at the end of the verse, :He says

”?have you then no sense ...“

Fakhr-i-Rāzī narrates from one of the jurists who said that if a person makes testament that one third of his wealth must be given to the wisest person among people, his legal opinion was that this one third ought to be given to those who obey the commandment of Allah, because the wisest person among people is the one who gives little (perishing) thing and takes a large (lasting) capital, and this is true only in .the obedient persons of the command of Allah

Then, Fakhr-i-Rāzī adds that it seems that that jurist has taken this legal injunction (from the verse under discussion. (Tafsīr-i-Kabīr by Fakhr-i-Rāzī, Vol. ۲۵, P. ۶

p: ۳۵۷

Point

On the Day of Judgment the believers in false and imaginary deities will be asked to call those whom they worshipped as gods other than the One True God – The deities will disown their followers and the followers will be left deserted by their imaginary – gods – Allah creates and chooses whomever He likes, none else has any voice in it

On the Day of Judgment Allah will summon a witness from each people – and then the conduct of the people will wholly be disclosed

(٦١) أَفَمَن وَعَدَّنَاهُ وَعَدًّا حَسَنًا فَهُوَ لَاقِيهِ كَمَن مَّتَّعْنَاهُ

مَتَاعَ الْحَيَاةِ الدُّنْيَا

ثُمَّ هُوَ يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ مِنَ الْمُحْضَرِينَ

Is he then unto whom We have promised a goodly promise which he shall meet it, “ ٦١. similar to him whom We have provided with the provision of the life of this world, then ”?(on the Day of Hereafter he shall be of those brought up (for punishment

Commentary, verse: ٦١

Point

The promises of Allah are both decisive and certain; and rewards in hereafter are both great and good

In the previous verses, the words were about the persons who, for the enjoying of the bounties of the world, prefer disbelief to Faith and infidelity to Monotheism. Now, the verse under discussion defines the situation of this group in the Hereafter .comparing the true believers

At first, through a question, the Qur'ān wants the conscience of all to judge, when it says

Is he then unto whom We have promised a goodly promise which he shall meet it, “ similar to him whom We have provided with the provision of the life of this world, then ”?(on the Day of Hereafter he shall be of those brought up (for punishment

Divine lasting merits are preferable to fleeting joys

No doubt every vigilant conscience prefers the Divine goodly promises and His great lasting merits to a few days of enjoying of perishing bounties and fleeting joys which .have pain and toil in sequel

The Qur'ānic sentence /fahuwa lāqiyah/ (which he shall meet it) is an emphasis on the fact that the promise of Allah does not infringe, and it should be such, because to infringe the promise is either because of ignorance or powerlessness, none of which .is found in Divine Essence

The Qur'ānic sentence: “Then on the Day of Hereafter, he shall be of those brought up (for punishment)” refers to the calling before Allah (s.w.t.) for the reckoning of deeds. Some commentators have rendered it into calling to the Hell Fire, but the first commentary is more suitable. However, this meaning shows that these polluted persons are drawn to this scene unwillingly, and it must be so, because the horror of .reckoning and retribution has covered their whole entity

The application of the Qur'ānic phrase /ḥayāt-ud-dunyā/ ‘life of this world’, which has repeatedly been mentioned in different Suras of the Qur'ān, points the meanness of this mortal life in comparison with the ‘Hereafter life’ which is permanent and .perpetual

The Arabic word /duniyā/ is derived from /dunuw/ which originally means: ‘nearness in .?place, or time, or position

Then the terms /duniyā/ and /adnā/ have sometimes been used for the small creatures which are available, versus huge creatures, and sometimes it has been used for some mean things versus good and exalted things, and sometimes for ‘near’ versus ‘far’. And, in view of the fact that the life of this world in the face of the life of the next world is both small and worthless, and near, then the appellation of /hayāt-.ud-duniyā/ (the life of this world) is perfectly fitting

p: ۳۶۰

(٦٢) وَيَوْمَ يُنَادِيهِمْ فَيَقُولُ أَيْنَ شُرَكَاءِيَ الَّذِينَ كُنْتُمْ تَزْعُمُونَ

(٦٣) قَالَ الَّذِينَ حَقَّ عَلَيْهِمُ الْقَوْلُ رَبَّنَا هَؤُلَاءِ الَّذِينَ أَغْوَيْنَا أَغْوَيْنَاهُمْ كَمَا غَوَيْنَا تَبَرَّأْنَا إِلَيْكَ مَا كَانُوا إِيَّانَا يَعْبُدُونَ

(٦٤) وَقِيلَ ادْعُوا شُرَكَاءَكُمْ فَدَعَوْهُم فَلَمْ يَسْتَجِيبُوا لَهُمْ وَرَأَوُا الْعَذَابَ لَوْ أَنَّهُمْ كَانُوا يَهْتَدُونَ

And on the Day (when) He will call them and say: ‘Where are My associates whom “ .٦٢
”?’you were asserting

Those against whom the sentence has been confirmed will say: ‘Our Lord! These “ .٦٣
are they whom we led astray; we led them astray, as we were astray ourselves. To
”.’You we declare ourselves to be clear (of them). They were not unto us worshipping

And it will be said (unto them): ‘Call your associate (gods)’. So they will call upon “ .٦٤
them, but they will not answer them, and they will see the punishment and would wish
”.that they had been guided aright

Commentary, verses: ٦٢-٦٤

Point

Whoever calls others towards himself instead of Allah, the punishment of Allah is certain for him. We must not do something that we remain unable to answer for that .thing on the Day of Hereafter

Through these verses, the Qur’ān illustrates the scenes of Resurrection for pagans in a way that its consideration brings horror and causes man’s body to shake. The verse
:says

p: ٣٤١

And on the Day (when) He will call them and say: ‘Where are My associates whom “
”?’you were asserting

It is evident that this question is an objurgatory question, for on the Hereafter Day, when the curtains will be removed and everything is manifest, neither paganism is meaningful nor pagans have remained on their belief. So, this question is only a kind
.of reproach and punishment, or a kind of reprimand and retribution

But instead of pagans, that must answer this question themselves, their objects of worship will start speaking and express their hatred from them. We know that their objects of worship were sometimes idols made of stone and wood, and sometimes some sacred beings such as angels and Jesus Christ, and sometimes Jinns and Satans. Here, the third group will speak who will be referred to in this verse, which
:says

Those against whom the sentence has been confirmed will say: ‘Our Lord! These are “
they whom we led astray; we led them astray, as we were astray ourselves. To You
”.’we declare ourselves to be clear (of them). They were not unto us worshipping

The abovementioned verse is similar to Sura Yūnus, No. ١٠, verse ٢٨ which says: “... and their associates shall say: ‘It was not us (indeed) that you used to worship’.” Thus, the seductive objects of worship, such as: Pharaoh, Namrūd, and Satans and Jinns will proclaim their hatred from such worshippers and defend themselves. They will also negate even aberration from themselves and implicitly say that the worshippers
.followed them with their own accord

But it is clear that neither this negation has any effect nor that hatred and repudiation
.are useful, and they will surely share the sin of their worshippers

In Hereafter, every sinful person try to put his own sin on another's shoulder

It is worthy to note that on that Day every one of these sinful deviated persons will repudiate the other one and each of them try to put his own sin on another's shoulder

This is just like the thing we see its small example in this world with our own eyes. A group of persons gather with together to commit a crime. Then, after being captured, and attending in the court, they hate each other and try to put the fault on the neck of another one. This is the fate of the criminals and astray ones in this world and the next

Also, Sura 'Ibrāhīm, No. ١٤, verse ٢٢ indicates that, on the Day of Hereafter, Satan will say to his followers as follows: "... and I did not have any authority over you except that I called you and you responded me. Therefore, do not blame me, but blame ... yourselves

Concerning pagans, in Sura As-Sāffāt, No. ٣٧, we recite that they will conflict with each other and every one will count another a guilty one, but those whose work is temptation will explicitly reply them: "Nor had we any authority over you. Nay, it was you who were a people in obstinate rebellion!" (١)

However, after that they will be questioned about their objects of worship and they will remain impotent to answer. Their situation is explained as follows

"... ?(And it will be said (unto them): 'Call your associate (gods "

They are told to call their gods to help them but they, who know their objects of worship cannot do anything there, as a result of the intense horror and that they find nothing to help them, or because of obeying the command of Allah, Who

p: ٣٩٣

wants to disgrace such pagans and their astray objects of worship before the public, they will go to their gods and ask them to help them, but it is clear that they will not answer them. At this time, they will see the chastisement of Allah by their own eyes, and they gain nothing but failure and disgrace, because the only way of salvation is :Faith and righteous deed which they do not have. The verse says

So they will call upon them, but they will not answer them, and they will see the ... “
”.punishment and would wish that they had been guided aright

p: ۳۶۴

(٦٥) وَيَوْمَ يُنَادِيهِمْ فَيَقُولُ مَاذَا أَجَبْتُمُ الْمُرْسَلِينَ

(٦٦) فَعَمِيَتْ عَلَيْهِمُ الْأَنْبَاءُ يَوْمَئِذٍ فَهُمْ لَا يَتَسَاءَلُونَ

(٦٧) فَأَمَّا مَنْ تَابَ وَءَامَنَ وَعَمِلَ صَالِحًا فَعَسَىٰ أَنْ يَكُونَ مِنَ الْمُفْلِحِينَ

And on that Day He will call them and say: ‘What was the answer you gave to the “ .٦٥
”?’messengers

”.On that Day (all) tidings will be dimmed for them, nor will they ask each other “ .٦٦

But any that (in this life) repents, and believes, and works righteousness, haply he “ .٦٧
”.shall be one of the prosperous ones

Commentary, verses: ٦٥–٦٧

Point

.Every body is responsible before the call and invitation of the Divine prophets

On the Hereafter Day, people cannot prepare any answer for the just court of Allah
(s.w.t.) by means of cooperation, consultation and asking questions from each other

Next to the question about their objects of worship, the pagans will be asked another
:question about their reaction before the Divine prophets. The verse says

And on that Day He will call them and say: ‘What was the answer you gave to the “
”?’messengers

It is certain that, like the first question, they will not have any answer for this question.
If they say that they answered their invitation, it will be a lie, and a lie will have no
room there. If they say that they rejected the prophets, denigrated

them, called them sorcerers and insane ones, and struggled against them with weapons and killed both them and their followers, their statement will be the cause of their disgrace and misery

Pagans will have no answer but an absolute silence

On the Hereafter Day, when the prophets will be questioned that what people did in answer to their invitation and they will answer: "... 'We have no knowledge, verily You are the All-knowing of the Unseen'." , what can these blind-hearted pagans say in answer to this question

Therefore, in the next verse the Qur'ān implicitly says that they will have no answer to deliver, nor can they hear any answer from each other. The verse says

"On that Day (all tidings will be dimmed for them, nor will they ask each other "

It is worthy to note that, in the above verse, blindness and dumbness are attributed to 'tidings' not to them. It does not say that they will become blind, but it implies that all tidings will be blind to find them. The reason is that many times it happens that a person is not aware of something but it seems that the news turns round by tongues and finally comes to him, as many social news are scattered through this very way where neither are persons aware of them, nor are the news worthy of being scattered

Thus, all tidings will be covered for them, and they will find no answer for the question that what they answered to the Divine prophets and, therefore, there will remain an absolute silence for them as an answer

And, since the Qur'ān always leaves the door open for the sinners and pagans to return to the truth in what stage of mischief and pollution they may be, by the next
:verse it adds

But any that (in this life) repents, and believes, and works righteousness, haply he “
”.shall be one of the prosperous ones

Therefore, the way of felicity is summed up in three phrases: returning to Allah, Faith and righteous deeds in this world the result of which will certainly be: deliverance,
.salvation and prosperity

Though whoever has true Faith and righteous deed will surely be prosperous, the usage of the word /‘asā/ (haply) in the verse may be for the sake that this prosperity is conditioned to the existence and continuation of this state, and since the existence and continuation of this state is not certain for all the repentant, the word ‘haply’ has
.been used for it

Some commentators have also said that when this word, haply, is said by a generous personality, its concept is the certainty of the matter, and Allah is ‘The Most
.’Generous

(٦٨) وَرَبُّكَ يَخْلُقُ مَا يَشَاءُ وَيَخْتَارُ مَا كَانَ لَهُمُ الْخِيَرَةُ سُبْحَانَ اللَّهِ وَتَعَالَى عَمَّا يُشْرِكُونَ

(٦٩) وَرَبُّكَ يَعْلَمُ مَا تُكِنُّ صُدُورُهُمْ وَمَا يُعْلِنُونَ

(٧٠) وَهُوَ اللَّهُ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا هُوَ لَهُ الْحَمْدُ فِي الْأُولَى وَالْآخِرَةِ وَلَهُ الْحُكْمُ وَإِلَيْهِ تُرْجَعُونَ

And your Lord creates whatever He pleases, and He chooses: They have not the “ .٦٨
”!(choice. Glory be to Allah, and exalted be He above what they associate (with Him

” .And your Lord knows what their breasts conceal and what they manifest “ .٦٩

And He is Allah, there is no god but He! His is all praise in this (life) and the “ .٧٠
” .Hereafter, and His is the authority, and unto Him you shall be returned

Commentary, verses: ٦٨–٧٠

Point

The Absolute Power is Allah’s, and then the creation of existence and the law of life (religion) both belong to Him. Therefore, the choice of heavenly leader is in the hand .of Allah, not in the authority of people

These verses, in fact, are as an evidence for the negation of polytheism and falseness .of the belief of polytheists. The first verse says

”... ,And your Lord creates whatever He pleases “

Creation belongs to Him, and administration, authority, and choice are also under His :will and commandment. The verse continues saying

”... and He chooses: They have not the choice ...“

The authority of all things depends on His providence

The authority of creation is with Him, the authority of intercession is in His hand, and the authority of sending prophets is also in His will. Shortly speaking, the authority of all things depends on the Divine providence, His Pure Essence. Therefore, neither can idols do anything, nor even can the angels and prophets, save with His leave

However, Allah is the possessor of authority both in natural affairs and religious affairs, both of which originate from the rank of His creation

Yet, how do they pave the path of polytheism, and how do they go towards other than Allah

:Thus, at the end of the verse, the Holy Qur’ān says

”!(Glory be to Allah, and exalted be He above what they associate (with Him ...“

In the narrations of Ahl-ul-Bayt (a.s.), the above verse has been rendered into the authority and choice of Immaculate Imam (a.s.) from the side of Allah, and the Qur’ānic sentence: “They have not the choice” has also been adapted to this very meaning. This, in fact, is of the kind of stating the clear example, because protecting divine religion and choosing the immaculate leader for this aim is impossible but from (the side of Allah.)

The next verse, which is about the vast knowledge of Allah, is, indeed, an emphasis, or a reason, upon what was stated in the previous verse concerning the vast authority of Allah. It says

”And your Lord knows what their breasts conceal and what they manifest “

According to Tafsīr-i-Nūr-uth-Thaqalayn, Vol. ۴, P. ۱۳۶-۱

This His sovereignty over everything is a reason for His authority unto all things, and, in the meantime, it is a threat for the pagans who should not imagine that Allah is not aware of their intentions and plots

The last verse of the abovementioned verses is, in fact, as a conclusion and explanation for the previous verses in the field of negation of polytheism. It points to four qualities of the Attributes of Allah, all of which are derivatives of His creative power and His Will being independent. It says

”... !And He is Allah, there is no god but He “

How can an object of worship, except Him, be found while He is the only creator and all authorities belong to Him? Those who, as a pretext of intercession and the like of it, go to idols are seriously in error

Another thing is that all bounties, whether in this world and the next, are from His side, and this is the requisite of His absolute creative Power. Therefore, it says

”... ,His is all praise in this (life) and the Hereafter ...“

He is the Judge in both words

:The third is that He is the Judge in both worlds. The verse continues saying

”... ,and His is the authority ...“

The fourth is that the return of all men, for reckoning and receiving rewards and retribution, will be to Him. The verse says

”.and unto Him you shall be returned ...“

It is He Who has created us, and it is He Who is aware of our deeds, and it is He Who is the Judge of the Day of retribution; therefore the reckoning and reward of our deeds are in His hand, too

p:rv.

(٧١) قُلْ أَرَأَيْتُمْ إِنْ جَعَلَ اللَّهُ عَلَيْكُمُ اللَّيْلَ سَرْمَدًا إِلَى يَوْمِ الْقِيَامَةِ مَنْ إِلَهٌ غَيْرُ اللَّهِ يَأْتِيكُم بِضِيَاءٍ

أَفَلَا تَسْمَعُونَ

Say: ‘Have you thought, if Allah made the night everlasting for you till the Day of “ .٧١
Resurrection, what god other than Allah shall bring you illumination? Will you not
”?hear

Commentary, verse: ٧١

.The Arabic word /sarmad/, mentioned in this verse, means permanent and perpetual

Among the ways of knowing Allah there is the way of contemplation about extinction
or change of bounties. The change of day and night, of course, is one of the greatest
.Divine bounties and signs

The verse under discussion points to a great part of Divine bounties, which is both a
reason on Monotheism and negation of polytheism. From this point of view, it
completes the previous discussion, and it is an example of the bounties of Allah for
which He is eligible of being praised and glorified, a praise that was pointed out in the
previous verses. It is also the evidence on His authority in the system of creation and
.administration of this world

At first, it points to the great bounty of the light of the day, which is the cause of any
:movement. It says

Say: ‘Have you thought, if Allah made the night everlasting for you till the Day of “
Resurrection, what god

”?other than Allah shall bring you illumination? Will you not hear

Here, the word /diyā’/ (light) has been used, because the main purpose of ‘day’ is ‘light’, the same light that the life and living of all living beings depends on it. If there were not the sunlight, neither would a tree grow, nor could a flower smile, nor might a .bird fly, nor would exist a human being, nor would it rain a drop of rain

p: ۳۷۲

(٧٢) قُلْ أَرَأَيْتُمْ إِنْ جَعَلَ اللَّهُ عَلَيْكُمُ النَّهَارَ سَرْمَدًا إِلَى يَوْمِ الْقِيَامَةِ مَنْ إِلَهٌ غَيْرُ اللَّهِ يَأْتِيكُمْ بِاللَّيْلِ تَسْكُنُونَ فِيهِ أَفَلَا تُبْصِرُونَ

Say: ‘Have you thought, if Allah made the day everlasting for you till the Day of “ .٧٢
Resurrection, what god other than Allah shall bring you the night in which you rest? Do
”?you not then see

Commentary, verse: ٧٢

Only Allah is eligible for being worshipped

The existing system of the world of existence is arranged from the side of Allah, and if He wills He can change it to another system, because the power of Allah is the same .unto all beings

This verse refers to the bounty of darkness. It, addressing the Prophet (p.b.u.h.), :commands him to tell the people of Mecca who were busy worshipping idols

Say: ‘Have you thought, if Allah made the day everlasting for you till the Day of “
”... ?Resurrection, what god other than Allah shall bring you the night in which you rest

It is evident that they are not able to answer this question except that they say there is not anyone to do it. Consequently, the argument is completed to them and they must confess that there is not anyone eligible for being worshipped but Allah, the One.
:Therefore, it says

”?Do you not then see ...“

That is, do you not obtain knowledge by the way of insight? Do you not observe the day and the night, and do you not contemplate about them so that you know that they
?both are from the side of a Wise Administrator

(٧٣) وَمِنْ رَحْمَتِهِ جَعَلَ لَكُمُ اللَّيْلَ وَالنَّهَارَ لِتَسْكُنُوا فِيهِ وَلِتَبْتَغُوا مِنْ فَضْلِهِ وَلِعَلَّكُمْ تَشْكُرُونَ

And it is out of His Mercy that He has made for you the night and the day, that you “ .٧٣
” .may rest therein, and that you may seek of His grace, and that you may give thank

Commentary, verse: ٧٣

In the verses of the holy Qur’ān, the word ‘night’ is always mentioned before the word ‘day’. It may be for the reason that the darkness of the night substantially belongs to the earth and it is from the earth itself, but the light of the day is from the .sun which comes to the earth

:This verse, which is, in fact, the conclusion of the previous two verses, says

And it is out of His Mercy that He has made for you the night and the day, that you “
” .may rest therein, and that you may seek of His grace, and that you may give thank

Yes, the vastness of the expanse of Allah’s Mercy requires that He provides all the means of your life. From one side, we need to work, struggle, and run, which is not possible without the light of the day; and from another side, we need to rest and to .have tranquility, which naturally does not complete without the darkness of the night

Today, it has scientifically been proved that, because of light, all organs of the body of man become active and alive, such as: circulation of the blood, respiratory organs, the work of the heart, as well as other organs. And if light is too much, the cells will become tired and joy and cheerfulness gives its place to weariness. On the contrary, at night, the organs of the

.body go into a deep tranquility and rest, and get strength and joy by it

It is interesting that when in verse ۷۱ it speaks of the lasting night, at the end of verse it says: "... will you not hear" while at the end of verse ۷۲ it says: "Do you not then see?" This variation of meaning may be for the reason that the sense proportional to night is hearing and the sense proportional to day is sight. To this extreme the Qur'ān uses .exactness and precision

This is also noteworthy that at the end of this verse the subject of thanksgiving is mentioned; giving thank for the accurate system of light and darkness, a thanksgiving that causes man to know the Benefactor, and a thanksgiving which is the motive of .Faith in the doctrinal subjects

p: ۳۷۵

(٧٤) وَيَوْمَ يُنَادِيهِمْ فَيَقُولُ أَيْنَ شُرَكَائِيَ الَّذِينَ كُنْتُمْ تَزْعُمُونَ

And on the day when He shall call them and say: ‘Where are My partners whom “ .٧٤
”?you used to assert

Commentary, verse: ٧٤

Allah, the Almighty, has no partner. Whatever is counted as a partner for Him, is naught but an imagination and unfounded assumption. Therefore, those who associate anything with Allah (s.w.t.) must prepare themselves to have an answer on .the Day of Hereafter

The commentary of this verse, of course, was explained formerly and its repetition is for the sake that in the first time the aim was that they would confess their aberration, and here the aim is that they might be made understand that they are unable to bring any reasoning. Thus, Hereafter is the Day when the futility of the objects of worship and frustration of polytheists will appear. It is a Day when all objects of worship in their vanity and all polytheists in their being unable to give .answer are equal

However, it is cited in the commentary of Jawāmi‘-ul-Jāmi‘ that Allah, the Glorified, repeats the scorn of pagans for their disbelief in order to claim that paganism causes the Wrath of Allah more than any other sin, as Monotheism is the most inclusive thing .for gaining the consent and pleasure of Allah

(٧٥) وَنَزَعْنَا مِنْ كُلِّ أُمَّةٍ شَهِيدًا فَقُلْنَا هَاتُوا بُرْهَانَكُمْ فَعَلِمُوا أَنَّ الْحَقَّ لِلَّهِ وَضَلَّ عَنْهُمْ مَا كَانُوا يَفْتَرُونَ

And We will draw forth from every nation a witness, and say: ‘Bring you your “ .٧٥ proof!’ Then shall they know that the Truth is Allah’s, and that which they used to “ .forge shall depart from them

Commentary, verse: ٧٥

Point

.Pagans have not any logic and demonstrative proof

On the Day of Hereafter, the witnesses come out from their own nations. On that Day, the sinful persons will think of denying their crimes, but the existence of witnesses :cause them not to do anything. So, this verse says

’!And We will draw forth from every nation a witness, and say: ‘Bring you your proof “ ” ...

:It is at this time that everything will be manifested, and as the verse says

Then shall they know that the Truth is Allah’s, and that which they used to forge ... “ ”.shall depart from them

According to some other verses of the Holy Qur’ān, these witnesses will be the Divine prophets, and every prophet is the witness of his own nation, while the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.), who is the seal of the prophets, will be a witness over all prophets and nations, as Sura An-Nisā’, No. ٤, verse ٤١ says: “How will it be, then, when We bring ”?(from every people a witness and We bring you a witness over those (witnesses

Thus, there will be held a meeting at the presence of prophets and Messengers. In -this great meeting, those blind

hearted arrogant pagans will be put under judgment. It is at that time that they will be acquainted with the depth of the calamity of paganism and will understand the .rightfulness of the Lord and futility of the idols clearly

In Hereafter there will remain but the truth

It is interesting that the Qur'ān in the above mentioned verse says: "... and that which they used to forge shall depart from them." That is, their baseless imaginations about idols will completely be dismissed from their minds, because resurrection plain is the place of Truth and there is no room for falsehood there. In that place, falsehood will be lost and disappear. If in this world falsehood hides itself under the curtain of truth and is busy with deceit for a few days, in Hereafter the curtains of deceit and trick will .disappear and there will remain nothing but the Truth

Upon the commentary of the Qur'ānic sentence: "And We will draw forth from every nation a witness, ..." Imam Bāqir (a.s.) in a tradition has said: "And from this nation [\(there will also be chosen its Imam.\)](#)"

This noble statement refers to this fact that in any age there will be necessary to exist an immaculate witness, and the abovementioned tradition is of the kind of statement .of the extension of this meaning

p: ۳۷۸

Point

Korah infatuated of his excessive wealth, was exalting – Korah caused by Allah to be swallowed by earth

(۷۶) إِنَّ قَارُونَ كَانَ مِنْ قَوْمِ مُوسَى فَبَغَى عَلَيْهِمْ وَاَتَيْنَاهُ مِنَ الْكُنُوزِ مَا إِنَّ مَفَاتِحَهُ لَتَنُوءُ بِالْعُصْبَةِ أُولَى الْقُوَّةِ إِذْ قَالَ لَهُ قَوْمُهُ لَا تَفْرَحْ إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يُحِبُّ الْفَرِحِينَ

Verily Korah was of the people of Moses, but he oppressed them; and We had “ ۷۶. given him of the treasures so much that its keys would have been a burden to a company of men endowed with strength. Once his people said to him: ‘Do not exult, ”.’for Allah does not love the exultant

Commentary, verse: ۷۶

Point

.Mentioning the historical examples is a gazing-stock for the coming generations

Having a good background is not a proof for being good in the future or renunciation .of the present deviations

The wonderful story life of Moses and his struggle against Pharaoh was explained in a part of former verses of this Sura, and what had to be said about them was stated .sufficiently

In another part of the verses of this Sura, the struggle of the Children of Israel against a rich arrogant man among them called Korah is referred to. He was a wealthy man .who was the manifestation of wealth accompanied with pride, deceit, and contumacy

In principle, during his lifetime, Moses struggled against three important oppressive tyrannical powers: Pharaoh, who was the sample of governmental power, Korah, who was the manifestation of wealth, and Samerī, who was the example of art, deceit, and .elusion

Although the most important struggle of Moses (a.s.) was against the governmental power, the recent two struggles have importance for themselves and contain some .great instructive lessons

Korah was a close relative of Moses

It is said that Korah was a close relative of Moses (a.s.), (his cousin (son of a paternal uncle), or uncle, or son of his maternal aunt); and, from the point of information, he had a considerable knowledge about the matters of Torah. At first he was one of the believers, but, later, pride and wealth drew him towards disbelief and sent him into the depth of the ground, made him fight against the messenger of Allah, and his amazing death became a lesson for all. The explanation of this event will be discussed .later in the concerning verse

:The Qur'ān says

”... ;Verily Korah was of the people of Moses, but he oppressed them “

His wealth was the cause of his disobedience

The cause of this oppression and disobedience was that he had obtained a great deal of wealth, and since he had not enough capacity and strong faith, this abundant wealth deceived him and drew him towards deviation and arrogance. The Qur'ān :continues saying

and We had given him of the treasures so much that its keys would have been a ...“
”... .burden to a company of men endowed with strength

The Arabic word /mafātiḥ/ is the plural form of /maftaḥ/ in the sense of ‘a place .wherein something is stored’, like the chests that properties are stored up in them

Thus, the concept of the verse is that Korah had so much gold, silver and precious properties that a group of strong men could move its box with difficulty

And, regarding that the Arabic word /‘uṣbah/ means a body of men (from ten to forty) who are with together and are strong enough and they have held each other like nerves, makes it clear that how heavy the jewels and precious properties of Korah had been

The term /tanū’/ is derived from /nū’/ which means: to raise with difficulty and heavily, and it is used for a heavy burden that when a man is carrying it, because of heaviness, it causes him to sway this side and that side

What was said in the above about the Arabic term /mafātiḥ/ is something that a very large group of commentators and lexicologists have accepted, while some other commentators have said that the term /mafātiḥ/ is the plural form of /miftāḥ/ which means key. They say that the keys of the treasures of Korah were so heavy that several strong men could carry them with difficulty

Those who have chosen this meaning have got in trouble to themselves to adjust it that how it is possible to be so many keys of treasures, and, however, the first commentary is more clear and more correct

Allah does not like the proud exultant

Now, it is better to see what the Children of Israel told Korah. The Holy Qur’ān implicitly says: remember when his people told him not to have so much joy flourished with pride, negligence and arrogance, because Allah does not like the proud exultant.
:The verse says

”.’Once his people said to him: ‘Do not exult, for Allah does not love the exultant ...“

(٧٧) وَابْتَغِ فِيمَا آتَاكَ اللَّهُ الدَّارَ الْآخِرَةَ وَلَا تَنْسَ نَصِيبَكَ مِنَ الدُّنْيَا وَأَحْسِنَ كَمَا أَحْسَنَ اللَّهُ إِلَيْكَ وَلَا تَبْغِ الْفَسَادَ فِي الْأَرْضِ إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يُحِبُّ الْمُفْسِدِينَ

And seek by means of what Allah has given you, the abode of the Hereafter, and “ .٧٧ do not forget your portion in this world, and be good (to others) just as Allah has been good to you, and do not seek to make mischief in the land, verily Allah does not love the mischief-makers.”

Commentary, verse: ٧٧

Point

Every body ought to suffice to his own share in this world and let the rest for Hereafter. Wealth and property can become a means for the prosperity in Hereafter

In this verse, next to the advice mentioned in the previous holy verse, there are four other expressive and instructive exhortations here for Korah which form a complete five-ring collection. At first, it says

“... ,And seek by means of what Allah has given you, the abode of the Hereafter “

It points to the fact that, in spite of the imagination of some ill-disposed persons, wealth and property is not a bad thing; the important thing is that we must see in which way it is used. If it is applied in the way of seeking the good abode of the Hereafter, what is better than that? If it is a mean of pride, negligence, injustice, oppression, and sensuality, what, then, can be worse than it

This is the same logic that Amir-ul-Mu'minīn Ali's famous sentence reminds about the world. He said: “ ... If one sees

through it (the world), it would bestow him sight, but if one has his eye on it, it would blind him.”(۱) And Korah was a person who had the power of performing a lot of social good affairs with those abundant properties he had; what was use of it when his pride ?did not let him see the facts

By the second advice, it is added that he should decrease his portion from this world:
:the verse says

”... ,and do not forget your portion in this world ...“

This is a fact that every person has a proper limit share of this world, viz., the amount of properties he uses for his body, clothing, and residence is a definite amount, and the additional ones are never consumed by him; therefore, one must not forget this .fact

How much food can a person eat? How many pieces of clothing can he wear? How many houses and how many cars can he have? And how many shrouds does he take with him when he dies? The rest, however, is the share of others and man is the .depository of them

How nice Haḍrat Amir-ul-Mu'minīn Ali (a.s.) stated when he said: “O' son of Adam! Whatever you earn beyond your basic needs you will only keep vigil over it for (others.”(۲)

There is another interpretation upon the abovementioned sentence cited in Islamic narrations and the statements of the commentators which adapts to the above interpretation and, perhaps, both of them are its purpose. It is that Ma'āny-ul-'Akhbār, narrates from Amir-ul-Mu'minīn Ali (a.s.) who upon the commentary of the Qur'ānic sentence: “...do not forget your portion in this world, ...” said: “Do not forget your health and

p: ۳۸۳

strength, and your opportunity, and your youth, and your mirth, and by means of
(these (five bounties) seek out the Hereafter.” (1)

According to this commentary of the holy verse, the abovementioned statement is a warning to all human beings that they should not lose the opportunities and capitals,
because they pass on like cloud

:The third advice is as follows

”... ,and be good (to others) just as Allah has been good to you ...“

This is also a fact that one must always expect the good of Allah and ask for any kind of goodness and all kinds of expectation from Him. In this condition, how can he ignore the explicit demand of others and pass by all of these clear things
?inattentively

In other words, as Allah has bestowed them to you, you ought to bestow (some of them) to others. A similar meaning to this is mentioned in Sura An-Nūr, No. ۲۴, verse ۲۲ in connection with forgiveness and remittal. It says: “... And they should pardon and
”... ?overlook. Do you not like that Allah should forgive you

Not the totality of bounties belong to us

This sentence can be rendered like this that sometimes Allah gives man some great bounties so that he does not need them all in his personal life. Allah gives him a powerful wisdom which is useful not only for running a person but also for running a country. He gives him knowledge that not only an individual but also a society can take
.benefit from it. He gives him a wealth which is appropriate for great social programs

The implication of these kinds of Divine merits is that the totality of them does not
belong to you, but you are the agent

p: ۳۸۴

of Allah in giving them to others. Allah has bestowed this merit on you that He
.manages His servants by your hand

:Finally, the fourth advice is as follows

and do not seek to make mischief in the land, verily Allah does not love the ... “
”.mischief-makers

This is also a fact that many of the faithless rich people, sometimes as the result of the madness of avariciousness and sometimes because of self-superiority, commit mischief and draw the society into deprivation and poverty. They usually take everything in their own authority. They wish people to be some servants and slaves for them, and whoever protests they try to destroy him, and if they cannot, they desert him through slander by means of their secret agents. Thus, they draw the
.society towards corruption and decadence

.Now it is understood that these advisers tried, at first, to break the pride of Korah

.In the second stage, they warned him that the world is a means, not an aim

.In the third stage, they warned him that he could use only a small part of what he had

In the fourth stage, they reminded him this fact that he should not forget Allah had been good to him, then he had to be good to others either, else his merits would be
.taken from him

In the fifth stage, they told him to avoid making mischief in the earth, which is the
.direct result of former four principles

It is not completely definite that who these exhorters were but it is certain that they
.were some knowledgeable, pious, aware, exact, and brave men

Some commentators have thought that probably Moses (a.s.) himself did it but it is very improbable, because the Qur’ān in previous verse says: “... When his people said
.”... to him

p: ۳۸۵

(٧٨) قَالَ إِنَّمَا أُوتِيْتُهُ عَلَىٰ عِلْمٍ عِنْدِي أَوَلَمْ يَعْلَم أَنَّ اللَّهَ قَدْ أَهْلَكَ مِن قَبْلِهِ مِنَ الْقُرُونِ مَنْ هُوَ أَشَدُّ مِنْهُ قُوَّةً وَأَكْثَرُ جَمْعًا وَلَا يُسْأَلُ عَن ذُنُوبِهِمُ الْمُجْرِمُونَ

Said he (Korah): ‘I have been given this (wealth) only because of a knowledge that “ .٧٨ is in me.’ Did he not know that Allah had destroyed before him of the generations that were mightier in strength than he and greater in amassing (wealth)? And (then even) ”.the guilty shall not be asked about their sins

Commentary, verse: ٧٨

Point

.To boast for one’s knowledge is a manner of people like Korah

The pride for having knowledge changes man so selfish that he accepts the function of no one and nothing any more “...‘I have been given this (wealth) only because of a ”... ’knowledge that is in me

We must think of wealth and power as Divine bounties, not the fruit of our own knowledge and effort. With that very state of pride and haughtiness, which originates :from his abundant wealth, Korah used to say as the Qur’ān announces

Said he (Korah): ‘I have been given this (wealth) only because of a knowledge that is “ ”... ’.in me

Korah used to say implicitly that it was not their business that what he did with his wealth. He said he did not need any one to guide him how to use his wealth, because .he himself obtained it with his own knowledge and awareness

p: ٣٨٦

Korah said he knew what to do better than others

Moreover, Korah implicitly added that certainly Allah knew him eligible of having wealth that He had given it to him and He had also taught him the way of using it. Then, he said, he knew better than others what to do, and it was not necessary that .they interfere in his affairs

Besides all of these, I have taken trouble, tolerated pains, and was deeply afflicted in order to gather this wealth; why do they not also take trouble if they have eligibility and ability? I am not bothering them; and if they are poor, it is the better that they .remain hungry until they die

These are the decade and disgrace logics that many faithless wealthy people often .express in reply to those who advise them

This point is also worthy noting that the Qur'ān has left this matter secret that in ?obtaining this wealth to which knowledge of his does Korah emphasize

?Is it the knowledge of alchemy, as some commentators have said

?Is it the knowledge of commerce, agriculture, and the arts of industry

Or is it his special administration by which he could obtain that enormous wealth? Or it ?refers to all of them

It is not improbable that the verse has a vast meaning and encompasses all of these .things

It is not known, of course, that the knowledge of alchemy, the knowledge by which) (gold is made from copper and the like, is a fable or a reality

:Here, the Qur'ān gives a harsh answer to Korah and others like him. It says

Did he not know that Allah had destroyed before him of the generations that were ...“
”... ?(mightier in strength than he and greater in amassing (wealth

Korah says that whatever he has is by means of knowledge, but he has forgotten that there were many persons who were more knowledgeable, stronger and wealthier than him while they could not escape from the punishment of Allah

The fair-minded ones of the Children of Israel had told Korah that it was Allah Who had given him that wealth but this impolite and bold man answered them: "... 'I have been given this (wealth) only because of a knowledge that is in me'. ...", while Allah, in the above verse, manifests his strength in the fact of His Will

At the end of the verse, he is warned again by a very short sentence, where it says

"And (then even) the guilty shall not be asked about their sins ..."

In principle, there will not be any time for asking and answering. It is a decisive, painful, violent and sudden divine punishment

That is, today the aware men of the Children of Israel advise Korah and give him respite to contemplate and give answer, but when the argument is completed and the Divine punishment comes, surely there will not be any respite for contemplation or uttering some vain and haughty words. As soon as the Divine punishment comes, they will be destroyed

There will arise a question here inquiring that what is the objective of the question that the guilty are negated from? Is it in this world or in the next world

Some of the commentators have chosen the first one while some others have taken the second, and there is no matter that both of them to be the objective of it; i.e. neither they will be asked in the world at the time of sudden punishment so that they bring some excuses and count them faultless, nor in the Hereafter, because in that place everything is manifest and as

[the Qur'ān](#) says: “The guilty ones shall be recognized by their marks, ...” [\(۱\)](#)

Thus the verse under discussion is consistent with the verse which says: “And on that [Day](#) neither man nor jinn shall be asked about his sin.” [\(۲\)](#)

There comes forth another question here which is not consistent with the holy verse [that](#) says: “So, by your Lord, We shall surely question them all (in the Hereafter),” [\(۳\)](#)

This question can also be answered in two forms: the first is that there are different places of standing in the Hereafter. In some of them the guilty are questioned while in some others every thing is clear and there is no need of questioning

Another thing is that question is of two kinds: the question of investigation, and the question of blame. In the Hereafter there is no need of ‘the question of investigation’, because all things are manifest, but the reproach question is found there and this is a kind of punishment for the guilty. It is just like the question that the father asks from his degenerate son and says: “Did I not serve you so much? And was the recompense of those service treachery and corruption?” (While both of them are aware of the affairs and the purpose of the father is to blame the son

p: ۳۸۹

Sura Ar-Rahmān, No. ۵۵, verse ۴۱ -۱

Ibid, verse ۳۹ -۲

Sura Al-Hijr, No. ۱۵, verse ۹۲ -۳

(٧٩) فَخَرَجَ عَلَى قَوْمِهِ فِي زِينَتِهِ قَالَ الَّذِينَ يُرِيدُونَ الْحَيَاةَ الدُّنْيَا يَا لَيْتَ لَنَا مِثْلَ مَا أُوتِيَ قَارُونُ إِنَّهُ لَذُو حَظٍّ عَظِيمٍ

So he went forth unto his people in his adornment. Those who aspired for the life “ .٧٩ of this world said: ‘We wish we had like what Korah has been given! Verily he owns a
”.’great fortune

Commentary, verse: ٧٩

Korah was an example of this quality

When the power and wealth are in the hand of some negligent persons and they are the cause of boasting, gaudiness, and luxury; and showing the wealth and property to
.others boastfully, this manner is one of the qualities of Korah

The boastful wealthy persons usually afflict with kinds of madness, one branch of which is ‘the madness of exhibiting wealth’. They take pleasure to show their own wealth to others. They feel peace of mind when they ride a good precious mount and pass through the crowd of the poor while, by making dust unto their faces, they
.despise them

This showing wealth is often a calamity for their lives, because it fosters grudge in
.people’s hearts

This evil action may have a motive such as: ‘Allurement of covetous persons’ and the like, but they do this deed even without this motive. This is a kind of desire, not a
.program and plan

However, Korah was not an exception from this law, but he was considered as a clear
:example of it. The Qur’ān has stated it through a sentence in this verse. It says

”... .So he went forth unto his people in his adornment “

The application of the Arabic word /fī/ (in) in the phrase: ‘in his adornment’ expresses this fact that he used all his own ability and power in order to show his final adornment and his ultimate wealth, and with no words, it is clear that how large .activities he can do by this wealth

Of course, there are many stories or legends cited in history upon this field which are not necessary to be mentioned. But, as usual, here people were divided into two groups: ١) The majority of people who were some mammonish persons and when they saw that gazing scene, their hearts shook, and gasped moaning, and they wished they could be in the place of Korah, even for one day, or one hour, or one moment. They thought what a sweet and attractive life they could have, and how a :happy and pleasant world it were for them! The Qur’ān says

Those who aspired for the life of this world said: ‘We wish we had like what Korah ...“
”.’has been given! Verily he owns a great fortune

They said that praise be upon Korah and upon his abundant wealth! What a rank and grandeur! And what a glory it is that history does not contain anything similar to that!
.This is a God-given glory. ... and some statements like them

In fact, here the furnace of the trial of Allah became hot. From one side, Korah is in the middle of the furnace and he has to be examined for his arrogance; and, on the other .side, the mammonists of the Children of Israel are around this furnace

The painful punishment, of course, is the punishment that exists after such an .exhibition and from that height he falls down into the depth of the ground

(٨٠) وَقَالَ الَّذِينَ أُوتُوا الْعِلْمَ وَيَلَكُمْ ثَوَابُ اللَّهِ خَيْرٌ لِمَنْ ءَامَنَ وَعَمِلَ صَالِحًا وَلَا يُلْقَاهَا إِلَّا الصَّابِرُونَ

And those who were given (true) knowledge said: ‘Woe to you! Allah’s reward is “ ٨٠ .
better for him who believes and acts righteously, and none shall attain it save the
”.’patient

Commentary, verse: ٨٠

The real knowledge draws man towards Hereafter, piety, and righteous deed. An aware learned man is he whom the dazzling glare of the world might not attract, and his manner can advise the mammonist ones and affect them

However, besides this large group of mammonist, whom were referred to in the previous verse, there were also several learned, thoughtful, pious, and faithful people present there whose level of thought was above and superior than these affairs. Those were some men who did not estimate the personality of their people with the criterion of gold and force. They were those who did not seek the values in the material potentialities, and always used to laugh at these kinds of exhibitions mockingly, and belittled these empty minds. Yes, a group of such men attended there, as the Qur’ān says

And those who were given (true) knowledge said: ‘Woe to you! Allah’s reward is “
”... ,better for him who believes and acts righteously

:Then, they added

”.’and none shall attain it save the patient ...“

Those who prove steadfastness against exiting dazzling glare of the ornaments of the world; those who stand firm like

mountains in the Divine trials for wealth, property, fear, and calamity, yes these ones
are eligible for the Divine rewards

It is certain that the purpose of the Qur'ānic phrase: "Those who were given (true) knowledge" is the faithful learned men of the Children of Israel among whom there were some great men such as 'Yūsha'. It is interesting that against the Qur'ānic sentence: "Those who aspired for the life of this world", mentioned in the previous verse, about the first group, the Qur'ān does not apply the sentence: "Those who aspired for the life of Hereafter", but it emphasizes only on 'knowledge', because 'knowledge' is the main origin and root of faith, steadfastness, eager and love to the
.Divine reward, and the abode of Hereafter

By the way, the application of the sentence: "Those who were given (true) knowledge" is a severe answer to Korah who considered himself a knowledgeable one. The Qur'ān implies that these are true knowledgeable whose level of thought is very high, not the arrogant, obstinate and proud Korah. Thus, we see that the origin and root of
.all blessings and bounties returns to real knowledge

p: ۳۹۳

(٨١) فَخَسَفْنَا بِهِ وَبِدَارِهِ الْأَرْضَ فَمَا كَانَ لَهُ مِنْ فِئَةٍ يَنْصُرُونَهُ مِنْ دُونِ اللَّهِ وَمَا كَانَ مِنَ الْمُنتَصِرِينَ

And We caused the earth to swallow up him and his house, then for him there was “ ٨١
”no group to help him against (the wrath of) Allah, nor could he defend himself

Commentary, verse: ٨١

Man can spiritually move alongside two curves: toward upward that he reaches
.ascension and toward downward that he goes down deeply into the lowliness

.The final end of amassing wealth is often miser, pride and destruction

By this action, Korah caused his disobedience to reach its climax, but regarding this
matter there has been recorded in history and narrations another event that is the
:sign of Korah’s ultimate impudence, it is as follows

One day Moses (a.s.) told Korah that Allah had commanded Moses to take the right of
the needy (Zakāt) of his property. Then Korah with a simple calculation understood
how great amount of money he had to pay in this way. He refused it, and in order to
exonerate himself, he struggled against Moses (a.s.). Once he stood among a rich
group of the Children of Israel and said: “O people! Moses has intended to devour your
properties. He brought the command of prayer and you accepted it; you accepted all
other things, too; do you also bear to give him your property?” They said: “No. But how
”?can we stand against him

Here, Korah thought of a Satanic action. He said: “I have thought a very good way for
it. In my opinion, we must produce

a file of the act of indecency for him. We must send for a bad woman among the prostitutes of the Children of Israel and tell her to go to Moses and accuse him that he had a liaison with her. They approved it and sent for that kind of woman and told her whatever she demanded they would give her for the act that she might attest that Moses had a liaison with her. The woman accepted that suggestion. This was from one side, on the other side Korah went to Moses and said it was better that he (a.s.) would gather the Children of Israel and recite the commands of Allah for them. Moses .accepted it and gathered them in one place

People said to Moses to reiterate the ordinances of his Lord. Moses said that He had commanded him that they should not worship any one other than Him, they should regard for kinship, and do so and so; and in regard for an adulterer He has ordered .that if it was an adultery (fornication with a married one) he had to be stoned

At this time, those rich people of the Children of Israel who had conspired said: “Even if that man is you yourself!” He (a.s.) answered: “Yes, if it is I myself.” Here, they made their shamelessness that reached its climax and said: “We know that you have committed this action yourself and you have associated with that woman who is a prostitute.” Then, they immediately sent after that particular bad woman and told her to say her attestation. Moses addressed her and said: “I administer you an oath by ”.Allah to say the reality clearly

By hearing this statement, the bad woman shook severely, trembled and was touched at heart. She said: “Now that you say so I tell the truth manifestly. These people invited me and promised to pay me a heavy reward that I accuse you; but I bear ”.witness that you are pure and you are the messenger of Allah

Another narration indicates that that woman said: “Woe on me! I have committed many wrong actions, but I have not denigrated the messenger of Allah.” Then she showed the two purses of money that they had given her and said whatever was to say

Moses (a.s.) fell prostrated and wept, and it was then that the command of the punishment of Korah, the evildoer, was issued

This very narration denotes that Allah gave the command of /xasf/ (swallow) at Moses (disposal.)

:In this regard, the Qur’ān says

”... ,And We caused the earth to swallow up him and his house “

Yes, when inordinacy contumacy and humiliation of the poor believers, as well as plotting against the pure messenger of Allah, reaches its peak, the Power of Allah works and puts an end to the life of the plotters. It destroys them so severely that their life becomes a gazing-stock for all

The act of /xasf/, which here means: to sink, and being concealed into the earth, has happened many times during the history of man. It occurs when a horrible earthquake comes and the ground splits and swallows a city or some villages. But this one was different with other instances. Its main prey was only Korah, his house, and his treasures

Strange! Pharaoh sinks in the waves of Nile; Korah sinks in the depth of the ground; water, which is the source of life, is commissioned to destroy the people of Pharaoh; and the ground, which is the place of comfort, becomes the graveyard of Korah and Korah-like people

p: ۳۹۶

It is certain that Korah was not the only inhabitant of that house. It was he and his entourage; he and his confederates, he and his unjust cruel friends. All of those :people sank into the depth of the ground. The verse continues saying

then for him there was no group to help him against (the wrath of) Allah, nor could ...“
”he defend himself

Neither those who received rations from him, nor his loyal friends, nor his wealth and properties, could save him from the Divine punishment, and all of them sank into the .ground

p: ۳۹۷

(٨٢) وَأَصْرِيحَ الَّذِينَ تَمَنَّوْا مَكَانَهُ بِالْأَمْسِ يَقُولُونَ وَيَكَأَنَّ اللَّهَ يَبْسُطُ الرِّزْقَ لِمَن يَشَاءُ مِنْ عِبَادِهِ وَيَقْدِرُ لَوْلَا أَن مَنَّ اللَّهُ عَلَيْنَا لَخَسَفَ بِنَا وَيَكَأَنَّهُ لَا يُفْلِحُ الْكَافِرُونَ

And (by seeing Korah's annihilation) those who yearned for his position the day " ٨٢ before were saying: 'Ah! That Allah enlarges the sustenance for whomever He pleases, of His servants, or restricts it. Had not Allah been gracious to us, He might ". 'have made the earth swallow us, too. Ah! (know) that the unbelievers do not prosper

Commentary, verse: ٨٢

Point

Sometimes it happens that a supplication is not accepted or a desire is not obtained, .and this very thing is the greatest grace and favour of Allah upon man

This noble verse illustrates the surprising change of the spectators who yesterday were enraptured and rejoiced by seeing the glorious rank of Korah and desired that they were in his place forever, or at least, for a moment. This scene is, indeed, :wonderful and instructive. The verse says

And (by seeing Korah's annihilation) those who yearned for his position the day " before were saying: 'Ah! That Allah enlarges the sustenance for whomever He "... .pleases, of His servants, or restricts it

They said that it was proved for them that day that no one has anything from him and whatever exists is from the side of Allah. Neither His grant is the reason of His consent and pleasure from a person, nor his restriction is the reason for the absence of his value before the presence of Allah. It is by

means of these very properties that He puts individuals and nations under examination and makes their conducts and morals manifest

Then, they thought that if Allah accepted their invocation and put them in the place of Korah yesterday, what could they do that day

:Therefore, they decided to thank for that bounty of Allah and said

.Had not Allah been gracious to us, He might have made the earth swallow us, too ...“

” ...

”?Ah! (know) that the unbelievers do not prosper ...“

Now we see the truth with our own eyes and understand the result of pride and negligence as well as the end of disbelief and lust. We also realize that how terrible

these kinds of lives are which have a charming landscape

By the way, it is understood from the recent sentence of this story that the end of proud Korah was that he died with infidelity and faithlessness, though one day he was in the row of the readers of Torah and was counted among the learned men of the Children of Israel, and he was one of the close relatives of Moses (a.s

:some points

The story of Korah, the sample of a proud rich man, has been stated in the Qur'ān through seven verses in a very interesting way, and it removes the curtain from the facts of many lives of human beings

This story makes it clear that the pride and lust of wealth sometimes draws man towards kinds of madness; the madness of exhibiting the wealth and showing it to others, and the madness of taking delight from despising the poor

And also the same pride and unlimited love to gold and silver sometimes causes man to commit the most hideous and shameful sins. For example, he stands against the pure prophet of Allah, and struggles against the Truth, and even he charges the most shameless accusations to the most sincere men, and he may even use of his wealth in
.taking from some bad women to reach his aim

Pride originated from wealth usually does not let man to hearken the advice of some
.godly advisers and the benevolent statements

They have provided this imaginary splendid life while in their city, and sometimes on their close neighbourhood, there are some deprived persons who usually sleep hungry at night; and it is surprising that their conscience has become so feeble that
.they do not feel the least inconvenience from this painful situation

Sometimes their animals have the most comfortable life, and they enjoy even the existence of teacher, physician, and proper medicine while there are some oppressed people living in their neighbourhood who have the worst conditions of life; or they are sick, moaning in the bed because of pain while they have neither a physician nor any
.medicine

When we discuss these affairs about some particular persons in a society, and sometimes about a particular country, it means that it is a country as that of Korah opposite to other countries, of the world, as we see, in our time, about America and
.many counties of Europe

They have provided the most glorious life for themselves by exploitation of the people of the third world and those of poor countries, so that sometimes their extra food stuffs are wasted and if they were gathered in a correct way, they would

be enough to satiate millions of hungry men. Sometimes they even pour their extra
.wheat into the sea

When we say ‘poor countries’ it does not mean that they are really poor, but they are,
in fact, some thief-stricken and robbed people. Sometimes the best and the most
valuable mains are in their disposal, but these great plunders take all of those
.precious capitals and cause them to be poor

These are some people with qualities of Korah who have built the foundation of their
castles of cruelty upon the ruin houses of the oppressed; and the situation of the
world will be in the same form unless the oppressed of the world unite and send them,
like Korah, to the depth of the ground. Those oppressors drink wine and laugh joyfully
.while these oppressed ones must always be sad and do weep

Of course, it must not be considered from what was said that Islam has a negative
position in the face of wealth and opposes it. It must not be understood that Islam
admires the poor and invites Muslims to poverty or takes it as a means for reaching
the spiritual accomplishments. On the contrary, Islam emphasizes on wealth as an
effective means, and in Sura Al-Baqarah, No. ٢, verse ١٨٠ wealth has been rendered
.into /xayr/ (goodness

Imam Bāqir (a.s.) has said: “The world is a good help for obtaining the Hereafter.”^(١)

The verses under discussion, which reproach the proud rich Korah the most severely,
is an expressive evidence for this subject; but Islam approves a wealth by which the
abode of Hereafter can be sought, as the learned men of the Children of Israel told
Korah: “And seek by means of what Allah has

given you, the abode of the Hereafter ...”^(١). Islam approves a wealth in which there is good unto all and it contains the meaning of: “... be good (to others) just as Allah has been good to you, ...”^(٢) Islam admires a wealth in which this meaning is seen that the Qur’ān says: “... and so not forget your portion in this world, ...”^(٣)

Finally, Islam seeks for a wealth which is not the cause of mischief on the earth, forgetting the human values, being involved in the race of amassing wealth and ‘multiplication of properties and children,’ and does not draw man toward ‘self-admiration’ and ‘humiliating others’, and even opposing the Divine prophets

Wealth must be a means for the benefit of others, for filling the present economic gaps, for using as a remedy upon the worrying wounds of the deprived and applying for removing the needs and difficulties of the oppressed

Being interested in such a wealth, with such aims, it is not an attachment to the world; it is an attachment to the Hereafter. As it is said in a tradition that one of the companions of Imam Sādiq (a.s.) came to him and said as a grievance that they were after the world and were interested in it, (and they were afraid of becoming mammonists

Imam Sādiq (a.s.) (who knew the purity and virtue of that man) said: “What do you want to do with this wealth of the world?” The man answered: ‘I want to supply the expenditure of myself and my household, help my relatives, spend in the way of Allah, and perform pilgrimage (Hajj) and lesser pilgrimage

p: ٤٠٢

The current Sura, verse ٧٧ –١

Ibid –٢

Ibid –٣

Umrah).” Imam Sādiq (a.s.) said: “This is not to seek the world, this is to seek the ‘
” .Hereafter

Here, the corruption of the belief of two groups is made manifest: a group of people who are apparently Muslims but they are unaware of the teachings of Islam and introduce Islam as the supporter of the tyrant oppressors; and a group of self-interested enemies who want to show the feature of Islam wrongly and try to introduce it as a religion opposite to wealth and adherent of poverty. They want to say in principle, a poor nation cannot live freely and honourably; poverty is the means of dependence; poverty is the source of disgrace both in this world and the next; and .poverty invites man to sin and pollution

A tradition from Imam Sādiq (a.s.) says: “The needlessness that hinders you from injustice (and violating others’ right) is better than the poverty that makes you commit [\(sin.”](#)

The Islamic communities must try and do their best to become rich and needless from others (none Islamic nations), so much that they become independent and stand on their own feet. As the result of poverty, they must not devote their modesty, honour and independence for depending on others, and know that this is the noble line of .Islam

p: ۴۰۳

Section ٩: The Apostle (Muhammad) Promised triumph

Point

The Best abode in the hereafter is for the Pious – The good will be rewarded more than the actual due but vice will be punished to its extent – The Apostle (Muhammad) promised a triumphant return to his home (Mecca) – The Apostle (Muhammad) ordained to call Mankind unto Allah – Everything is perishable save Allah

(٨٣) تِلْكَ الدَّارُ الْآخِرَةُ نَجْعَلُهَا لِلَّذِينَ لَا يُرِيدُونَ عُلُوًّا فِي الْأَرْضِ وَلَا فَسَادًا وَالْعَاقِبَةُ لِلْمُتَّقِينَ

That abode of the Hereafter, we assign it for those who do not intend to exalt^{٨٣} themselves in the earth nor (to make) mischief and the good end is for the pious ones”.

Commentary, verse: ٨٣

This verse works the resolution of the story of Korah, indicating that any amassing wealth and self-superiority is the cause of destruction in the world and wretchedness in the Hereafter. According to some Islamic narrations, Haḍrat Ali-ibn-Abī-tālib (a.s.) recited this holy verse for the merchants in the market.

A tradition indicates that if a person thinks of himself as superior to another person because of having a better shoelace, he is one of those who intend to exalt themselves in the earth.

p: ٤٠٤

١- Majma‘-ul-Bayān, following the verse

٢- Jawāmi‘-ul-Jāmi‘, the Commentary, following the verse

There are many people who, for providing a residence, vehicle, clothing, speech, marriage and nominating their child, do something that they may become recognized in the society and attract people to themselves. Such people, as the above tradition denotes, intend to exalt themselves in the earth and will be deprived from Heaven

After mentioning the agitating story of that rich, proud, and criminal man, i.e., Korah, there is a statement in this verse which, in fact, is a general conclusion from this event. It says

That abode of the Hereafter, we assign it for those who do not intend to exalt “
”... themselves in the earth nor (to make) mischief

Not only they are not self-superior and mischievous, but also they do not even intend to do it. Their heart is free from these affairs and their soul is far from these pollutions

Whatever causes the deprivation of man from the merits of the abode of Hereafter is found, indeed, in these very two things. All sins are concentrated in self-superiority and mischief in the earth. The reason is that whatever Allah has prohibited us from is surely against the system of the creation of man and the development of his entity. Therefore performing it disturbs the system of his life and, thus, it is the source of mischief in the earth

Even the subject of self-superiority is itself one of the clear expanses of mischief in the earth, but its extraordinary importance has caused it to be mentioned particularly

Islamic narrations have specially emphasized on this subject very much. A tradition from Imam Amir-ul-Mu'minīn Ali (a.s.) denotes that he said: “sometimes it happens that someone likes that his shoelace is better than that of his friend and for this

very thing he will be counted in this verse, (because this mood is a small branch of [self-superiority](#))." [\(1\)](#)

It is interesting that the author of Kashshāf commentary, after mentioning this tradition says: "Some of the covetous ones say that according to the sentence: 'Verily Pharaoh exalted himself in the land (of Egypt) ...' [\(2\)](#) the word 'to exalt' mentioned in the abovementioned verse refers to Pharaoh, and according to the sentence: "... and do not seek to make mischief in the land" [\(3\)](#) 'mischief' refers to Korah, and they say he who is not like Pharaoh and Korah, Paradise and the eternal abode belong to him, and thus they send only Pharaoh and Korah and those similar to these two out from Heaven and consider the rest belonging to them. They have not taken the last sentence of this verse under consideration which says: "... and the good end is for the 'pious ones' such that Ali (a.s.) has taken it in mind

The matter that we must add to this statement is that this group of people have been in err even for knowing Pharaoh and Korah, because Pharaoh both exalted in the earth and was a mischief-maker, when the verse says: "... Verily he was of the mischief-makers" [\(4\)](#) And Korah also was both a mischief-maker and exalted according to the sentence which says: "So he went forth unto his people in his [\(5\)](#)

Another tradition about Imam Ali- (a.s.) indicates that during his apparently caliphate, Ali (a.s.) used to walk in the market, leading those who were lost, helping the weak and, when passing by the sellers and trades men, he recited this

p: ۴۰۶

Jawāmi‘-ul-Jāmi‘, the Commentary, following the verse –۱

The current Sura, verse ۴ –۲

Ibid, verse ۷۷ –۳

The current Sura, verse ۴ –۴

The current Sura, verse ۷۹ –۵

verse for them: “That abode of the Hereafter, we assign it for those who do not intend to exalt themselves in the earth nor (to make) mischief and the good end is for the pious ones.”, then he (a.s.) usually said: “This verse has revealed about the just and [\(humble rulers and also other powerful ones among people.\)](#)”[\(1\)](#)

This means that in the same manner that I have not use the government as a means for my self-superiority, you must not use your financial ability as means for your domination over others, either, because the good end belongs to that group who do [.not want to make mischief and do not seek self-superiority](#)

The Qur’ān at the end of the verse says: “... the good end is for the pious ones.” The word ‘end’ in its vast concept is ‘the good end’, victory in this world, and Heaven and its bounties in the next world. We saw what an evil fate had the people like Korah and Pharaoh, though their might was unique. Since they were not pious they afflicted the [.most painful fate](#)

We conclude the speech about this verse by a tradition narrated from Imam Sādiq (a.s.). It happened that when Imam Sādiq (a.s.) recited this verse he began weeping and said: “By Allah! With this verse, all of the hopes have entirely perished,” and it is [\(difficult to gain the good abode of Hereafter.\)](#)[\(2\)](#)

p: ٤٠٧

Zazān has narrated this tradition from Amir-ul-Mu’minīn Ali (a.s.), taken from – ١
Majma‘-ul-Bayān
.The commentary of Ali-ibn-’Ibrāhīm, following the verse –٢

(٨٤) مَنْ جَاءَ بِالْحَسَنَةِ فَلَهُ خَيْرٌ مِنْهَا وَمَنْ جَاءَ بِالسَّيِّئَةِ فَلَا يُجْزَى الَّذِينَ عَمِلُوا السَّيِّئَاتِ إِلَّا مَا كَانُوا يَعْمَلُونَ

Whoever brings good, he shall have (reward) better than it, and whoever brings “ evil, then those who commit misdeeds shall not be requited except for what they

”.used to do

Commentary, verse: ٨٤

After mentioning this fact that the good abode of Hereafter and its bounties are specific to the humble, pious truth-seekers, in this verse the Qur’ān refers to stating a general law which is a complex of ‘justice’ and ‘favour’ concerning both reward and :retribution. It says

”... ,Whoever brings good, he shall have (reward) better than it “

This is the stage of favour or kindness. That is, Allah is not ill-liberate, as some people are, that they try to pay the wage or reward of someone so just and exact in order to observe justice. Sometimes, He gives the reward of a deed tenfold and sometimes one hundred fold out of His unending grace, and at least He pays ten fold of it, as Sura Al-’An‘ām, No. ٦, verse ١٦٠ says: “Whoever brings a good (deed), he shall have ten times its like, ...” And only Allah knows its maximum, a part of which concerning the payment of the alms-tax in the way of Allah is mentioned in Sura Al-Baqarah, No. ٢, .verse ٦١

Of course, this is not an additional or undue reward. It depends on the level of purity of the deed, sincerity, good intention and serenity of the heart, and this is the stage of .Divine favour for the righteous

:Then the Qur'ān points to the punishment of the wrong doers. It announces and whoever brings evil, then those who commit misdeeds shall not be requited ... “
” .except for what they used to do

This is the stage of Divine Justice, because, according to the verses of the Qur'ān, .they will not be punished more than what they have done, even as an atom

It is interesting that it implies that their own deeds are their retribution. That is, their deed, that according to the law of permanence of beings in the world of existence, the effect of which remains in this world, whether inside of the soul or outside of it, and on the Day of Hereafter, which is the day of manifestation of what is hidden, will be .depicted in an appropriate form and will accompany the sinners and will torture them

p: ۴۰۹

(٨٥) إِنَّ الَّذِي فَرَضَ عَلَيْكَ الْقُرْآنَ لَرَأْدُكَ إِلَى مَعَادِ قُلُوبِ رَبِّهِ أَعْلَمُ مَنْ جَاءَ بِالْهُدَىٰ وَمَنْ هُوَ فِي ضَلَالٍ مُّبِينٍ

Verily He Who has (revealed and) ordained the Qur’ān unto you will bring you “ ٨٥ back to the destination. Say: ‘My Lord knows best him who has brought the guidance ”.and him who is in manifest error

The Occasion of Revelation of verse ٨٤

A group of commentators have narrated an occasion of revelation for this verse from Ibn-Abbas, the content of which is as follows

When the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) was coming as migration from Mecca to Medina, he reached Juhfah, a land not so distanced from Mecca. He thought of his home, Mecca, a city which is the secure sanctuary of Allah, and where Ka‘bah was located, the thing that the heart and soul of the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) had an unbroken link with it. The signs of this yearning, which had been mixed with an impression and sadness, were seen in his blessed face. Here Gabriel, the harbinger of revelation, came down and asked him (p.b.u.h.) whether he was fond of his city and home town. The Prophet answered him positively. Gabriel said: “Allah has sent this message for you: ‘Verily He Who has ... ’.(revealed and) ordained the Qur’ān unto you will bring you back to the destination

And we know that this great promise was finally fulfilled and the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.), with a mighty army and with abundant glory, returned to Mecca victoriously, and the secure sanctuary of Allah was given to him without fighting and blood shedding.

Thus, the abovementioned verse is one of the miraculous predictions of the Qur’ān which stated such a prophecy so decisively and without any condition and it happened .after a short time

Commentary, verse: ٨٥

This verse addresses the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.) and, following the statement about some parts of the life story of Moses, the son of ‘Imrān (a.s.), and his struggle against Pharaoh, gives a glad tidings with some serious instructions to the Prophet of .(Islam (p.b.u.h

We said that the first verse out of these verses, as it is circulated, was revealed in Juhfah when the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) was going to Medina. He was going to go to Yathrib and change its name to Madinat-ur-Rasūl in order to form the main center of the Islamic government there and to cause the people’s talents to open to blow. He wanted to make it a platform for availability to the vast Divine government and his aims. Yet, his love and affection to Mecca vexed him hard and that periodic from that .secure sanctuary of Allah was very inconvenient for him

Here, the light of revelation enlightened his pure heart and gave him the good tidings :of returning to his hometown, and announced

Verily He Who has (revealed and) ordained the Qur’ān unto you will bring you back to “ ”... .the destination

Do not grieve! The same Lord Who returned Moses to his mother when he was a baby; the same Lord Who after ten years of absence returned him from Egypt to his main home-town in order to lighten the light of Monotheism and form the government of the oppressed after breaking the power of

Pharaoh and his people, the same Lord will return you to Mecca with full might and strength and will lighten the light of Monotheism by your hand in this holy land

These affairs are easy for the power of the Lord, the same Lord Who sent down the Qur'ān unto your heart and made its conveyance obligatory and its ordinances incumbent. Yes, He is the Lord of the Qur'ān, the Mighty Lord of the earth and heavens

Then the Qur'ān adds that, against the stubbornness of the obstinate opponents, the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) must treat as follows

Say: 'My Lord knows best him who has brought the guidance and him who is in ... "manifest error

The way of guidance is clear, and their aberration is manifest. They make themselves tied in vain. Allah is well aware and the truth-seeking hearts also know this reality

Of course, the manifest commentary of the verse was the same thing which was said in the above, but some of the commentators have delivered some other probable meanings upon the Qur'ānic word /ma'ād/ and said that the purpose of /ma'ād/ is 'returning to life after death', or 'the land', or 'the rank of the Great Intercession', or 'Paradise', or Jerusalem which was the place of ascension of the first prophet, and the like. But regarding to the whole content of Sura Qaṣaṣ and what is said in the story life of Moses and the Children of Israel, as well as the occasion of revelation that was cited in the above, all of these meanings seem improbable except the commentary of /ma'ād/ i.e., the place of return, the land of Mecca

In addition, Resurrection on the Day of Hereafter is not something that can be specific to the Prophet (p.b.u.h.), while the verse speaks only about the Prophet (p.b.u.h.), and this

verse, being mentioned after the verse concerning the reward and retribution in the Hereafter, not only is not an evidence for this matter but also it may be a reason for its contrary, because the previous verse talks about the felicity in the next world and it is appropriate that the verse under discussion talks about the victory in this world

By the way, the commentaries of Burhān, Ṣāfi, and ‘Aṭyab-ul-Bayān narrated from Jabir, from Haḍrat Imam Bāqir (a.s.) and Imam Sādiq (a.s.) that the purpose of the Qur’ānic phrase: /la rādduka ’ilā ma’ād/ is the period of Raj’at (return to this world after death) when the Prophet (p.b.u.h.), Imam Amīr-ul-Mu’minīn Ali (a.s.), the Immaculate Imams (a.s.), those who are absolutely believers, and those who are absolutely disbelievers will return to this world and the Imams will govern throughout the world and will take vengeance from the enemies. The narrations of Raj’at are widely transmitted and Raj’at is of the self-evident knowledge of Shī’ah sect. There are also some verses in the Holy Qur’ān that adapt to it. For example: “He it is Who sent His Messenger with guidance and the religion of Truth, that He may prevail it [\(over all religions, though the polytheists may detest it.\)](#)” [\(1\)](#)

Allah has promised those of you who believe and do righteous deeds, that He will “certainly appoint them successors in the earth as He appointed successors those before them; and that He will certainly establish for them their religion which He has chosen for them; and that certainly He will, after their fear, give them security in exchange. They will do worship Me (alone) and not associate aught with Me; and whoever disbelieves after this, then these are they that are evil-doers.” [\(2\)](#) and some other verses. Up to

p: ۴۱۳

Sura At-Taubah, No. ۹, verse ۳۳ – ۱

Sura An-Nūr, No. ۲۴, verse ۵۵ – ۲

now the religion of Islam has not prevailed over all religions and the promise of Allah has not been done yet, but it will not fail either, and this belongs only to the period of .Raj‘at

The Late Sayyid Murtaḍā ‘Alam–al–Hudā has narrated in his book: ‘Muhkam Wa Mutashābih’ from Amir–ul–Mu‘minīn Ali (a.s.) that this verse relates to Raj‘at in this [world.](#)[\(1\)](#)

At the presence of Imam Baqir (a.s.) Jābir–ibn–‘Abdillāh–‘Ansārī was spoken about, when Imam Bāqir said: “May Divine Mercy be upon Jābir. He was one of our jurisprudents. His knowledge had reached to a point that he knew the verse: ‘Verily He Who has (revealed and) ordained the Qur’ān unto you will bring you back to the [destination. ...’](#) which relates to Raj‘at.”[\(2\)](#)

Once Imam Sādiq (a.s.) was asked about the commentary of this verse. He said: “By Allah, the world will not end until the holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) and Amir–ul–Mu‘minīn Ali (a.s.) meet each other in Thuwiyyah. They will build a mosque there the doors of which [will be numerous.”](#)[\(3\)](#)

[Thuwiyyah](#) is the name of a province in the suburb of Kūfah.[\(4\)](#)

p: ۴۱۴

Bihār–ul–‘Anwār, Vol. ۹۳, P. ۸۷ –۱
Burhān commentary, Vol. ۳, P. ۲۴۰, and Al–‘Iqāz, P. ۳۸۶ –۲
Bihār, Vol. ۵۳, P. ۱۱۳ –۳
Mustadrak Safīnah, Vol. ۱, P. ۴۲۹ –۴

(٨٦) وَمَا كُنْتُمْ تَرْجُوا أَنْ يُلْقَى إِلَيْكُمُ الْكِتَابُ إِلَّا رَحْمَةً مِنْ رَبِّكُمْ

فَلَا تَكُونَنَّ ظَهِيرًا لِلْكَافِرِينَ

And you did not hope that the Book should be cast unto you, except it be a mercy “ ٨٦
” .from your Lord, therefore be not a supporter of the disbelievers

Commentary, verse: ٨٦

The Divine prophets, with that purity of soul and perfection in worship, did not expect to receive revelation. Revelation and sending Heavenly Books are among the affairs .of sovereignty of Allah

There are two similarities between Haḍrat Mūsā (a.s.) and Haḍrat Muhammad : (p.b.u.h.) found in the verses of this holy Sura

Hoping to obtain fire Haḍrat Mūsā went toward it and he reached a Light. The . ١
Prophet of Islam went into Hirrā cave intending to worship and he was acquainted .with Heavenly revelation

This verse points to one of the greatest bounties of Allah bestowed on the Prophet : (p.b.u.h.). It says

And you did not hope that the Book should be cast unto you, except it be a mercy “
”... ,from your Lord

A great deal of people had heard the glad tidings of the advent of the new religion and, perhaps, a group of the People of the Book, and other than them, were waiting that the revelation might be sent down on them and Allah would give them this responsibility, but the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) did not think of it and Allah knew him the most .eligible for it

Then the verse continues implicitly saying that now for giving thanks upon this great
:bounty he should follow this command

”therefore be not a supporter of the disbelievers ...“

Surely the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) was never a supporter of the disbelievers, this
commandment was an emphasis concerning him, and it was the statement of an
.important duty for others

This meaning, in fact, agrees with the matter which was mentioned in former verses
about Moses that he (a.s.) said: “... ‘My Lord! For the bounty you have bestowed on
[me](#), never shall I be a supporter of the guilty’.”[\(1\)](#)

p: ٤١٤

The current Sura, verse ١٧-١

(٨٧) وَلَا يَصُدُّنَّكَ عَنْ آيَاتِ اللَّهِ بَعْدَ إِذْ أَنْزَلَتْ إِلَيْكَ وَادْعُ إِلَى رَبِّكَ وَلَا تُكُونَنَّ مِنَ الْمُشْرِكِينَ

And let them not turn you away from the signs of Allah after they have been sent “ ٨٧
”down unto you, and invite (mankind) unto your Lord, and be not of the polytheists

Commentary, verse: ٨٧

Being attentive to Monotheism and negation of paganism and infidelity, it is so important that in these verses Allah has warned the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) about them. Most sentences concerning this matter in these recent verses are accompanied with the Arabic signs of emphasis, and with the exaggeration form: (be not of ..., let them (... not turn you away

The two ending verses of the Sura are an emphasis on the subject of Monotheism with some different expressions and reasoning. It is Monotheism which is the origin of all religious affairs, a Monotheism that is both source and branch, both whole and part

In this holy verse there are four instructions given to the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) and Allah is qualified by four attributes which complete the whole discussions of the verses of this :Sura. At first, it says about the pagans

And let them not turn you away from the signs of Allah after they have been sent “
”... ,down unto you

Although the prohibition is for pagans, its concept is that the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) should not surrender for their hindrances and plots. It is just like that we say so and so must not temptate you, i.e., you should not surrender to his temptations

Thus, the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) is commanded that when the Divine verses are sent down, he should stand decisively on them without any hesitation and doubt. He (p.b.u.h.) must remove the hindrances that are on his way, and go forward to the destination
.with firm steps, because Allah is with him and supports him

According to the statement of Ibn-Abbas, the famous commentator, though the
.addressee is the Prophet (p.b.u.h.), the purpose of the verse is all mankind

Following this instruction, which had a negative aspect, this holy verse issues the
:second instruction, which has a positive aspect. It says

”... ,and invite (mankind) unto your Lord ...“

.He is the Lord Who is your owner, your trainee, and your fosterer

After invitation to Allah, the third instruction is negation of any polytheism and idolatry. It says implicitly that he (p.b.u.h.) should never become of the polytheists, because the way of Monotheism is brightly clear and those who pave it are on the
.straight way

(٨٨) وَلَا تَدْعُ مَعَ اللَّهِ إِلَهًا آخَرَ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا هُوَ كُلُّ شَيْءٍ هَالِكٌ إِلَّا وَجْهَهُ لَهُ الْحُكْمُ وَإِلَيْهِ تُرْجَعُونَ

And do not call upon another god with Allah, there is no god but He. Every thing is “ perishable but He. He is the Authority and unto Him shall you be returned

Commentary, verse: ٨٨

The true monotheist is the one who is free from all objects of worship, great powers, (deviated parties, and tyrants: (... do not call upon another god with Allah

:This holy verse is a second emphasis on the negation of any polytheism, when it says

“... And do not call upon another god with Allah “

These consecutive instructions, each of which emphasizes on one another, make clear the importance of the subject of Monotheism in Islamic programs without which every thing is lost

Next to these four instructions, the Qur’ān qualifies Allah by four attributes all of which are some repeated emphasis on the subject of Monotheism. At first, it says

“... there is no god but He ...“

“... Every thing is perishable but He ...“

The Judgment and Sovereignty in the world of creation and the world of religion both are specific to His Pure Essence. The verse says

“... He is the Authority ...“

:(And the return of all of you is toward Him (s.w.t

“and unto Him shall you be returned ...“

These recent three qualities can be a reasoning upon proving the Monotheism and
:abandoning any kind of idolatry which is inside of the first quality, because

;When we are all perishable and existence is allocated to Him

;When the administration of the system of existence belongs to Him

And when the return of all of us in the Hereafter is toward Him, what kind of function
can other objects of worship have? And except Him, what is appropriate to be
?worshipped

The great commentators of the Holy Qur'ān have delivered different matters upon
the sentence: "Everything is perishable but He" which turn on the axis of commenting
.the Qur'ānic term: /wajh/ and the Arabic word /hālik

Philologically the Arabic word /wajh/ is applied for a part of the body which is located
'on the face of man, but when it is used concerning Allah, it means 'His Pure Essence

The Arabic term /hālik/ is derived from /halak/ which means 'death' and 'destruction'.
Therefore the abovementioned sentence refers to the destruction of all beings
except His Pure Essence. They are perishable not only after the end of this world, but
also they are perishable before Him just now, because all beings are dependant on
His Pure Essence and in all moments they take their own possibility of being from Him
.and they have nothing from their own essence but that which is from Allah

Moreover, all beings of this material world are variable and are in the expose of
variations, even according to the belief of transubstantiation, the essence is the
object of change, and we know motion and variation means perishing into a new thing
permanently. In any moment the beings of the world of matter die and are quickened.

Therefore, just now they are perishable

and destroyed. The only Essence that does not change, has not destruction, and is
.absolute independent is His Holy Essence

We also know that at the end of this world destruction will have a more clear
manifestation and, as the Qur'ān says: “Everyone on it must pass away,” “And there
will endure for ever the person of your Lord, the Lord of glory and honour.”

Not only the beings on the earth, but also those who are in heavens will perish. The
Qur'ān says: “The Trumpet will (just) be sounded, when all that are in the heavens and
on the earth will swoon, ...”

This is a commentary consistent with the apparent of this noble verse and other
verses of the Qur'ān. But some other commentators have delivered some other
commentaries on it, too, including as follows

The objective of the Qur'ānic word /wajh/ is ‘righteous deed’, and the concept of the
verse is that all deeds will perish save the deed which has been done for the Pure
Essence of Allah

Some others have said that the objective of the Qur'ānic word /wajh/ is that very
relation of the things to Allah. Thus, the concept of the holy verse is that everything is
naturally perishable except for its relation to Allah

Some commentators have said that the Qur'ānic word /wajh/ means ‘religion’ and the
concept of the verse is that all religions are perishable and nullified, except the
religion of Allah. They have taken the Qur'ānic phrase /la hul hukm/ in the sense of
religious sovereignty and considered it an emphasis upon this commentary. They
have also commented the Qur'ānic sentence: “Unto Him shall you be returned” in the
sense of

p: ۴۲۱

Sura Ar-Raḥmān, No. ۵۵, verse ۲۶ and ۲۷ –۱

Sura Az-Zumar, No. ۳۹, verse ۶۸ –۲

.returning to Allah in choosing religion and a second emphasis on this meaning

These interpretations, in fact, do not contrast to what was said in the above, because when we accept that the only thing that will remain in this world is the Pure Essence of Allah, it will become clear that whatever is somehow related to His Pure Essence, that thing will also take the colour of existence and eternity to it. The religion which is from His side is eternal; the righteous deed that is done for Him is eternal; and the Divine leaders who relate to Him, from this point that they are related to Him, are eternal. In short, everything that is somehow related to the Pure Essence of Allah, from that point is not perishable and has not destruction

At the end, some ‘fanatic sects’ of Sunnite people say that whoever calls upon other than Allah will become a polytheist, since Allah has said: “... do not call upon another god with Allah ...”. Therefore, those who call the saints of Allah in their supplications are polytheists. But this verse explains that polytheist is the one who calls upon other than Allah as another god: “... do not call upon another god with Allah ...”. And it is evident that the Shī‘ite people do not call any rank as Allah, but they call the one as a person who has honour with Him, the honour that has been given him from the side of Allah, such as prophets, the friends of Allah, not any illusive intercessor and honoured, since the idol-worshippers in their imagination also consider an honour for their idol

:In this holy verse, wiping polytheism has been stated with different phrases

.Do not call upon another god with Allah –۱

.There is no god but He –۲

.Everything is perishable but He –۳

.He is the Authority –۴

.Unto Him shall you be returned –۵

Every year, the king of Sa‘udi Arabia invites the scholars of Islamic sects to entertain them on the Day of festival of sacrifice. One year ‘Allāmah Sayyid Sharaf-ud-Dīn Jabal-‘Āmilī (one of the outstanding scholars of Lebanon) was invited to that festival. As soon as ‘Allāmah entered the meeting, he gave a Qur’ān with leather cover as a gift to the king. The king took it and kissed it. ‘Allāmah told him he was a polytheist. The king became inconvenient that why ‘Allāmah accused him like that. ‘Allāmah answered him that it was so because the king kissed a piece of leather which was an animal’s skin and respecting the skin of an animal is polytheism. The king said: “I do not kiss any skin. My shoe is made of leather and the skin of animal, but I never kiss it. This piece of leather has been used as the cover of the Qur’ān.” ‘Allāmah said: “We do not kiss any piece of iron, either. We kiss the iron which has been used as the box, or burial chamber, and the door and window of the grave of the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) or that
”.(of our Immaculate Imams (a.s

Yes, polytheism is the case when we take someone or something as god instead of Allah, and consider an independent might for that. The Shī‘ite do not consider the might of the friends of Allah as an independent might, but they consider it a power dependent to the power of Allah. Therefore, if the Shī‘ite make a dome, or build a shrine, it is for the sake that they inform people that there is a monotheist buried here, or the one who is buried here is a martyr in the way of Allah and has been devoted for Unity. Thus, a dome and an Islamic shrine usually means a center under
.which the call of Unity is heard, not a center opposite to mosque

Imam Riḍā (a.s.) said: “The prophet of Allah and His Authorities on the earth are
﴿wajhullāh﴾ by whom Allah, religion, and His cognition are paid attention to.” ﴿﴾

We recite in Nudbah Supplication about the Expected Imam (May Allah hasten his glad
advent): “Where is the Authority of Allah that will come?” And also we read in it:
”?“Where is the Authority of Allah who pays attention to the saints

O Lord! Do taste us the sweetness of recitation of the Qur’ān, contemplation in it and
!being advised by it

O Lord! Enlighten our hearts with the Light of the Qur’ān, and set our entity a light
!giver

O Lord! Cause our manner and speech to be emerged from Qur’ān and from the
manner and life of Prophet Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) and his Immaculate progeny (Ahl-ul-
(.Bayt) (a.s

!Amen, O the Lord of the Worlds

The End of Sura Al-Qaṣaṣ

p: ۴۲۴

(Sura Al-‘Ankabūt (The Spider

Point

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

In The Name of Allah, The Beneficent, The Merciful

(No. ٢٩ (Revealed at Mecca

Verses in ٧ Sections ٦٩

:The Feature of Sura

This Sura was revealed in Mecca and contains sixty nine verses. The names of some of Suras such as Al-Baqarah Al-Fil, An-Naml, and An-Nahl, have been taken from the names of the animals which are mentioned somehow in these verses

In verse No. ٤١ of this Sura, the construction of Polytheism is counted the frailest building like the house of spider and, thus, this Sura has been nominated as Sura ‘Ankabūt

This Sura speaks about a few subjects, such as: Faith, the man’s duty, the Divine trial, the history of some prophets, prohibition of unfair disputes, and relying on other than Allah

:The Virtue of Sura ‘Ankabūt

Majma‘-ul-Bayān narrates a noble tradition from the holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) who said: “Whoever recites Sura ‘Ankabūt will have ten good rewards as the number of all believers and hypocrites

Section ۱: Every soul shall be tried

Point

Every soul shall be tried to prove his or her own goodness or evil – Whatever any one earns in his life, it is for the individual’s own credit – Goodness to parents enjoined but not to obey them if they invite to idolatry – Sins of those who believe will be wiped out and they will be recompensed with the best reward – The Hypocrites who deem trials as the chastisement from Allah and when any profit comes out of the trials, they profess to be with the believers – The disbelievers shall bear their own burdens as well as the burdens of those whom they lead astray

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

In The Name of Allah, The Beneficent, The Merciful

(۱) الم

(۲) أَحْسِبَ النَّاسُ أَنْ يُتْرَكُوا أَنْ يَقُولُوا ءَامَنَّا وَهُمْ لَا يُفْتَنُونَ

(۳) وَلَقَدْ فَتَنَّا الَّذِينَ مِنْ قَبْلِهِمْ فَلَيَعْلَمَنَّ اللَّهُ الَّذِينَ صَدَقُوا وَلَيَعْلَمَنَّ الْكَاذِبِينَ

۱. “ Alif ‘A’, Lām ‘L’, Mīm ‘M’ ”.

Do people imagine that they will be left off on saying: ‘We believe’ and they will not “ .۲
”?be tried

And certainly We tried those before them, and assuredly Allah knows those who “ .۳
” .speak truly, and assuredly He knows the liars

The Occasion of Revelation and Commentary: verses ۱–۳

Some of the commentators have mentioned a narration according to which the beginning eleven verses of this Sura were revealed in Medina. These verses are about the Muslims who were in Mecca but, though they expressed Islam they did not agree to migrate to Medina, then they received a letter from their brothers lived in Medina who wrote in it: “Allah does not accept your confession to Faith unless you migrate and come unto us.” Therefore, they decided to migrate and went out from Mecca. A group of pagans pursued them and fought against them. Some of those believers were killed but some others delivered. (Probably some others surrendered .(and returned to Mecca

Some other commentators believe that the second verse is about ‘Ammār Yāsir and a group of other first Muslims who embraced Islam and were seriously tortured by the .enemies of Islam

Some other commentators have said that the eighth verse of the Sura has been .revealed upon the belief of Sa‘d-ibn-’Abī-Waqqās

But the study of these verses themselves shows that there is no indication in them upon the relation of these verses with emigration. They only point to the pressures that the believers received from the side of the enemies at that time, and even from .the side of their parents who were polytheists

And, also if these verses refer to the hypocrites, it is probable that they point to a group of persons with superficial belief who were among Muslims in Mecca. They were sometimes with Muslims and sometimes with the disbelievers, and whenever each of them were in a better position they turned to them

However, the flowing and union of the verses of this holy Sura necessitates to consider all of them Meccan; and the abovementioned narrations, which have not any flowing with each other, cannot disturb this union

Again, at the beginning of this holy Sura, we confront the abbreviated letters (Alif, Lām, Mīm) that we have stated their commentaries from different viewpoints. In this regard, for example, you can refer to the beginning of Sura Al-Baqarah, No. ٢, Sura 'Āl-i-'Imrān, No. ٣, and Sura Al-'A'rāf, No. ٧

After mentioning the abbreviated letters, one of the most important issues of the man's life is referred to, i.e. the calamities, pressures and Divine trials. At first, it says

Do people imagine that they will be left off on saying: 'We believe' and they will not "be tried

Then immediately the verse points to this fact that trial is a permanent way of treatment of Allah. Trial is not allocated to the community of Muslims; it is something that all former nations had, too. The verse says

"... And certainly We tried those before them "

Allah had tried them in violent furnaces of trials, too, and they were also under the pressure of the cruel, ignorant, unaware, and obstinate enemies. The field of examination has always been open and some groups have ever participated in this field

The Arabic word /fitnah/ means ‘to melt gold in order to separate its impure parts’; and since the real essence of man is recognized in difficulties and calamities from the .?false mottoes, it is called ‘fitnah

It must be so, too, because in the case of claiming Faith everyone can introduce himself the best believer, the best striver, and the best advocator devotee of a group of people. The weight, value and worth of this claim must be estimated by means of :examination. Yes, it is true that

and assuredly Allah knows those who speak truly, and assuredly He knows the ... “
”.liars

It is evident that Allah, the Almighty, knows everything, even the things before the creation of mankind. The purpose of knowledge here is the objective manifestation of the affairs and their external existence. In other words, it is the practical effects and evidences of the deeds. That is, whoever has it in his interior must pour it out externally. This is the meaning of ‘knowledge’ with respect to these aspects when .they are used about Allah

The reason of this issue is also clear, because reward and retribution have no meaning unless the inner intentions and esoteric qualities are practically seen in .man’s action

.Trial is for proving the intrinsic intentions and qualities of a person to be true

In other words, this world is like a ‘university’ or a ‘farm’. In a university the talents open to blow, the competencies grow, and whatever is in the stage of potentiality .reaches the stage of actuality

In this farm the seeds must be planted. The shots and sprouts must come out of their inside. These sprouts come out from the land, grow to be some small plants, and finally become

some tall fruitful trees. These things are not possible without experience and
examination

By this course we understand that the Divine trials are not only for knowing persons,
but they are for fostering the talents and that they are to open to blow

Therefore, when we examine something, it is for finding out an unknown thing in it,
but when Allah examines, it is not for finding out an unknown thing, because His
knowledge encompasses everything, but it is for fostering the talents and causing the
potentialities to reach to actualities

The statement of the generality of trial for all nations and communities had a very
considerable effect on the Muslims of Mecca, who were in a severe minority at that
time, and attending to this fact made them steadfast and patient in front of the
enemies of Islam. Yet, this was not allocated to the believers of Mecca, but every
group and nation is somehow involved in this Allah's way of treatment, and the trials
of Allah come to meet them in different sorts

Some people may be in some environments which are polluted from any point of
view, and the temptations of making mischief surround them from all sides. Their
great trial is that, in such an atmosphere and in such conditions, they do not tend to
the pollutions of the environment and protect their own nobility and purity

A group may involve in the pressure of deprivations, while they see that if they agree
to exchange the capitals of their noble selves, their poverty and deprivation will
quickly disappear, but this is for the price of losing their Faith, piety, freedom, nobility,
and honour; and this very thing is their trial

On the contrary, another group may be enjoyed of affluence and different kinds of
bounties when material possibilities can be at their reach. Do they try to fulfil the duty
of thanksgiving

in this circumstance? Or will they be drowned in negligence, haughtiness, self-conceit, ?egotism, lusts, etc. with alienation unto the society and their own selves both

Another group encounter some countries that have enjoyed a glaring material civilization and a considerable social welfare while they have no virtue and mortality and are far from Allah. Here a strong and mysterious attraction drags them toward this kind of life for them and their own society which provides it with them for the price of neglecting all the principles which they believe in, and for the price of accepting the .disgrace of dependence. This is also a kind of trial

Afflictions, pains and toils, wars and conflicts, dearth and scarcity, tyrannical governments which invite people to their own slavery and captivity and call them to submit their own tyrannical programs, and, finally, the strong waves of sensual desire and lust, all of them are a few means of trial in the way of the servants of Allah. It is in the same events that Faith, personality, piety, purity, trust, and nobility of persons are .recognized

But for gaining victory in these hard trials, there is no way but having continuous .effort and endeavour and relying on the particular grace of Allah

It is interesting that some commentators have narrated a tradition in 'Usul-i-Kāfī from Immaculate Imam who upon the commentary of the above verse said: "They will be tried the like that gold is tried (in furnace)." Then he said: "They will be purified (the like that gold is purified (under the pressure of fire))."[\(1\)](#)

However, those who think that by mere claim of expression of faith they will be in the row of believers and will

p: ۴۳۱

be admitted in Paradise with the prophets, truthful ones, and martyrs are seriously in
.err

Imam Amīr-ul-Mu'minīn Ali (a.s.) said: "By Allah, Who sent the Prophet with Faith and truth, you will be severely subverted, bitterly shaken as in sieving and fully mixed as by spooning in a cooking pot till your low persons become high and high ones become
(low, ...)" (1)

He (a.s.) said this statement just after that people had paid allegiance to him and were waiting to see how Ali (a.s.) treated with division of the Treasury of the Muslims and ranks and positions. They wanted to see whether it was treated with the former
.criteria or upon the bitter criterion of Islamic Justice

p: ۴۳۲

Hahj-ul-Balāqah, sermon ۱۶-۱

(٤) أَمْ حَسِبَ الَّذِينَ يَعْمَلُونَ السَّيِّئَاتِ أَنْ يَسْبِقُونَا سَاءَ مَا يَحْكُمُونَ

(٥) مَنْ كَانَ يَرْجُوا لِقَاءَ اللَّهِ فَإِنَّ أَجَلَ اللَّهِ لَآتٍ وَهُوَ السَّمِيعُ الْعَلِيمُ

Or do those who practise evil imagine that they will outstrip Us? Evil is it that they “
”tjudge

Whoever hopes to meet Allah, (knows that) the term (appointed) by Allah is surely “
”.coming; and He is the Hearing, the Knowing

Commentary, verses: ٤–٥

Imam Amīr-ul-Mu’minīn Ali (a.s.) said: “The purpose of /liqā’allah/ is the Hereafter
(Day)”.

We must cure our delusions with the remembrance of death and Resurrection. Both the believers, who are in the course of examination, and the disbelievers must know that opportunities are not durable, and mercy and punishment of Allah will encompass them.

The former verses spoke of the general examination of the believers, and here the first verse under discussion is a severe threat against the disbelievers and sinful ones, so that they should not think that if they put the believers under pressure and the Divine punishments does not promptly seize them, it is because Allah is neglectful of them or He has not the power of punishing them. It says

Or do those who practise evil imagine that they will outstrip Us? Evil is it that they “
”tjudge

p: ٤٣٣

Allah's respite must not cause them to be proud, because this is also an examination for them as well as a chance for repentance and their return

Some commentators have taken this verse as referring to the sinful believers, but this belief is never consistent with the context of the verses, and the frame of references testify that the purpose is polytheists and pagans

:Then, in the next verse, the Qur'ān says

Whoever hopes to meet Allah, (knows that) the term (appointed) by Allah is surely “ ... ;coming

.Yes, this promise of Allah is certain and it is a way which must finally be paved

Moreover, Allah hears all the words and is aware of all deeds and intentions, as the :verse continues

”and He is the Hearing, the Knowing ...“

According to the above traditions from Ali (a.s.), the purpose of /liqā'allah/ (to meet Allah) is the Hereafter Day. It is for being quickened and reaching the recompense from the side of Allah by reckoning the deeds on the Day of Hereafter

It should be said that the meeting Allah on the Hereafter Day is not a sensible meeting, but it is a spiritual meeting and a kind of inner intuition, because in that place the thick curtains of the world of matter will be removed from before the eye of man's soul and man will get into an intuition

As 'Allāmah Tabātabā'ī has cited in Al-Mizān, the objective of /liqā'allah/ is that the servants of Allah will be set in a state that there will be no curtain between them and their Lord, because the nature of the Hereafter Day is the manifestation of the facts as the Qur'ān says: “... and they will know that Allah, He is the (very) Manifest (truth’.” (1)

(٦) وَمَنْ جَاهَدَ فَإِنَّمَا يُجَاهِدُ لِنَفْسِهِ إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَغَنِيٌّ عَنِ الْعَالَمِينَ

And whoever strives hard, he strives only for his own self, verily Allah is self-
sufficient, above (need of) the Worlds

Commentary, verse: ٦

The purpose of 'strive' in this verse is not only to struggle with sword against the enemies, but the purpose is effort and endeavour. This effort is in the way of self-improvement and striving against one's self both, or struggling against the temptations of Satan or against the foreign enemies

This verse implies that whoever strives with effort and endeavour and tolerates the afflictions and difficulties, indeed, he has strived for himself, because Allah is self-sufficient above all the beings of the worlds. The verse says

And whoever strives hard, he strives only for his own self, verily Allah is self-
sufficient, above (need of) the Worlds

The Divine trial is the man's struggle against low desire, and strive against severe enemies for protecting his faith, purity and piety, else Allah is an unlimited Essence, and He has no need which can be removed by worship or obedience of the servants. He has no deficiency that others give it to Him, but whatever others possess is from Him and they have nothing from themselves

This statement makes it clear that the Qur'ānic word /jihād/ (strive) here does not necessarily mean struggle with weapon against the enemy, but it has its own main lexicographical meaning which envelops any kind of effort and endeavour for protecting Faith and piety and suffering all sorts of calamities and local struggles against the obstinate enemy

Shortly speaking, all the benefits of this struggle return back to the self of the striver, and it is he who obtains the goodness of this world and the next world under the light of his struggle; and even if the society enjoys the blessings of the struggle it will be in the second stage. Therefore, if anyone succeeds to have this struggle, he must thank
.Allah for this great bounty

p: ۴۳۶

(٧) وَالَّذِينَ ءَامَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ لَنُكَفِّرَنَّ عَنْهُمْ سَيِّئَاتِهِمْ وَلَنَجْزِيَنَّهُمْ أَحْسَنَ الَّذِي كَانُوا يَعْمَلُونَ

And those who believe, and do righteous deeds, We shall certainly acquit them of “ .v
” .their evil deeds, and shall recompense them the best of what they were doing

Commentary, verse: ٧

Among the best examples of struggle that we studied in the previous holy verse are
.faith and righteous deed which are mentioned in this verse

.For receiving the Divine rewards, a person needs faith and righteous deeds both

The Divine reward is not only forgiving the past sins, but it contains the best reward,
too. However, this holy verse is an explanation and a complementary meaning for
what was said closely in the previous verse under the title of ‘strive’. Here, the reality
:of struggle is explicitly explained, where it says

And those who believe, and do righteous deeds, We shall certainly acquit them of “
”... ,their evil deeds

Thus, the first benefit of this great struggle (both Faith and righteous deed) is the
concealment of sins which man gains, in the same manners that reward reaches him,
:too; as it is mentioned at the end of this verse

” .and shall recompense them the best of what they were doing...”

The Arabic word /nukaffirann/ is derived from /takfir/ which originally means: ‘To
,’conceal’, and the objective of it here is ‘the Divine forgiveness

Though Allah compensates all of good deeds whether they are ‘good’ or ‘better’ and ‘best’, the application of the phrase: ‘The best of what they were doing’ in this verse may point to this fact that Allah reckons all their good deeds as their best deeds. That is, if some of their deeds are excellent, some are good and some are medium, Allah counts all of them as excellent, and this is the meaning of ‘Allah’s grace’ which is also mentioned in other verses of the Qur’ān, such as Sura An-Nūr, No. ۲۴, verse ۳۸, which says: “That Allah may reward them with the best of what they have done, and
”... .increase for them out of His grace

p: ۴۳۸

(٨) وَوَصَّيْنَا الْإِنْسَانَ بِوَالِدَيْهِ حُسِينًا وَإِنْ جَاهَدَاكَ لِتُشْرِكَ بِي مَا لَيْسَ لَكَ بِهِ عِلْمٌ فَلَا تُطِعْهُمَا إِلَىٰ مَرْجِعِكُمْ فَأَنْتَ بِمَا كُنْتُمْ تَعْمَلُونَ

And We have enjoined on man goodness unto his parents; and if they strive with “ ٨ you that you should associate (others) with Me, of which you have no knowledge, then do not obey them, unto Me is your return, and I will inform you of what you were ”.doing

The Occasion of Revelation: verse ٨

There are cited different narrations upon the occasion of revelation of the above :verse that the extract of all of them is the same, and its explanation is as follows

Some persons, who were in Mecca, embraced Islam and when their mothers were informed of the subject they decided not to eat food and not to drink water until their sons would apostatize from Islam, though none of these mothers kept her promise and all of them ate food. Then the abovementioned verse was revealed and showed a .clear way to all for the conduct with their parents concerning belief and disbelief

Commentary, verse: ٨

Point

To do goodness to parents is a humane matter, not a mere creedal subject, and it has no condition either, irrespective of being racial, age, regional, scientific, social, political, economical, and creedal. Children must do them favour even when they are pagan or polytheist. However, one of the most important trials is the subject of contradiction in the line of faith and piety with the sympathetic and relational links.

The

.Qur'ān has clearly stated the duty of the Muslims in this regard

At first, as a general law, which originates from the roots of affections and gratitude, it
:says

”... ;And We have enjoined on man goodness unto his parents “

This subject is a divine religious ordinance, but before it is a religious binding, it has been settled in the nature of all humankind as a law. The application of the word ‘man’, in particular, here attracts the attention, because this law is not only for the believers, but everyone who is eligible to be called under the title of ‘human’ must be gratitude before his parents, and he does not forget honour, kindness and benevolence to them throughout his lifetime, though he can never pay his debt to
.them by these acts

Then, in order that no one imagine that the emotional link with parents can overcome the link of man with Allah and Faith, it makes clear the matter with an explicit
:exception in this regard. It says

and if they strive with you that you should associate (others) with Me, of which you ... “
”... ,have no knowledge, then do not obey them

The application of the Qur'ānic term /jāhadāka/, in the verse, means that they use
.their most effort and endeavour with persistence

And, the applications of the phrase ‘of which you have no knowledge’ refers to the fact that polytheism is not a logical thing, since if polytheism were really correct, there would exist an evidence for it. In other words, where man has not knowledge to a
.thing he must not follow it, let alone that he has knowledge to its falseness

Following such a thing is following one's ignorance. If parents make you follow ignorance, you should not obey them. In principle, blindly imitation is wrong, even .when it is about Faith, let alone polytheism and paganism

This very disobedience in regard to parents is also mentioned in Sura Luqmān, with this addition that while you must not accept their invitation to polytheism you ought to help them in worldly affairs and have kindness in social intercourse with them, lest no one imagine that opposition with parents concerning their invitation to polytheism is an evidence unto having ill-treatment toward them; where it says: "... yet bear them company in this life with justice ..." (١). And this proves the utmost emphasis of Islam .on respecting the parents

Thus, a general principle is understood here that nothing can prevail the relation of man with Allah, because this relation is before all things, even the relation of the .parents which is the closest emotional relations

The famous tradition narrated from Ali (a.s.) who said: "There should be no obedience .for anyone in disobeying Allah" (٢) gives a clear criterion

And, at the end of the verse, the Holy Qur'ān adds that Allah will give you entirely the :reward and retribution of what you used to do

"unto Me is your return, and I will inform you of what you were doing ..."

This sentence, in fact, is a threat against those who pave the way of polytheism as well as those who invite others to this way, because the verse clearly indicates that Allah keeps

p: ٤٤١

.the account of all their deeds and deliver them to them at the appropriate time

It is not the first time that the Holy Qur'ān points to this important issue of man. Formerly it was referred to in Sura Al-'Asrā', No. ١٧, verse ٢٣, and later this important matter will be pointed out in Sura Luqmān, No. ٣١, verses ١٤ and ١٥ and also in Sura Al-Aḥqāf, No. ٤٦, verse ١٥

In fact, Islam considers the highest respect for these two, father and mother, in a manner that even when they are polytheists and they invite to polytheism, which is the most shunned acts in the view of Islam, yet it enjoins the protection of their .respect, with disobedience in regard to their invitation to polytheism

This is, in fact, one of the great Divine trials which has been referred to at the beginning of this Sura; for parents are sometimes so old that keeping and hearing them are difficult. It is at this time, indeed, that the children must take their own examination in the field of gratitude and obeying the command of Allah, and keep .protection from their parents in the best form

A tradition from the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) indicates that once someone came to him and said: "Whom should I do goodness to?" He (p.b.u.h.) answered: "To your mother." Again the man asked: "Next to her?" He (p.b.u.h.) said: "To your mother." For the third time he asked: "Next to her?" Again he (p.b.u.h.) said: "To your mother." And in the fourth time, he (p.b.u.h.) recommended him to do goodness to his father and then to [\(other relatives according to their nearness to the man.\)](#)

In another tradition, which has been mentioned in many Islamic books, the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) said: "Paradise is under

p: ٤٤٢

the feet of the mothers.” And it is only by the way of humility and veneration in front of them that a person can enter Paradise

:Some Other Traditions

The holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) said: “Whoever obeys the command of Allah concerning – ١ parents, two doors of Paradise will be opened to him, and if he fulfils the command of Allah unto one of them, then one door will be opened.” (١)

The Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) said: “The servant who is obedient to his parents – ٢ (and to his Lord: (on the Hereafter Day) he will be in the highest rank (in Paradise).” (٢)

The Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) once said: “He who performs pilgrimage rite for his – ٣ parents, or pays their debt, on Resurrection Day Allah will rouse him with the righteous.” (٣)

The Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) said: “He who likes to have a long lifetime and his – ٤ (sustenance increases, he should do good to his parents and visit his kin.” (٤)

Imam Ṣādiq (a.s.) said: “The best deeds are prayer at its (proper) time, doing – ٥ (kindness to the parents, and struggle on the way of Allah.” (٥)

The Messenger of Allah said: “Do good to your parents so that your children do – ٦ good to you; renounce the women of people so that your women be chaste (and (others renounce your women).” (٦)

p: ٤٤٣

Kanz-ul-‘Ummāl, Vol. ١٦٦, P. ٤٦٧ – ١

Ibid – ٢

Ibid, P. ٤٦٨ – ٣

Kanz-ul-‘Ummāl, Vol. ١٦, P. ٤٧٥ – ٤

Bihār, Vol. ٧٤, P. ٨٥ – ٥

Kanz-ul-‘Ummāl, Vol. ١٦, P. ٤٦٦ – ٦

The Prophet of Allah said: “The affectionate look of the progeny to his parents is –۷
[\(worship.”](#)[\(۱](#)

Imam Sādiq (a.s.) said: “What hinders a person among you that he does good to his –۸
parents when they are alive or dead by praying for them, giving alms for them, doing
pilgrimage rites for them, and observing the fast for them, because if he does such,
the parents will be rewarded, and he, too, will be rewarded the same amount.
Moreover, Allah (Almighty, and Glorious) gives him much goodness for his goodness
[\(and his prayer \(Salāt\).”](#)[\(۲](#)

The Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) said: “Whoever visits the graves of his parents or –۹
one of them once every Friday Allah forgives him and writes him among the
[\(righteous.”](#)[\(۳](#)

p: ۴۴۴

Bihār, Vol. ۷۴, P. ۸۰ –۱

Ibid, P. ۴۶ –۲

Kanz-ul-‘Ummāl, Vol. ۱۶, P. ۴۶۸ –۳

(٩) وَالَّذِينَ ءَامَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ لَنُدْخِلَنَّهُمْ فِي الصَّالِحِينَ

And those who believe, and do righteous deeds, certainly We shall admit them “ .٩
”among the righteous

Commentary, verse: ٩

The fact that formerly was stated about those who have Faith and righteous deed is
:repeated and emphasized again in this verse. It says

And those who believe, and do righteous deeds, certainly We shall admit them “
”among the righteous

Upon the purpose of the repetition of this meaning, some commentators have said:
former verses pointed to those who pave the path of the truth, and this verse points
to those who are the guides of this path and are as signs to the way of Monotheism,
since the application of /sālihīn/ (righteous) is mentioned about many of the prophets,
.those who asked Allah to join them to the righteous ones

This is also probable that in former verses the words were about the forgiveness of
sins and good reward for this group of believers, but here their high rank is referred
to, which itself is another reward for them. They will be set in the row of both the
righteous, and the Divine prophets, and truthful ones, and the martyrs, and they will
.keep company with them

By the way, some commentators, such as the author of Tafsīr-i-Al-Mizān, say that the
purpose of ‘believers’ mentioned in this verse, regarding the previous verse, means
the children who, under the command of parents, are invited to polytheism that if they
persist and, for protection of their Faith, become vagrant from their house and region,
though being far from parents is difficult for them, on the Hereafter Day Allah will
.admit them among the righteous

(١٠) وَمِنَ النَّاسِ مَن يَقُولُ ءَامَنَّا بِاللَّهِ فَإِذَا أُوذِيَ فِي اللَّهِ جَعَلَ فِتْنَةَ النَّاسِ كَعَذَابِ اللَّهِ وَلَئِن جَاءَ نَصْرٌ مِّن رَّبِّكَ لَيَقُولُنَّ إِنَّا كُنَّا مَعَكُمْ أَوْلَىٰ ۗ أَلَيْسَ اللَّهُ بِأَعْلَمَ بِمَا فِي صُدُورِ الْعَالَمِينَ

And among the people there are those who say: ‘We believe in Allah,’ and when “ .١٠ they are hurt in Allah’s cause, they think the persecution of men as it were Allah’s chastisement, and if help comes from your Lord, they would certainly say: ‘Verily we were with you’. What! Is not Allah the Best-Knower of what is in the breasts of ”?mankind

Commentary, verse: ١٠

The expression of Faith by some people is only oral and it is not said by heart. The true faith will often be made manifest at the time of afflictions. Imam Ali (a.s.) said: “The (reality (and essence) of man will be known in the change of circumstances.”[\(١\)](#)

In view of the fact that there were mentioned some explicit statements about the ‘righteous believers’ and ‘polytheists’ in the former verses, in this verse the words are :about the third group, viz.: ‘hypocrites’. It says

And among the people there are those who say: ‘We believe in Allah,’ and when they “ are hurt in Allah’s cause, they think the persecution of men as it were Allah’s chastisement, and if help comes from your Lord, they

p: ٤٤٤

would certainly say: ‘Verily we were with you’. What! Is not Allah the Best-Knower of
”?what is in the breasts of mankind

The Arabic word /’āmannā/ (we believe), is used in the verse in plural form, while the next phrase is in singular and it may be for the reason that this group of hypocrites want to be counted among the group of believers then they say /’āmannā/ (we .believe) and they mean that they have believed like other people

The application of ‘they are hurt in Allah’s cause’ is in the sense of ‘they are hurt in the way of Allah’, that is, they sometimes are hurt in the way of Allah and Faith by their .enemy

It is interesting that when speaking about the punishment of Allah, the Qur’ānic word /’aḥḥāb/ is used, but when it speaks about people’s hurts it uses /fitnah/ (trial) indicating that people’s hurts are not in fact ‘punishment’ but they are trials in order to complete man. In this way it teaches them that they might not compare these two with each other, and by the pretext that the opponents hurt and torture them they leave out .their Faith, because this is a part of total program of trial in this world

There arises a question here that which victory had Allah bestowed on the Muslims in
?Mecca that hypocrites demanded share in it

The answer of it is that the above sentence is a conditional sentence, and we know that a conditional sentence is not an evidence for the existence of condition, but its concept is that if there will be some victories for the Muslims in future, these feeble- .faith hypocrites will demand share in them

Moreover, the Muslims gained some victories against enemies in Mecca, although
they were not martial and they

were some victories in the fields of propagation, penetration in public thoughts, and
.the development of Islam amongst the different levels of people

Besides, the application of the word 'hurt' fits with the environment of Mecca, else in
.the environment of Medina such a thing rarely happened

However, this point was also made clear that the term 'hypocrites' is not only used for
those who have never Faith inwardly and do not express Faith, but those feeble-Faith
persons who, under the pressure of this and that individuals soon change their belief
are counted among hypocrites, and the holy verse under discussion apparently
speaks of this kind of hypocrites and announces that Allah (s.w.t.) is aware of their
.intentions

p: ۴۴۸

(۱۱) وَلَيَعْلَمَنَّ اللَّهُ الَّذِينَ ءَامَنُوا وَلَيَعْلَمَنَّ الْمُنَافِقِينَ

And certainly Allah knows those who believe, and certainly He knows the “ .۱۱
”hypocrites

Commentary, verse: ۱۱

.Belief in the knowledge of Allah is the factor of abandoning hypocrisy

It is only Allah Who knows the true and false believers, and therefore in this verse the
:Qur’ān says

”And certainly Allah knows those who believe, and certainly He knows the hypocrites “

If some simple-minded people think that they can be far from the dominance of the
.knowledge of Allah by concealing the facts, they are in a manifest error

Again we repeat that the application of the word hypocrites here is not the evidence
upon thinking that these verses were revealed in Medina. It is true that the subject of
hypocrisy usually appears after the victory of a group and forming government when
the opponents change their features and form hidden organizations, but, as it was
said before, hypocrisy has a vast scope of meaning and it envelops the persons of
.weak belief who change their faith by a little pressure

(١٢) وَقَالَ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا لِلَّذِينَ آمَنُوا اتَّبِعُوا سَبِيلَنَا وَلْنَحْمِلْ خَطَايَاكُمْ وَمَا هُمْ بِحَامِلِينَ مِنْ خَطَايَاهُمْ مِنْ شَيْءٍ

إِنَّهُمْ لَكَاذِبُونَ

And those who disbelieve say unto those who believe: ‘Follow our path and we will “ .١٢ certainly bear (the burden of) your sins.’ And they shall not be bearers of any thing of ”.their sins. Verily they are liars

Commentary, verse: ١٢

In order to invite and encourage others to do mischief and wrong, the deviated persons often say: if it has any sin we carry the burden of that sin, while no one can .undertake the sin of another one

This verse points to one example of the weak and haughty logics of the polytheists :which exists among a vast group, too, even just now. It says

And those who disbelieve say unto those who believe: ‘Follow our path and we will “ ”... ’.certainly bear (the burden of) your sins

Today, we see many seductive persons that at the time of invitation to a wrong action say if it has any sin they bear its sin, but we know that none can bear the burden of any one’s sin. In principle, this thing is not rational, because Allah is just and He does not punish anyone for the crime of another one. Besides, with these baseless words, the responsibility of a person for his deeds does not go away, and against that which some short-minded persons imagine these meanings do not decrease aught from the man’s punishment. That is why no

court heeds this kind of words that so and so has undertaken its sin. It is right that this person who has encouraged the other has a share in his sin, but this participation .does not decrease his responsibility at all

:Therefore, in the next sentence of the verse, the Qur'ān explicitly says

”And they shall not be bearers of any thing of their sins. Verily they are liars ...“

p: ۴۵۱

(١٣) وَلِيَحْمِلُنَّ أَثْقَالَهُمْ وَأَثْقَالًا مَّعَ أَثْقَالِهِمْ وَلَيَسْأَلُنَّ يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ عَمَّا كَانُوا يَفْتَرُونَ

And certainly they shall carry their own burdens, and (other) burdens with their “ ١٣ . own burdens, and certainly they shall be questioned on the Day of Resurrection as to ”.what they were forging

Commentary, verse: ١٣

.The deviators carry the burden of those who have been deviated, too

In order that there would not come an imagination that these inviters to paganism, polytheism, idolatry, and injustice will not have any chastisement for their action, this :noble verse says

And certainly they shall carry their own burdens, and (other) burdens with their own “ ”... ,burdens

This burden is the burden of the sin of misguidance, seduction, and encouraging others to sin. This is the burden of establishing a bad tradition about which the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) said: “Whoever establishes a bad tradition, the sin of that tradition and the sin of those who commit it are upon him without that anything can be [\(decreased from the sin of the person who performs it.”](#)^(١)

The important thing is that they also share the sin of all those who commit it while these sinners have their own sin without decreasing anything of it, and we know that whoever

p: ٤٥٢

is effective in the preparation of an action, he has a share of that action, though the preparation is simple. The evidence for this statement is the tradition narrated from the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.). Once the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) was accompanied with some of his companions when a beggar came and asked for help, but no one gave him anything. Then a man took the lead and helped him something. Others were encouraged thereby and helped him, too. Here the holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) said: “Whoever establishes a good tradition and others follow him there will be for him his own reward and from the reward of those who follow him without that their rewards be decreased anything, and whoever establishes an evil tradition and others follow him, there will be for him his own sin and from the sins of those who follow him (without that their sins be decreased anything.” (Durr-ul-Manthūr, the Commentary

Similar to this meaning, with some different statements, there has been mentioned in the tradition sources of both great sects of Islam: Sunnites and Shī‘ites; and this is a :known tradition. However, at the end of the verse, the Qur’ān says and certainly they shall be questioned on the Day of Resurrection as to what they ... “ ”.were forging

But, there arises another question here that what is the purpose of this calumny, ?mentioned in the verse that they have to answer its question

Answer: It may refer to the falsehoods they forged to Allah and said that Allah (s.w.t.) .had said that they should worship those idols

Or it may refer to their words that they implicitly said every person could bear the responsibility of another’s sin. But this statement is also a lie and a calumny, because .everybody is responsible of his own deeds

Finally, the Arabic word /θiql/ is often used for the house furniture, and its plural form is /ʾaθqāl/. It has also been used in the famous tradition of the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) who said: “Verily I leave behind me two weighty (very worthy and important) things: the Book of Allah (i.e. the Qurʾān) and my progeny, my Ahl-ul-Bayt. Never, never will these two get separated from each other until they meet me at the Hauḍ of Kauthar (the Pond of Abundance). ...” Besides the Shiʿah, this tradition is accepted by the consensus of the Sunnite and it has been mentioned in all their history, tradition and commentary authentic books narrated from the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) with different statements. Its secret is that after the event of Qadīr-i-Khum and appointing Amīr-ul-Muʾminīn ʿAlī-ibn-Abī-Tālib (a.s.) to the rank of caliphate and government after his death, the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) recommended about Ali-ibn-Abī-Tālib (a.s.) and his progeny in different occasions and many times he (p.b.u.h.) uttered of these kinds of words. Hākīm-i-Neyshābūry has narrated the abovementioned tradition in the book: Mustadrak, part ۳, Page ۴۸. In another tradition its similar Meaning is cited by Tarmathī. He narrated from Kanz-ul-ʿUmmāl, Vol. ۱, P. ۴۴, from the Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) who said: “I leave behind me among you what that if you attach yourselves to it, never, never shall you get astray, the Book of Allah (i.e. the Qurʾān) which is a stretched string from the heaven to the earth, and my progeny, my Ahl-ul-Bayt, for verily Allah, the Merciful, the Aware, informed me that never, never will these two get separated from each other until they meet me at the Houḍ of Kauthar (the Pond of Abundance). Therefore, be careful and contemplate on how you will treat them (after

”).(me

This tradition very well shows the awareness of the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) from the future of his Ummah. It seems that

the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) could see the deviations of the people after his own death that would take place by the authority of a group of ambitious persons, and in order to attract the attention of people more, he said of this kind of statements abundantly. It was specially only a few months after the historical event of Qadīr-i-Khum that at the time of his death with the purpose of confirming the caliphate of Ali (a.s.) the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) wanted to write it down on the paper but, according to Shaykh Mufīd, the sentence which was uttered by one of the companions and created discord, the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) avoided writing anything to hinder the discord, but he recommended .it orally

In this regard you can refer to the history texts of Shi‘ah and the authentic books of tradition and commentary of the Sunnite, including the book entitled: Aṣ-Ṣawā‘iq by Ibn Hajar ‘Aqlānī, P. ۱۳۵ – (Kanz-ul-‘Ummāl) Hindī, Vol. ۱, chapter ‘Al-’Iṭiṣām Bil-Kitāb Wal-Sunnah – The book: Al-Mustadrak by Hākīm-i-Neyshābūrī, Part ۳, P. ۱۴۸ – The Book: Al-Musnad, by Imam Ahmad Hanbal, Vol. ۳, PP. ۱۷, ۲۶, ۲۹ – Al-Murāji‘āt, by Sayyid Sharaf-ud-Dīn ‘Āmilī – The epistle: Fī Ḥadīth-ith-Thaqalayn, by Qawām-ud-Dīn ...Washnuwī, and

According to the citation of Ibn-i-Ḥajar, who is one of the notables of the Sunnite in the book Aṣ-Ṣawā‘iq, this tradition has been narrated by more than twenty persons :from the companions of the Prophet. Some of them are as follows

(Imam-ul-Muttaqīn ‘Ali-Ibn-Abī-Tālib (a.s –۱)

(Imam Hassan (a.s –۲)

Salmān Fārsī –۳

Abūthar Qafārī –۴

Ibn ‘Abbās –۵

Abū Sa‘īd –۶

Jābir-ibn-‘Abdillāh ‘Anṣārī –۷

Abū Hāshim-ibn-Tihān –٨

Hathīfah Yamānī –٩

(Abū-Rāfi‘ Maulā Rassūlillah the Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h –١٠

Hathīfat-ibn ‘Asbad Qafārī –١١

Khazīfat-ibn-Thābit-Zūsh-Shahādatayn –١٢

Ziyd-ibn-Thābit –١٣

Anas-ibn-Mālik’ –١٤

The famous tradition of Thaḡalayn, with abovementioned documents is one of the proofs of Shī‘ah about immediate Imamate and caliphate of ‘Ali-ibn-Abī-Tālib and his progeny, and Shī‘ah has other proofs in this regard, too, including the explicit text of the Qur’ān, that for shortness we do not mention them here

p: ٤٥٦

Noah stayed with his people and exhorted them to goodness for ۹۵۰ years – but they rejected Noah's exhortation, and the Deluge overtook them – Abraham invited his people to abstain from idolatry and to the worship of the only true God and they disbelieved and were punished – When one disbeliever people are caused to perish, Allah raises another one in its place

(۱۴) وَلَقَدْ أَرْسَلْنَا نُوحًا إِلَىٰ قَوْمِهِ فَلَبِثَ فِيهِمْ أَلْفَ سَنَةٍ إِلَّا خَمْسِينَ عَامًا فَأَخَذَهُمُ الطُّوفَانُ وَهُمْ ظَالِمُونَ

(۱۵) فَأَنْجَيْنَاهُ وَأَصْحَابَ السَّفِينَةِ وَجَعَلْنَاهَا آيَةً لِّلْعَالَمِينَ

And certainly We sent Noah to his people, so he remained among them a “ ۱۴ thousand years save fifty years. And the deluge overtook them while they were unjust”.

So we delivered him and the Companions of the Ark. And We made it a sign for all “ ۱۵ peoples”.

Commentary, verses: ۱۴–۱۵

Propagation and training need patience and resistance. This holy verse shows the resistance of Noah (a.s.) and obstinacy of people

However, since the previous verses had some statements about the general trial of people, from here on the verses contain some discussions about the hard trials of the former divine prophets and their peoples that how they were under the pressure and hurt of their enemies, and how they applied considerable patience that finally they gained victory. This was

both consolation for the companions of the holy Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.), who were under the harsh pressure of the powerful enemies of Islam in Mecca, and a threat for the enemies that they should be careful of the painful end of their lifetime

At first, it begins from the first arch-prophet, i.e. Noah (a.s.), and in some short sentences it explains that part of his life that is more suitable with the condition of the Muslims of that day. It says

And certainly We sent Noah to his people, so he remained among them a thousand“
”... .years save fifty years

All days and nights Noah was busy teaching and inviting people to Monotheism. During this long time, that is ٩٥٠ years, using the opportunity both in private and among public, Noah called them toward Allah and he did not become tired from this constant effort, and he did not let weakness and intermission come to him. Yet, they did not believe save a small group (about eighty people as history narrates), that is, every twelve years one person

Therefore, O Prophet! you should not get tired in the way of invitation toward the truth and struggle against deviations, because your program comparing that of Noah is very easy

Now behold that how the end of this cruel and obstinate group of people was. The verse continues saying

”And the deluge overtook them while they were unjust ...“

And thus the length of their disgraceful life ended and their castles, palaces, and dead bodies were buried under the waves of flood

The application of ‘a thousand years save fifty years’ in the verse, while it could say ٩٥٠ years from the beginning, refers to the greatness and length of this time, because the figure ‘one thousand’ which is used in the form of ‘a thousand years’ for

:the length of the time of propagation' is counted a very enormous figure'

The apparent of the above verse shows that this amount was not the whole lifetime of Noah, though the present Torah has mentioned this figure for the entire lifetime of Noah, (Torah, Genesis, chapter ٩), but he lived another length of time after Flood .either, and according to some commentators this time was three hundred years

Of course, this long lifetime comparing the usual life times of our age is very long and it does not seem natural. It is probable that the length of lifetime in those days was different from that of today. Some documents indicate that, in principle, the people of Noah had a long lifetime and, in this course, Noah had also been extraordinary.

.However, this shows that the man's structure lets him have a long lifetime

The studies of the scientists show today that man's lifetime has not a fix and determined restriction. Some people consider it as limited to ١٢٠ years, or less and more than that which is completely baseless, and with the change of conditions it may .vary

Now, by some experiences, scientists could prolong the lifetime of some plants, or some other living creatures, to twelve times of their ordinary lifetime, and in some instances, if you do not wonder, to nine hundred times. If they succeed they can increase the man's lifetime with the same criterion, and man may live thousands of (years. (You may refer to the book: "Mahdī 'Inqlābī-yi- Buzurg

By the way, it must be noted that the Arabic word /ṭufān/ originally means any event that surrounds man. (It derives from Ṭawāf). Then it has been used for abundant water, or a strong flood which covers a vast land and overtakes it, and also it has been used for any thing that is severe, much, and

stretched, irrespective of wind, fire, and water. Sometimes it has also been used in
.(the sense of severe darkness of the night. (Mufradāt by Rāqib and ‘Amid Dictionary

It is interesting that the holy verse says: /wa hum zālimūn/ (while they were unjust)
which means: at the time of the occurrence of the flood, they were going on their
injustice. This indicates that if they had left this deed and became regretful with going
.to Allah, they would not have been involved in such an evil fate

:Then, in the next verse, it adds

So we delivered him and the Companions of the Ark. And We made it a sign for all “
”.peoples

It was made a sign for all peoples and it means that it is a gazing-stock for all people
until the Hereafter Day, because the event of the Ark separated the line of the
believers from disbelievers and distinguished the righteous ones from the guilty ones,
.in order to prove that Noah was truthful in his statement, and his people were infidels

.By the way, the pronoun in the Arabic phrase: /ja‘alnāhā/ refers to the Arc

p: ٤٤٠

(١٦) وَإِبْرَاهِيمَ إِذْ قَالَ لِقَوْمِهِ اعْبُدُوا اللَّهَ وَاتَّقُوهُ ذَلِكُمْ خَيْرٌ لَّكُمْ إِن كُنتُمْ تَعْلَمُونَ

And (recollect) Abraham when he said unto his people ‘Worship Allah and be in owe “
”.’of Him; that will be best for you if you did but know

Commentary, verse: ١٦

Monotheism and piety are at the top of the programs of Divine prophets, and,
.therefore, worship without piety is not so effective

Next to the concisely explained event of Noah (a.s.) and his people, the Qur’ān refers
:to the story of Abraham (a.s.), the second great arch–prophet, and says

And (recollect) Abraham when he said unto his people ‘Worship Allah and be in owe “
”.’of Him; that will be best for you if you did but know

Here, the noble verse has stated two important creedal and practical programs of the
prophets with together, which is invitation to ‘Monotheism’ and ‘piety’. At the end of
the verse it says if you contemplate correctly, following Monotheism and piety is the
best for you, because they save you in this world from pollutions of polytheism and sin
.and affliction, and your next world will also be with perpetual felicity

(١٧) إِنَّمَا تَعْبُدُونَ مِنْ دُونِ اللَّهِ أَوْثَانًا وَتَخْلُقُونَ إِفْكًا إِنَّ الَّذِينَ تَعْبُدُونَ مِنْ دُونِ اللَّهِ لَا يَمْلِكُونَ لَكُمْ رِزْقًا فَابْتَغُوا عِنْدَ اللَّهِ الرِّزْقَ
وَاعْبُدُوهُ وَاشْكُرُوا لَهُ إِلَيْهِ تُرْجَعُونَ

You worship idols besides Allah and you create a calumny, verily those whom you “ .١٧
worship besides Allah do not own for you any sustenance, therefore seek the
sustenance from Allah and worship (only) Him, and be grateful to Him, unto Him you
” .shall be returned

Commentary, verse: ١٧

Through the previous verse, Haḍrat 'Ibrāhīm invited people to worship and obedience
of Allah, and in this holy verse he (a.s.) negates the worship of other than Allah and
counts it useless while, at the end of the verse, he emphasizes again on the worship
.of Allah

Then, Abraham points to the reasons of the nullification of idolatry and condemns
their belief earnestly with different statements, each of which contains a separate
:reason. At first, he says

”... You worship idols besides Allah “

These idols are some statues with no soul. They have no will, no intellect, no sense,
and no understanding, so that their appearance is a clear evidence for the falseness
.of the belief of idolatry

You must be careful that the Arabic word /auθān/ is the plural form of /waθān/ in the
.sense of some pieces of stone which idolaters carve and worship

After this, he goes further and he implicitly says that not only the circumstances of these idols show that they cannot be worshipped, but you also know that you yourselves forge some falsehoods and put the name of the object of worship on them. The verse continues as follows

”... ,and you create a calumny ...“

What kind of reason do they have for this great lie, except some fancies and superstitions

Since the Arabic term /taxluqūn/ is derived from /xalaqa/ which sometimes is used with the meaning of ‘to create and to make’ and sometimes with the sense of ‘to lie’, some commentators have mentioned another commentary upon this sentence which is different from what was said in the above. They have said that the purpose is that you grate these idols (false idols) with your own hand and you create them. (Therefore, the word /’ifk/ means ‘false objects of worship’ and /xalq/ means ‘to grate and to create some stone and wooden idols

Then he refers to the third reason, saying that your worship due to these idols is either for material interests or your fate in the next world, and whichever of them it may be it is wrong, because

,verily those whom you worship besides Allah do not own for you any sustenance ...“

You yourselves accept that idols are not creators, and the Creator is Allah, therefore the giver of sustenance is also Allah. The verse says

”... therefore seek the sustenance from Allah ...“

And since He is the giver of sustenance, then worship and thank Him, too. The verse continues saying

”... ,and worship (only) Him, and be grateful to Him ...“

In other words, one of the incentives of worship is usually thanksgiving unto the true benefactor. You know that the true Benefactor is Allah, then thanks and worship is .also specific to His Pure Essence

And if you seek the life of the next world, the return of all of you is unto Him, not unto :idols. The verse says

”unto Him you shall be returned ...“

Idols are effective neither here nor there. Thus, Abraham (a.s.) condemns their logic .by means of a few short and clear proofs in these verses

p: ۴۶۴

(١٨) وَإِنْ تُكَذِّبُوا فَقَدْ كَذَّبَ أُمَمٌ مِّن قَبْلِكُمْ وَمَا عَلَى الرَّسُولِ إِلَّا الْبَلَاغُ الْمُبِينُ

And if you reject (the Message), so did generations before you and nothing is “ ١٨ .
”.(incumbent on the messenger but a plain delivery (of the message

Commentary, verse: ١٨

.The rejection of the opponents should not hinder the act of propagation

:In this verse, as a threat and also as heedlessness to them, Abraham (a.s.) says

”... And if you reject (the Message), so did generations before you “

And, of course, they were punished severely with a painful chastisement. The verse
:continues saying

”.(and nothing is incumbent on the messenger but a plain delivery (of the message ...“

The objective of “generations before you” is the people of Noah and the nations who
.came to live after them

(١٩) أَوَلَمْ يَرَوْا كَيْفَ يُبْدِئُ اللَّهُ الْخَلْقَ ثُمَّ يُعِيدُهُ إِنَّ ذَلِكَ عَلَى اللَّهِ يَسِيرٌ

Have they not seen how Allah originates creation, then brings it back again? Verily “ ١٩ .
”that is easy for Allah

Commentary, verse: ١٩

Creation, causing to die, and to raise from the dead are the permanent work of Allah; and the world of creation is the manifestation of providence in creating the life and death of phenomenon

In this point, the Qur’ān temporarily leaves out the story of Abraham, and completes the discussion that Abraham had in the field of Monotheism and expressing his own prophethood by mentioning reason upon Resurrection, and concerning the rejecters :of Resurrection it says

”... ?Have they not seen how Allah originates creation, then brings it back again “

The purpose of the act of ‘see’ is the observation by heart and having knowledge about it. It means: do they not know the quality of the creation of Allah? The same One Who had the power of ‘the first creation’ is also able to return it, because having power on one thing is the power on its similar ones, too

This is also probable that the word ‘see’ here is used in the sense of observation by the eye, because everybody observes by his eye that dead lands are quickened, plants grow, babies are born from sperm drop, and chickens are produced from eggs.

.The One Who is able to do such things, is also able to bring the dead to life again

:Then, at the end, as an emphasis, it says

”Verily that is easy for Allah ...“

It is so because comparing the creation on the first day, revival is counted an easier
.work

This meaning, of course, is due to the conception and logic of individuals, else being
easy or difficult has no meaning for the One Whose Power is unlimited. It is our limit
power that creates these concepts and regarding its application, some things are
.difficult and some others are easy

p: ۴۶۷

(٢٠) قُلْ سِيرُوا فِي الْأَرْضِ فَانظُرُوا كَيْفَ بَدَأَ الْخَلْقَ ثُمَّ

يُنشِئُ النَّشْأَةَ الْآخِرَةَ

إِنَّ اللَّهَ عَلَىٰ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ

Say: ‘Travel in the earth and see how He has originated the creation, then Allah “ ٢٠ .’brings forth the later creation; verily Allah is powerful over everything

Commentary, verse: ٢٠

By exact study in creation, we can remove our doubt and know Allah better than .before

Peregrination, traveling, studying the nature, and purposeful excursion is a duty and .value

This holy verse continues the subject of Resurrection. This meaning has been expressed in the form of parenthetical clauses in the middle of the story of Abraham .(a.s)

This is not the first time that we encounter such a method of explanation. This is the style of the Qur’ān that when the statement of a story reaches a sensitive stage, it temporarily leaves the rest of it and pays to the necessary conclusion emerged from .that story

However, this verse invites people to extroversive traveling upon the subject of Resurrection, while the previous verse had mostly the side of introversive traveling. The verse implicitly says that you should travel on the earth in order to see kinds of living creatures, and different nations with their specialties and observe how Allah :(s.w.t.) has originated the creation. The verse announces

”... ,Say: ‘Travel in the earth and see how He has originated the creation “

Then, the same Lord, Who has the power to create these plenty creatures with various colours and different nations, is able to bring forth the next creation, because by the first creation He has proved His Power to all and, truly, He is powerful over everything. The verse says

”.’then Allah brings forth the later creation; verily Allah is powerful over everything ...“

Both this verse and the verse before it prove the possibility of Resurrection through the way of the vastness of Providence, with this difference that the first verse talks about the first creation of man himself and whatever is around him while the second verse commands to study the different states of other nations and creatures so that they see the first life in different features and in various conditions, and be acquainted with the generality of the Power of Allah and understand His ability to the return of this life

In fact, in the same way that proving Monotheism is sometimes possible by observing the ‘introversive signs’ and sometimes by ‘extroversive signs’, proving resurrection can be done through both of them, too

Today, this verse can give scientists some deeper and more exact meaning in this manner that they go and see the effects of the first living creatures in the depth of the seas, inside mountains, and between the levels of the earth. In this way, they can understand a part of the secrets of the beginning of life in the earth as well as the greatness and power of Allah, and do know that He is able to bring back the life

By the way, the Arabic word /naš’at/ originally means ‘to create and train something’ and sometimes the term

naš'at-il-'ūlā/ is used for 'this world' and /naš'at al-'āxirah/ is used in the sense of 'the/next world'

This point is also notable that at the end of the previous verse the sentence: "Verily that is easy for Allah" and at the end of this verse the sentence: "Verily Allah is powerful over everything" are mentioned. This difference may be for the sake that .the first verse states a limit study and the second one indicates to a vast study

p: ۴۷۰

(٢١) يُعَذِّبُ مَنْ يَشَاءُ وَيَرْحَمُ مَنْ يَشَاءُ وَإِلَيْهِ تُقَلَّبُونَ

(٢٢) وَمَا أَنْتُمْ بِمُعْجِزِينَ فِي الْأَرْضِ وَلَا فِي السَّمَاءِ وَمَا لَكُمْ مِنْ دُونِ اللَّهِ مِنْ وَلِيٍّ وَلَا نَصِيرٍ

He punishes whom He pleases and has mercy on whom He pleases, and unto Him “ .٢١
” .you will be turned back

You are not able to frustrate Him either in the earth or in heavens; and you have “ .٢٢
” .not, apart from Allah, either protector or helper

Commentary, verses: ٢١–٢٢

The training style of the Qur’ān is in a manner that when it states the love and wrath of Allah it often begins with love and mercy and then refers to wrath and chastisement, but since this verse is the continuation of the rejection of disbelievers it has begun the words about punishment, and next to it, it has spoken about the Divine .mercy

Then, this holy verse refers to the completion of one of the issues concerning the :Resurrection, i.e. the issue of mercy and punishment. It says

He punishes whom He pleases and has mercy on whom He pleases, and unto Him “
” .you will be turned back

In other words, though His mercy precedes His punishment, here punishment has been mentioned before mercy, because the verse intends to threat and the word .suitable for threat is said in this manner

By the way, this point is also clear that the purpose of the Qur’ānic phrase: /man yašā’/ (whom He pleases) is the Divine Will accompanied with wisdom. That is, whom He knows

deserving and eligible for it, because the Divine Will is not undue and it is consistent
with eligibilities and merits

The Arabic phrase /taqlibūn/ is derived from /qalb/ which originally means: ‘To change a thing from one form into another form’, and since on the Hereafter Day man changes from soil into a complete living being, this meaning has been used for his
second creation

This meaning may also refer to this point that in Hereafter man will be changed in a way that his inward aspect will appear and his interior secrets will be made manifest and, thus, it reminds the meaning of verse ٩ from Sura Aṭ-Ṭāriq, No. ٨٩, which says:
”On the Day when hidden things shall be made manifest

Then, in the next verse, on the completion of this discussion which is about the punishment and mercy of Allah, and that the return of all is unto Him, it adds implicitly that if you think that you can exit from the domain of Allah, the Almighty, and that the
grips of punishment may not seize you, you are in a great err, because

”... ;You are not able to frustrate Him either in the earth or in heavens “

And if you think that a guardian or helper will defend you, you are wrong, too,
because

”and you have not, apart from Allah, either protector or helper ...“

In fact, deliverance from the Divine punishment is either in the case that you go out of the realm of the government of Allah, or that you remain and, relying on the power of others, defend yourself; while neither going out of it is possible when everywhere is
His realm, and all the world of existence

belongs to Him, nor does anyone exist who can stand before His Power and defend
.you

The Late Tabarsy in Majma‘-ul-Bayān says: “A guard in /waliyy/ is he who helps without asking”. Regarding those two words, it can be said that /waliyy/ refers to the guardian who helps without asking him to help, and /naṣīr/ is the helper who comes to
.help after asking him to help

Thus, the Qur’ān shuts all the doors of escaping from the grips of Divine punishment
.to the wrong-doers

p: ۴۷۳

Point

Abraham persecuted and committed to be burnt – But Allah saved him – Lot exhorts his people to give up the sinful ways but they rejected his admonitions and challenged him to bring down chastisement from Allah – Abraham blessed with Isaac and Jacob – Apostleship and the Book vested in Abraham

(۲۳) وَالَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا بِآيَاتِ اللَّهِ وَلِقَائِهِ أُولَئِكَ يَئْسُوا مِن رَّحْمَتِي وَأُولَئِكَ لَهُمْ عَذَابٌ أَلِيمٌ

And those who disbelieved in the signs of Allah and His meeting, these are “ ۲۳ .despaired of My mercy, and these it is that shall have a painful chastisement

Commentary, verse: ۲۳

The only people who are disappointed and deprived from the mercy of Allah are .pagans

:So, in this verse the Qur’ān decisively says

And those who disbelieved in the signs of Allah and His meeting, these are despaired “ ... ,of My mercy

Then, in order to emphasize, it adds and implies that this punishment is a requisite of .being disappointed from the mercy of Allah

The objective of the Qur’ānic phrase /’āyātillah/ (the signs of Allah) is either ‘the signs of nature’; that is, the signs of the greatness of Allah in the system of creation, which refers to the subject of Monotheism; and the Arabic term /liqā’ihī/ (His meeting) refers .to the subject of Resurrection. That is, they deny both the Origin and Resurrection

Or it refers to ‘the signs of religion; that is, the verses that Allah has sent down to His prophets, which talk about both Origin, and prophethood, and Resurrection, and in this case, the application of /liqā’/ is of the kind of mentioning ‘general’ after ‘specific

This probability also exists that the purpose is the entire signs of Allah in the world of creation and religion

It is also necessary to mention this point that the Qur’ānic term /ya’isū/ (they despaired of) is a past form verb, though its main aim is future. The reason is that it is customary in Arabic literature that when the occurrence of future events is completely certain, they are sometimes said in the form of past tense of the verb

:Then, the verse continues saying

”and these it is that shall have a painful chastisement ...“

p: ٤٧٥

(٢٤) فَمَا كَانَ جَوَابَ قَوْمِهِ إِلَّا أَنْ قَالُوا اقْتُلُوهُ أَوْ حَرِّقُوهُ فَأَنْجَاهُ اللَّهُ مِنَ النَّارِ إِنَّ فِي ذَلِكَ لَآيَاتٍ لِقَوْمٍ يُؤْمِنُونَ

But the answer of his people was only that they said: ‘Kill him, or burn him’. Then “ ٢٤ .
”Allah saved him from the fire. Verily in this there are signs for a people who believe

Commentary, verse: ٢٤

When a believer overcomes the whole disbelievers, the worst plots are nullified, and
.fire becomes safe and sound. Each of them is one sign out of the signs of Allah

Now we may see what this misguided group said in answer to those three clear
proofs of Abraham (a.s.) in the field of Monotheism, prophethood, and Resurrection.
Certainly they had no logical answer; therefore, like all strong violent persons with no
logic, they relied on their satanic power and issued the command of his slaughter, as
:the Qur’ān says

”... ’But the answer of his people was only that they said: ‘Kill him, or burn him “

It is understand from this meaning that a group of the pagans said that Abraham
should be burnt while another group suggested his annihilation by sword or the like.
Finally, the first group won since they believed, indeed, that the worst kind of
.execution was burning by fire

There is also this probability that at first all of them were thinking upon his execution
with ordinary means, but later all of them decided to burn him and use the maximum
.intensity of action

Here, there is mentioned no word about the quality of burning Abraham. It is only
:mentioned at the end of the verse

”... .Then Allah saved him from the fire ...“

The explanation of burning Abraham (a.s.) in the fire is mentioned in Sura Al-’Anbiā’,
.No. ۲۱, verses ۶۸-۷۰ which was discussed before

:At the end of the verse, the Qur’ān says

”.Verily in this there are signs for a people who believe ...“

Not only one sign but also there are several signs in this event. From one side, the lack of effect of fire on the body of Abraham was a clear miracle. Change of fire into safety was another miracle. Then inability of this great powerful group against a single person, who apparently had no means, was the third miracle. And the lack of effect of this wonderful and extraordinary event on the heart of those cruel persons was also a sign from the Providence. It took the success from those obstinate people so miraculously that the greatest signs do not affect on them

A tradition indicates that when Abraham was thrown in the middle of the fire, the only thing that was burnt from him was the rope with which Abraham was fastened [\(firmly\)](#) (۱)

Yes, the fire of ignorance and crime of those mischief-mongers burnt only the means of captivity, and Abraham became free; and this is counted another sign. It may be because of these things that in the story of Noah and his deliverance by the Ark, the [Qur’ān says: “... we made it a sign for all peoples.”](#) (۲)

(.In the singular form), and here it says: “Signs” (in the plural form)

p: ۴۷۷

(٢٥) وَقَالَ إِنَّمَا اتَّخَذْتُمْ مِنْ دُونِ اللَّهِ أَوْثَانًا مَّوَدَّةَ بَيْنِكُمْ فِي الْحَيَاةِ الدُّنْيَا ثُمَّ يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ يَكْفُرُ بَعْضُكُمْ بِبَعْضٍ وَيَلْعَنُ بَعْضُكُمْ بَعْضًا وَمَأْوَأَكُمْ النَّارُ وَمَا لَكُمْ مِنْ نَاصِرِينَ

And said (Abraham): ‘You have chosen only idols instead of Allah; the love “ .٢٥ between you is only the life of the world. Then on the Day of Resurrection some of you shall deny the others, and some of you shall curse the others and your abode shall be ”.the (Hell) Fire, and for you shall not be any helpers

Commentary, verse: ٢٥

Among the idolater tribes the idols were the axis and every tribe had a particular idol; for example, Quraysh had an idol called ‘Uzzā, Thaḳīf had an idol called Lāt, the idol of tribes ‘Aus and Khazraj was called Manāt, and these idols were the means of the link .of idolaters with their ancestors

However, by the grace of Allah, Abraham (a.s.) delivered extraordinarily from that great fire, but he only did not desist from stating his aims but also strengthened it with :more speed and enthusiasm. The verse says

And said (Abraham): ‘You have chosen only idols instead of Allah; the love between “ you is only the life of the world. Then on the Day of Resurrection some of you shall deny the others, and some of you shall curse the others and your abode shall be the ”.(Hell) Fire, and for you shall not be any helpers

?How was the choice of idols as the cause of love between the idolaters

:This question can be answered in different ways

The first is that worshipping an idol in every tribe was the secret of unity between them and for every tribe there was a chosen idol. It has been cited about the famous idols of the Age of Ignorance that the people of every city or tribe had an idol, (including the idol of ‘Uzzā belonged to Quraysh, Lāt belonged to Thaqīf tribe and (Manāt was particular to ‘Aus and Khazraj).^(۱)

Another matter was that worshipping idols had created a relation between them and their ancestors and they often pretended by the same pretext that those things were .the traces of their ancestors which they followed

Besides, the chiefs of the pagans invited their followers to worship idols and this was a .ring of join between ‘the chiefs’ and their ‘followers

But on the Day of Hereafter, all these chaffy and rotten links will be broken, and everyone puts its sin on another one’s shoulder while he curses him and repudiates the deed of the other. Even their objects of worship that they wrongly thought they were the means of their relation with Allah and about which they said: “... ‘We only serve them in order that they may bring us nearer to Allah ...’”^(۲), will repudiate them, as the Qur’ān says: “No, soon they (gods) shall deny their worship, and become (adversaries against them.”^(۳)

Therefore, the purpose of ‘denying some of them the others and some of them shall curse the others’ is that on that Day they will repudiate each other, and what was the cause of their link and false love in this world will change into enmity

p: ۴۷۹

Sīrah by Ibn-i-Hushām, Vol. ۱, PP. ۸۶-۸۷ -۱

Sura Az-Zumar, No. ۳۹, verse ۳ -۲

Sura Maryam, No. ۱۹, verse ۸۲ -۳

and hatred in Hereafter, as the Qur'ān, in Sura Az-Zukhruf, No. ٤٣, verse ٦٧ says:

”Friends on that Day will be foes, one to another, except the pious ones

It is understood from some Islamic narrations that this meaning is not particular to idol worshippers but all those who chose a false leader for them and followed him, and had covenant of love with him, on Hereafter Day, will be foes of each other. (Nūr-

uth-Thaqalayn, Commentary, Vol. ٤, P. ١٥٤

The love connection between the believers is based upon Monotheism, theism, and obedience of the command of Allah in this world, which will take the colour of perpetuance here and will be become stronger there. It is understand from Some traditions that in Hereafter the believers even ask forgiveness and intercession for

each other, while the polytheists will be busy cursing each other. (1)

p: ٤٨٠

Tauhīd-i-Sadūgh, according to the narration of Nūr-uth-Thaqalayn, Vol. ٤. P. ١٥٤-١

(٢٦) فَ-أَمَّنَ لَهُ لُوطٌ وَقَالَ إِنِّي مُهَاجِرٌ إِلَىٰ رَبِّي إِنَّهُ هُوَ الْعَزِيزُ الْحَكِيمُ

Then Lot believed in him (Abraham) and he said: ‘I am a fugitive unto my Lord, for “ .٢٦
” .verily He is the Mighty, the Wise

Commentary, verse: ٢٦

Sometimes there had been several Divine prophets at the same time among people,
.but only one of them had been Imam and leader

:This holy verse points to the Faith of Lot and migration of Abraham when it says

”... (Then Lot believed in him (Abraham “

Lot was one of the great prophets of Allah and he was a close relative of Abraham; (it is said that he was Abraham’s nephew) and in view of the fact that following a great person is as following an Ummah, Allah here specially speaks of Lot’s faith, the great personality contemporary to Abraham, in order to make clear that if others did not believe it would not have been important

Of course, it seems that there were some receptive hearts in the land of Babylon to accept the invitation of Abraham, and after observing that great miracle they believed in him, but they were a minority

:Then the verse adds

” .and he said: ‘I am a fugitive unto my Lord, for verily He is the Mighty, the Wise ...“

It is clear that when the Divine leaders had fulfilled their mission in a region and the atmosphere of the environment

was so polluted and under the pressure of the tyrants that it stopped the progress of their invitation, they ought to migrate from that place to another region so that they .can spread the invitation of Allah

Abraham (a.s.) accompanied with Lot and his wife (Sarah) also started to go to Syria, the site of Divine prophets and Monotheism, in order to be able to gather some .persons and means for developing the invitation of Monotheism

It is interesting that Abraham (a.s.) says: “I am a fugitive unto my Lord”. The reason was that this path was the path of Allah, the Almighty, the path of His pleasure, and .the path of His religion

Of course, some commentators have said that probably the pronoun in the Qur’ānic word /qāla/ refers to Lot; that is, Lot said that he is fugitive unto his Lord. The apparent of the sentence is consistent to this meaning, but the historical and Qur’ānic evidence shows that the antecedent is Abraham and the emigration of Lot (a.s.) was .(done in subordination to Abraham (a.s

The Qur’ānic evidence of this statement is Sura As-Sāffāt, No. ٣٧, verse ٩٩ that from the tongue of Abraham says: “He said: ‘I will go to my Lord! He will surely guide (me?’.”(ا

p: ٤٨٢

In relation to the emigration of Abraham from Babylon to Syria, there is a detailed –١ discussion under verse ٧١ on from Sura Al-’Anbiyā, No. ٢١, in Nimūnah commentary, Vol. ١٣, P. ٤٥١ on

(٢٧) وَوَهَبْنَا لَهُ إِسْحَاقَ وَيَعْقُوبَ وَجَعَلْنَا فِي ذُرِّيَّتِهِ النُّبُوَّةَ وَالْكِتَابَ وَعَآتَيْنَاهُ أَجْرَهُ فِي الدُّنْيَا وَإِنَّهُ فِي الْآخِرَةِ لَمِنَ الصَّالِحِينَ

And We granted him Isaac and Jacob, and We appointed the Prophecy and the “ Book to be among his progeny, and We gave him his recompense in the world, and ”.verily in the Hereafter he will certainly be of the Righteous

Commentary, verse: ٢٧

The reward of the sincere services and goodness to father is seen in one’s descendants. In this verse, the Qur’ān refers to the four merits that Allah gave .Abraham after his emigration

The first merit was some worthy offsprings, those who could keep the torch of faith :and prophethood light in his progeny. The verse says

”... ,And We granted him Isaac and Jacob “

They were two great and eligible prophets each of whom could continue the way and .the line of Abraham, the iconoclast prophet

:The second merit was as follows

”... ,and We appointed the Prophecy and the Book to be among his progeny ...“

:The third merit was what is said by the Qur’ān as follows

”... ,and We gave him his recompense in the world ...“

This reward, which has been mentioned secretly, may refer to different affairs; such as ‘good name’ and ‘truthful tongue’ among all nations, because all nations respect Abraham as a great prophet, and boast for his existence, and call him ‘the chief .?prophet

Among his other rewards can be mentioned as: the flourish of Mecca by his supplication, the attraction of all hearts toward him and the yearly recollection of his glorious instructive, faith-creative remembrance in the rites of Hajj ceremonies

:The fourth merit is as follows

”and verily in the Hereafter he will certainly be of the Righteous ...“

As it is understood from many verses of the Qur’ān, being among the righteous ones is the utmost honour that a person may earn. That was why many prophets asked Allah that He would appoint them in the row of the righteous

After gaining the highest apparent victories, Yūsuf asked Allah and said: “... cause me [\(die Muslim \(in submission unto You\) and join me with the righteous.”](#)⁽¹⁾

Solomon, with all glorious rank and magnificence he had, said: “... and admit me, by [\(Your mercy, among Your righteous servants.”](#) (Sura An-Naml, No. ٢٧, verse ١٩

When the contract of Shu‘ayb with Moses finished, he said: “If Allah wills, you will find [\(me one the righteous ones”](#)⁽²⁾

Abraham asked Allah that He might count him among the righteous, saying: “My Lord! [\(Bestow wisdom on me, and join me with the righteous.”](#)⁽³⁾

(And he would have a righteous son. (Sura As-Sāffāt, No. ٣٧, verse ١٠٠

In many verses of the Qur’ān when Allah admires the great prophets, He characterizes them as being among the righteous

It is well understood from the totality of these verses that ‘being righteous’ is the highest stage of the development of a man

What does ‘to be righteous’ mean? It means eligibility from the point of faith and belief, eligibility from the point of action, and eligibility from the point of speech and morals.

The opposite point of ‘righteous’ is ‘corruptible’, and we know that corruption envelops all injustice, cruelties, and indecencies.

In the Qur’ān sometimes /salāh/ is used instead of /fasād/ and sometimes instead of /sayyi‘ah/ which means sin and evils.

Some commentators have said that there is a tender point in the above verse and it is that Allah changed all the inconvenient things of Abraham (a.s.) into their opposites.

The idol-worshippers of Babylon decisively wanted to burn Abraham by fire, but fire – ١
was changed into safety.

They desired that he should be alone forever, but Allah set a very abundant – ٢
population for him so that throughout of the world was filled with the progeny of Abraham.

Some of the close persons to Abraham went astray and became idol worshippers, – ٣
including ‘Āthar, instead of it Allah gave him some children that not only they themselves were guided aright but also they guided others.

At the beginning Abraham had not any wealth and dignity, but at last Allah gave him – ٤
great wealth and dignity.

At the beginning Abraham was so undistinguished that even when the idol – ٥
worshippers of Babylon wanted to mention him, they said: “... ‘We heard a youth (making mention of them, who is called Abraham?’.” (١)

But Allah gave him such a fame that he became known as ‘the chief of prophets, or
(‘the chief of Messengers’. (The Commentary by Fakhr-i-Rāzī

Sura Al-'Anbiyā', No. ۲۱, verse ۶۰ -۱

(٢٨) وَلَوْطًا إِذْ قَالَ لِقَوْمِهِ إِنَّكُمْ لَتَأْتُونَ الْفَاحِشَةَ مَا سَبَقَكُمْ بِهَا مِنْ أَحَدٍ مِنَ الْعَالَمِينَ

(٢٩) أَلَيْسَ لَكُمْ لَتِيَا تُوتُونَ الرِّجَالَ وَتَقْطَعُونَ السَّبِيلَ وَتَأْتُونَ فِي نَادِيكُمُ الْمُنْكَرَ فَمَا كَانَ جَوَابَ قَوْمِهِ إِلَّا أَنْ قَالُوا ائْتِنَا بِعَذَابِ اللَّهِ إِنْ كُنْتُمْ مِنَ الصَّادِقِينَ

(٣٠) قَالَ رَبِّ انصُرْنِي عَلَى الْقَوْمِ الْمُفْسِدِينَ

And (remember) Lot when he said to his people: ‘Verily you commit a lewdness “ .٢٨
” which none of the people of the worlds has ever done before you

Do you approach males and cut the way (of natural matrimony), and you commit “ .٢٩
dishonour in your assemblies? But his people gave no answer except that they said:
.’(‘Bring us the chastisement of Allah if you are of the truthful (ones

”!He (Lot) said: ‘My Lord! Help me against the mischievous people “ .٣٠

Commentary, verses: ٢٨–٣٠

Point

The religious leaders should note the corruptions, evils, and public dangers of the
.society and try to remove them

After stating a part of life story of Abraham, in this verse the Qur’ān refers to a part of
:life story of his contemporary prophet, Lot (a.s.), when it says

And (remember) Lot when he said to his people: ‘Verily you commit a lewdness which “
”.’none of the people of the worlds has ever done before you

The Arabic word /fāḥiṣah/ (lewdness), as was mentioned before, is derived from /fuḥṣ/ which originally means: any word or saying which is very ugly, sharp and biting, and
.’here it ironically means ‘sodomy

It is clearly understood from the Qur’ānic sentence, saying: “... which none of the people of the worlds has ever done before you” that this ugly and shameful action, at
.least in the public and general form, had not been done among no nation and group

Around the qualities of the people of Lot (a.s.) it has been recorded that one of the main factors of their pollution in this action was that they were some miser people. Their cities were on the way of caravans of Syria and, by this action unto some of their guests and travelers, they caused them to become hateful to them, but the desire of
.sodomy strengthened among them and they were accustomed to it

However, they carry both the burden of their own sin and the burden of the sin of those who will follow their action in the future (without that their sin may be decreased anything), because they were the founders of this ugly and evil deed; and we know that whoever creates a tradition he will share the acts of those who commit
.it

Through the next verse, the Qur’ān implies that Lot, this great prophet, stated his
:purpose more clearly, when he said

Do you approach males and cut the way (of natural matrimony), and you commit “
”... ?dishonour in your assemblies

The Arabic word /nādī/ is derived from /nadā’/ in the sense of ‘public meeting’, and sometimes it is used with the sense of ‘a pleasure center’ and ‘to call’ since the people there usually call each other

The Holy Qur’ān has not explained here that what kind of lewdnesses they used to commit in their meetings, but without saying it is evident that they were some deeds consistent to their own ugly action, and as some records written in history books indicate that they used to exchange some abuses and ugly biting words between them. They used to beat at the backs of each other with their palms; they gambled; they had some childish plays, in particular that they threw pebbles to each other and to the wayfarers; they played kinds of musical instruments; and even at the presence of public they committed indecent exposure and sometimes they showed their pudenda

A tradition from ’Umm-i-Hānī from the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) indicates that in answer to the question about “... you commit dishonour in your assemblies ...” he (p.b.u.h.) said: “They used to throw pebbles toward whoever passed by and mocked them.” (The Commentary by Qurṭabī

Now we are going to see what the answer of this astray and shameful people was to the logical words of Haḍrat Lot (a.s.). The Qur’ān says

But his people gave no answer except that they said: ‘Bring us the chastisement of ...’ (Allah if you are of the truthful ones

Yes, those sensual persons, who had not enough intellect and comprehension, said this saying with mockery in answer to the logical invitation of Lot

It is understood from this answer of theirs that, besides his reasonable words, Lot also threatened them by the painful chastisement of Allah if they continued their own way. But

they left all and took only this one mockingly. Something similar to this meaning has also been mentioned in Sura

Qamar, No. ٥٤, verse ٣٤. It says: “And (Lot) did warn them of Our violent seizure but
”they disputed about the warning

This statement of the astray people shows that they wanted to take result from the lack of descent of chastisement and say that Lot was a liar, while it is from the mercy of Allah that He gives respite to the most polluted people in order to study, review,
.and return to the truth

The next verse implies that it was here that Lot could do nothing and turned to Allah
:and, with a heart full of sorrow and grief, asked Him as follows

”!He (Lot) said: ‘My Lord! Help me against the mischievous people “

A people who have made mischief on the earth, have ignored morals and piety, have set aside chastity and modesty, have trodden the social justice, have often mixed paganism and idolatry with immorality, injustice, and cruelty, and have threatened the generation of man to extinction and destruction. So he asked Allah to make him
.victorious against these astray mischief-mongers

At the end, sodomy, whether among men (lawāt) or among women, (lesbianism), is of
.the worst ethical deviations which can be the origin of many corruptions in the society

In principle, the nature of woman and man has been created in such a way that they find their tranquility and sound satiation in being attached to opposite sex (by the way of sound marriage); and, otherwise, any kind of sexual inclination is

deviation from the safe nature of man, and it is a kind of psychic disease that, in case of continuation, it intensifies a day after another, and its result is dislike to the
.‘opposite sex’ by unsafe satiation with homosexuality

These kinds of unlawful relations have some destructive effects on the limbs of man’s body and even they are effective in the nervous system and spirit. They change man from being a complete man and woman from being a complete woman in a way that such women and men who are accustomed to homosexuality will be entangled with an intensive sexual weakness and they will not be able to be a good parents for their
.future children, and sometimes they lose utterly the ability of producing offspring

Those who practise homosexuality may gradually tend to reclusion and also alienation from society and then alienation from themselves, and also involve the psychotic complicated contradiction, and if they do not improve themselves they may
.be afflicted with various psychotic sexual sicknesses

For this reason and for other ethical and social reasons, Islam has intensively banned the practice of homosexuality in any form and manner, and has appointed a serious
.punishment that sometimes it is nigh to execution

The important matter here is that libertinism and seeking miscellaneousness of the material civilized world draw the boys and girls toward this great ugly deviation. At first, it encourages boys to wearing frivolous woman clothing with special ornamentation, and invites girls to wear boy clothing, and from this point deviation and the practice of homosexuality begins so far that the most shameful shapes of
deeds in this field are legally approved, in some countries, and are free from

[any punishment so impudently that pen shames to explain them.](#)⁽¹⁾

:some traditions upon Sodomy and its Punishment

The Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) said: “The thing I fear for my Ummah most of all is –¹
[the act of the people of Lot \(Sodomy\).](#)”⁽²⁾

The Prophet (p.b.u.h.) said: “If you find someone who does the act of the people of –²
[Lot, do know that its punishment in Islam is execution.](#)”⁽³⁾

Imam Riḍā (a.s.) said: “The reason of banning men for men and women for women –³
is the structure of women and the nature of men (that each of them has been created
for the opposite sex), and that going men to men and women to women causes the
cut of generation (of mankind) and also disturbance of the order of management (in
[the society](#)) and wasting the world.”⁽⁴⁾

In answer to the reason of banning of sodomy, Imam Ṣādiq (a.s.) said: “If the act of –⁴
sodomy were lawful, the men would be needless of women, and the generation (of
mankind) might be cut, women remained without husband, and there would exist
many corruptions in the authorization of sodomy. And Allah created women for men
so that they associate with them and gain tranquility by them, and women are the site
[of men’s lust and mothers of their children.](#)”⁽⁵⁾

p: ۴۹۱

Concerning the banning of sodomy and its philosophy in Islam, there was a detailed –¹
explanation mentioned in the commentary of Sura Hūd, No. ۱۱, verses ۷۹–۸۰

At-Tarqīb wal-Tarhīb, Vol. ۳, P. ۲۸۵ –²

Ibid, and Vol. ۷, P. ۲۸۸ –³

Ilal-ush-Sharāyi‘, Vol. ۱, P. ۵۴۷ –⁴

Bihār, Vol. ۱۰, P. ۱۸۱ –⁵

Section ۴: The Mission of Abraham, Lot, Shu‘ayb and Moses

Point

The mission of the Apostles Abraham, Lot, Shu‘ayb and Moses – And the punishment given to the various disbeliever people

(۳۱) وَلَمَّا جَاءَتْ رُسُلُنَا إِبْرَاهِيمَ بِالْبَشْرَى قَالُوا إِنَّا مُهْلِكُوا أَهْلَ هَذِهِ الْقَرْيَةِ إِنَّ أَهْلَهَا كَانُوا ظَالِمِينَ

And when Our messengers came to Abraham with the glad tidings (of a son unto “ ۳۱ him), they said: ‘Verily we are going to destroy the people of this town, for verily its people are unjust’.

Commentary, verse: ۳۱

In Sahīfah Sajjādiyyah, Imam Sajjād (a.s.) mentions some groups of angels each of which has a special responsibility, but those angels who came to Haḍrat ‘Ibrāhīm (a.s.) had several aims. They were missions both for giving glad tidings of a child to Abraham (a.s.), and for announcing the punishment of the people of Lot, and the executives of the Divine punishment

This verse indicates that finally the supplication of Lot was accepted and the command of a heavy and severe punishment for this evil people was issued from the side of Allah. Before their arrival to the land of Lot for performing their mission, the angels of punishment went to the area where Abraham lived for the fulfilment of (another mission, i.e. the glad tidings of the birth of children to Abraham (a.s

The abovementioned verse, at first, refers to their meeting with Abraham (a.s.) and
:says

And when Our messengers came to Abraham with the glad tidings (of a son unto “
”... ,(him

Then, pointing to the cities of the people of Lot, the angels added to their statement
:as follows

they said: ‘Verily we are going to destroy the people of this town, for verily its ... “
”.?people are unjust

The application of the Qur’ānic phrase /hā’ihil qaryah/ (this town) is an evidence that
.the cities of the people of Lot were in the neighbourhood of Abraham’s land

The application of the Arabic word /zālim/ (unjust) is for the sake that they were unjust
both to themselves, who took the way of polytheism, immorality, and corruptibility,
and to others so that their injustice and cruelty involved even all the wayfarers and
.the caravans that crossed that land

p: ۴۹۳

(٣٢) قَالَ إِنَّ فِيهَا لُوطًا قَالُوا نَحْنُ أَعْلَمُ بِمَنْ فِيهَا لَنَنْجِيَنَّهٗ وَأَهْلَهُ إِلَّا امْرَأَتَهُ كَانَتْ مِنَ الْغَابِرِينَ

Said (Abraham to the messenger angels): ‘Verily Lot is in it.’ They said: ‘We know “ .٣٢ very well who is in it; we shall certainly deliver him and his family, except his wife; she ”.’shall of those who stay behind

Commentary, verses: ٣٢

The social title is not important, but the Faith and righteous deed are criterions. Being the prophet’s wife alone is not a value, but being in his accompany and following him is a value. The wives of prophets are not sinless. (Even among the wives of the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.) only a few of them were favoured by the special grace of Allah

This noble verse indicates that when Abraham heard this statement, he worried :about Lot, the great prophet of Allah, and he asked about his fate. The verse says

:(Said (Abraham to the messenger angels “

”... ’.Verily Lot is in it‘

Then the messenger angels, in answer to him, immediately said that he should not be :worried

”... ;They said: ‘We know very well who is in it ...‘

They meant that never Allah chastises evildoers and good doers with together and :His program is completely accurate and calculated. Then, they added

we shall certainly deliver him and his family, except his wife; she shall of those who ...“ ”.’stay behind

It is understood from this verse that in all of those cities there was only one pure faithful family and Allah delivered

them on time, either; as it is mentioned in Sura Ath-Thāriyāt: “But We found not there any except one Muslim household.” (۱) And, moreover, the wife of Lot was also out of the row of believers and, therefore, she was punished

The Arabic word /qābirīn/ is the plural form of /qābir/ with the sense of ‘the one whose companions go only he one remains. The woman who was among the family of prophethood must not separate from the Muslims and believers, but her infidelity, polytheism, and idolatry caused her separation

This makes clear that her deviation was only from the point of belief, and it is not improbable that she had got this deviation from her own environment while at the beginning she had been faithful and monotheist; and in this case there will be no objection to Lot that why he married such a woman

By the way, if there were some other people who had believed in Lot, they would certainly have migrated from that polluted land before this event. It was only Lot and his family that had to stay there until the last hour that he thought his teaching and warning might have an effect in them

There may arise a question here that did Abraham (a.s.) think that probably the punishment of Allah might seize Lot, too, that he expressed his worry about Lot before the angels and they assured him that Lot would be delivered

The clear answer to this question is that Abraham knew the matter but for the certainty of his heart he asked, as this very great prophet had a similar condition about Resurrection and by restoring the birds to life Allah illustrated the scenery of Resurrection in front of him

But ‘Allamah Tabātabā’ī, the great commentator, believes that the aim of Abraham was that he took the existence of Lot

among that nation as a reason for removing the punishment from them, and ‘Allāmah takes help from Sura Hūd, No. ۱۱, verses ۷۴-۷۶ for this purpose, because these verses say: “... he began disputing with Us concerning the people of Lot.” “O Abraham! Forsake this! Indeed the decree of your Lord has come to pass and surely there is (coming (upon) them an irreversible chastisement.” (Al-Mizān, Vol. ۱۶, P. ۱۲۹

But we believe that the answer that the angels gave here about the deliverance of Lot and his family clearly shows that in these verses only Lot was spoken of, while the verses of Sura Hūd pursue a separate matter and, as we said, Abraham (a.s.) asked (this question only for being assured more. (Be careful

p: ۴۹۶

(۳۳) وَلَمَّا أَنْ جَاءَتْ رُسُلُنَا لُوطًا سِيءَ بِهِمْ وَضَاقَ بِهِمْ ذَرْعًا وَقَالُوا لَا تَخَفْ وَلَا تَحْزَنْ إِنَّا مُنْجُوكَ وَأَهْلَكَ إِلَّا امْرَأَتَكَ

كَانَتْ مِنَ الْغَابِرِينَ

And when Our messengers came to Lot he was grieved on their account and “ ۳۳. distressed for them; but they said: ‘Fear not, nor grieve, for verily we shall deliver you and your family, except your wife, she shall be of those who stay behind

Commentary, verse: ۳۳

In a polluted society the men of Allah are in straitened circumstances, and even for protecting their own guests and children they are worried, too

The family relation does not save a person but faith and righteous deed is the key of deliverance. This verse says

And when Our messengers came to Lot he was grieved on their account and “ ... ;distressed for them

Lot’s anxiety was for that he did not know them. They were in the form of some handsome youths, and the arrival of such guests in that polluted environment might become the source of trouble for Lot and probably disrespect before his guests. Therefore, he became seriously thoughtful that what the reaction of those astray, disgrace and shameless people might be before these honourable guests

The Qur’ānic /sī’a/ is derived from /sā’a/ in the sense of ‘to become grievous’; and the Arabic word /ōar’/ means: ‘heart’ or ‘temper’. Thus, the Qur’ānic phrase: /ḍāqa bihim .ōar’ā/ means ‘he became grievous and inconvenient

Some of the Islamic commentators have said that this phrase originally means ‘the distance between the front legs of a camel at the time of walking’ and since when a heavy load is put on its back it decreases the distance of its steps lesser and narrower, this sentence /ḍāqa ʾarʿā/ is mentioned as ironically for a heavy and laborious event

But when the guests found his inconvenience soon they introduced themselves and removed his anxiety and told him those shameless people could not do anything, and :all of them would be annihilated soon. The verse says

but they said: ‘Fear not, nor grieve, for verily we shall deliver you and your family, ... “
”.except your wife, she shall be of those who stay behind

Of course, the verses of Sura Hūd clearly show that when those evil people were informed of the arrival of the guests of Lot they came to him and intended to bother them. Lot, who had not known the angels, became very anxious, wanted to hinder them from doing that action: sometimes with advice, sometimes with threat, sometimes by way of arousing their conscience, saying that: “...is there not among you one upright man?”,[\(1\)](#) and sometimes by the way of suggesting them to marry his daughters. But those disgrace people did not accept anything and they thought only .of their own evil aim

But the messengers of Allah introduced themselves to Lot (a.s.) and by means of Divine miracle made the eyes of those attacking persons blind and caused the heart .of this great prophet to rest

It is notable that the messenger angels of Allah told Lot (a.s.) that he should not fear ,and grieve. Concerning the difference between /ḥauf/ and /ḥuzn/ it is cited in Al-Mizān

the commentary, that /xauf/ is used about the inconvenient probable events and
.huzn/ about some decisive and certain instances

Some commentators believe that the Qur'ānic word /xauf/ (fear) relates to the future
.events and the term /qam/ (grief) relates to the past events

It is also probable that /xauf/ is used in relation to dangerous instances, but /qam/ is
.related to painful events, though there is no danger in them

There is a question here that according to the verses of Sura Hūd the fear and grief of
Lot were not about himself, but he feared that those evil people might make trouble
for his guests while the answer the angels gave him was about the deliverance of Lot
.and his family and these two are not consistent with each other

The answer to this question can be understood from Sura Hūd, No. ١١, verse ٨١,
because when the shameful people came to bother the guests, the angels told Lot: "...
fear not nor grieve, for verily we shall deliver you and your family ...".[\(١\)](#) That is, 'they
not only cannot bother us, but also are not able to hurt you.' Therefore, the angels
took their deliverance certain, and verily it was certain, and they concentrated the
.glad tidings on the deliverance of Lot and his family

p: ٤٩٩

(٣٤) إِنَّا مُنْزِلُونَ عَلَىٰ أَهْلِ هَذِهِ الْقَرْيَةِ رِجْزًا مِّنَ السَّمَاءِ بِمَا كَانُوا يَفْسُقُونَ

(٣٥) وَلَقَدْ تَرَكْنَا مِنْهَا آيَةً بَيِّنَةً لِّقَوْمٍ يَعْقِلُونَ

Verily We are bringing down upon the people of this town a punishment from “ ٣٤ .
”heaven for what they were transgressing

”And certainly We have left a clear sign of it for a people who have sense “ ٣٥ .

Commentary, verses: ٣٤–٣٥

The repetition of sin and persisting to its doing cause the descent of the chastisement
.of Allah

The acquaintance with the philosophy of history and being acquainted with past
generations are regarded by the Qur’ān. In order that the fate of this polluted group
:of people might be made more clear in their mission, the Qur’ān adds

Verily We are bringing down upon the people of this town a punishment from heaven “
”for what they were transgressing

The objective of the Qur’ānic word /qaryah/ (town) is ‘Sudūm’ and the cities and towns
around it where the people of Lot used to live. The population of them has been
(mentioned seven hundred thousand people.)

And the objective of the Arabic term /rijz/ here is ‘punishment’. Its original meaning is
/‘anxiety’, then everything that causes anxiety is called /rijz

p: ٥٠٠

and thus Arabs use it in a lot of senses, like harsh afflictions, plaque, intensive snow
.and hail, idol, the temptation of Satan, and Divine punishment

The Qur'ānic sentence /bimā kānū yafsuqūn/ (for what they were transgressing)
states the cause of their painful punishment that was transgression and disobedience
from the command of Allah, and its application in future form of the verb is an
.indication to the continuation of their ugly deeds

This meaning shows this fact that if those people stopped the continuation of it and
returned to the path of right, piety and purity, they would not be involved in such a
.punishment and their past sins would be forgiven

In this verse the manner of their painful punishment has not been explained, and it
:only refers to the ruins of their afflicted and non-afflicted cities, when it says

”And certainly We have left a clear sign of it for a people who have sense “

But the explanation of their punishment is referred to in Sura Hūd, No. ١١, verse ٨٢ and
Sura Al-'A'rāf, No ٧, verse ٨٤, implying that at first a severe earthquake turned their
cities upside down and then a shower of stone rained on them in a way that their
.bodies and their ruined cities and castles were buried under it

The application of the Qur'ānic phrase /'āyatan bayyinatān/ (a clear sign) refers to the
remaining of the city of 'Sudūm' which, according to the verses of the Qur'ān, was
located alongside the way of the caravans of the people of Medina and Mecca and
they could see it at the advent of Muhammad, the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.), as Sura
Al-Hijr, No. ١٥, verse ٧٤ says: “It is on a way (yet) remaining.”, and Sura As-Sāffāt, No.
٣٧, verse ١٣٧-١٣٨ says: “Verily you pass by their (cities) by day,” “And by night; will you
”?not ponder

(٣٦) وَإِلَىٰ مَدْيَنَ أَخَاهُمْ شُعَيْبًا فَقَالَ يَا قَوْمِ اعْبُدُوا اللَّهَ وَارْجُوا الْيَوْمَ الْآخِرَ وَلَا تَعْتُوا فِي الْأَرْضِ مُفْسِدِينَ

And to Madyan (We did send) their brother Shu‘ayb, so he said: ‘O my people! “ .٣٦
Worship Allah, and look you for the Last Day; and do not act corruptly in the land,
”.making mischief

Commentary, verse: ٣٦

Monotheism and Resurrection are at the top of the godly invitation of the Divine
.prophets

The servitude unto Allah (s.w.t.) and the belief in Origin and Resurrection both are
.some preparation for separation from corruption

Next to the story of Lot and his people, the stories of other peoples, such as the
people of Shu‘ayb, the people of ‘Ād, the people of Thamūd, Korah and Pharaoh,
:come forth. At first, it says

And to Madyan (We did send) their “
”... ,brother Shu‘ayb

As we have repeatedly said before, the application of the word ‘brother’ in the verse
refers to the utmost love and affection of these prophets unto their peoples, and it
shows the lack of seeking domination over them. These prophets, of course, had
.often relation with their peoples, too

Madyan is a city in the west south of Jordan which is called Mu‘ān today and it is
.located in the east of ‘Aqabah Golf, where Shu‘ayb and his people lived

Like other great Divine prophets, Shu‘ayb began his invitation from belief in Origin and Resurrection which are the foundation of any Divine religion. The verse says

”... ;so he said: ‘O my people! Worship Allah, and look you for the Last Day ...“

Belief in Origin causes man to feel constant observation from the side of Allah upon his deeds, and belief in Resurrection reminds man of the great court where everything of man will be dealt with entirely

Belief in these two great principles will certainly have an extraordinary effect in training and improvement of man

The third command of Shu‘ayb was an inclusive practical order which envelops all social programs. He said

”.and do not act corruptly in the land, making mischief ...“

The word corruption has a vast meaning which encompasses any kind of vice, disturbance, destruction, deviation, and transgression. The opposite point to it is righteousness and reconciliation in the concept of which the whole constructive programs are gathered

The Qur’ānic term /ta‘θau/ is derived from /’aθā/ in the meaning of ‘to make mischief’, with the difference that this meaning is mostly used in relation of ethical corruptions.

.Therefore, mentioning the Qur’ānic word /mufsidīn/ after it is for emphasis

(٣٧) فَكَذَّبُوهُ فَأَخَذَتْهُمُ الرَّجْفَةُ فَأَصْبَحُوا فِي دَارِهِمْ جَاثِمِينَ

But they belied him, so the earth quake seized them, and they lay (deed) in their “ .٣٧
” .abodes motionless by the morning

Commentary, verse: ٣٧

The Arabic word /rajfah/ means the shake of the earth. The word /'arājif/ is used for the news and words which cause instability in the faith and spirit of people, and the word /marjūf/ is used for those who say or write such matters

This verse implies that the people of Shu‘ayb, instead of hearkening to the advices of this great reformer, tried to reject him

”... ,But they belied him “

This act of theirs caused that a severe earthquake seized them. The verse continues saying

” ... ,so the earth quake seized them ... “

The Arabic term /jāθim/ is derived from /jaθm/ in the sense of ‘sitting on the knee’ and ‘staying in one place’. It is not improbable that this meaning refers to the fact that at the time of this severe earthquake they were asleep and suddenly they got up. As soon as they sat on their knees, the event did not give them respite, and by falling down the walls, which was accompanied with that fatal earthquake, they lost their own lives

(٣٨) وَعَادًا وَثَمُودًا وَقَدْ تَبَيَّنَ لَكُمْ مِنْ مَسَاكِينِهِمْ وَرَزَيْنَ لَهُمُ الشَّيْطَانُ أَعْمَالَهُمْ فَصَدَّهُمْ عَنِ السَّبِيلِ وَكَانُوا مُسْتَبْصِرِينَ

And (We destroyed) ‘Ād and Thamūd, and it has become clear to you from their “ ٣٨ . dwelling-places, and Satan made their deeds fair-seeming unto them, so he kept ”.them back from the (right) path, though they were keen-sighted

Commentary, verse: ٣٨

Pride, self-admiration, and boasting for wealth and power are some examples of .satanic ornamentations

Man naturally loves beauty and adornment, and the Satan misuses this man’s inner .quality

In this verse, the words are about the people of ‘Ād and the people of Thamūd without mentioning any thing about their prophets (Hūd and Sālih) and their talks to these two obstinate peoples, because they were two known nations that the story of :their prophets has been repeatedly referred to in other verses of the Qur’ān. It says

”... ,And (We destroyed) ‘Ād and Thamūd “

Then, it adds implying that the ruins of their cities in the lands of Hijr and Yemen are .alongside your way

”... ,and it has become clear to you from their dwelling-places ...“

In your journeys toward Yemen and Syria for commerce and trade, every year you cross the land Hijr, which is located in the north of Arabia, and the land of ‘Ahqāf, which is located in the south and near to Yemen, and you observe the ruins of

the cities of 'Ād and Thamūd with your own eyes; then why do you not take an
?example

:Then, the noble verse points to the main cause of their wretchedness and says
and Satan made their deeds fair-seeming unto them, so he kept them back from ...“
”... ,the (right) path

They treated like that while they had keen eyes and intellect. Their nature was on
Monotheism and piety, and the Divine prophets had also shown them sufficiently the
:right path. The verse continues saying
” .though they were keen-sighted ...“

Some commentators have taken this sentence in the sense of having vigilant eyes
and enough wisdom, while some others have meant it into ‘safe nature’, and some
.others into correct use of the guidance of Divine prophets

It does not matter that the holy verse contains all these meanings, indicating that
they were not ignorant, but formerly they knew the truth well and they had vigilant
conscience, enough intellect, and the prophets completed the argument for them, yet
they left the invitation of the prophets and went after the temptations of Satan, and
day after another day their evil deeds seemed beautiful to them, and they reached a
point where they had no way to return. The law of reaction burnt these dry, fruitless
.pieces of wood in fire of their deeds, and this was their own compensation

(٣٩) وَقَارُونَ وَفِرْعَوْنَ وَهَامَانَ وَلَقَدْ جَاءَهُمْ مُوسَىٰ بِالْبَيِّنَاتِ فَاسْتَكْبَرُوا فِي الْأَرْضِ وَمَا كَانُوا سَابِقِينَ

And (We destroyed) Korah, and Pharaoh, and Hāmān; and indeed Moses came “ .٣٩ unto them with clear proofs, but they behaved haughtily in the land, yet they could not ”.(outstrip (Us

Commentary, verse: ٣٩

The end of arrogance is destruction and their evil fate is a gazing-stock. Allah’s way of .treatment is to complete argument and then taking to task will come forth

In this holy verse, the Qur’ān mentions the names of three persons each of whom :was a clear sample of a satanic power. It says

„And (We destroyed) Korah, and Pharaoh“

”... ;and Hāmān

Korah was the epiphany of wealth together with pride, egoism, and negligence. Pharaoh was the epiphany of arrogant power furnished with mischievousness; and Hāmān was an example of being the assistant of the oppressive tyrants. Then, the :verse says

and indeed Moses came unto them with clear proofs, but they behaved haughtily ... “ ”... ,in the land

Korah relied on his own wealth, ornament, treasures, and knowledge, while Pharaoh and Hāmān relied on having army, martial forces, and the great power of propagation .among unaware people

Yet, with those abilities they had they could not precede Allah and escape from the grips of His power. The verse continues saying

”.(yet they could not outstrip (Us ...“

Allah issued the command of destruction of Korah for the land, which was the place of his rest and comfort, and He commanded water, the cause of their life, to destroy Pharaoh and Hāmān. For destroying them, Allah did not mobilize the hosts of heavens and the earth, but what was the cause of their life executed the command of their [\(death!](#)

The Arabic term /sābiqīn/ is the plural form of term /sābiq/ which means: ‘the one who precedes’ and if it says /mā kānū sābiqīn/ (they did not overreach) its concept is that ‘they could not escape from the domain of the Power of Allah with all possibilities they had and be saved from the punishment of Allah; but He annihilated them with abasement and humiliation at the same moment He decided

p: ٥٠٨

The explanation of the life of Korah and the destruction of Pharaoh and his people – ١ .have been mentioned in the commentary of Sura Al-Qaṣaṣ, and Sura Al-ʿAʿrāf

(٤٠) فَكَأَلَّا أَخَذْنَا بِذَنبِهِ فَمِنْهُمْ مَنْ أَرْسَلْنَا عَلَيْهِ حَاصِبًا وَمِنْهُمْ مَنْ أَخَذَتْهُ الصَّيْحَةُ وَمِنْهُمْ مَنْ خَسَفْنَا بِهِ الْأَرْضَ وَمِنْهُمْ مَنْ أَغْرَقْنَا وَمَا كَانَ اللَّهُ لِيُظْلِمَهُمْ وَلَكِنْ كَانُوا أَنْفُسَهُمْ يَظْلِمُونَ

So each (one of them) We seized (in punishment) for his sin; and of them, against “ .٤٠ some We sent a violent tornado (with showers of stones), some were caught by a mighty Blast; some We caused the earth to swallow up, and some We drowned; and it ”.was not Allah to do injustice to them, but they unto their own selves did injustice

Commentary, verse: ٤٠

We must not become proud when Allah gives us respite, since the end of sin is retribution, and it is easy for Allah to punish us with kinds of punishments. Therefore, :in this verse He says

”... ;So each (one of them) We seized (in punishment) for his sin “

Indeed, since there were mentioned four groups in the previous two verses whose punishments were not mentioned there, (the people of ‘Ād, the people of Thamūd, Korah, Pharaoh, and Hāmān), in the above verse their chastisements are stated :sequentially, as follows

”... ,(and of them, against some We sent a violent tornado (with showers of stones ...“

The Qur’ānic word /ḥāṣib/ means: ‘a violent wind bringing with it a shower of stones’.
.’The Arabic word /ḥaṣban/ means ‘pebbles

The objective of mentioning this group is ‘the people of ‘Ād’ that, according to suras Ath-Thāriyāt, Al-Hāqqah, and Qamar, a violent and harsh wind came over them for seven nights and eight days. It ruined their houses and threw their corpses here and there like the leaves of the trees in fall. (1) The verse continues

”... ;some were caught by a mighty Blast ...“

We have said that the heavenly blast is the result of thunderbolts which are usually accompanied with earthquake at the center of its occurrence, and this was the chastisement which came down upon the people of Thamūd, and some other peoples, as Sura Hūd, No. ١١, verse ٩٧ says about the people of Thamūd: “And the (mighty) Blast overtook those who were unjust, so they became motionless corpses in their abodes.” And in Sura Al-Qaṣaṣ, No. ٢٨, verse ٨١ the Qur’ān says: “And We caused the earth to swallow up him ...” This was the punishment which Korah, the rich, proud and arrogant person from the Children of Israel received; and, finally, Allah drowned some others of them. The verse says

”... ;some We caused the earth to swallow up, and some We drowned ...“

We know that this meaning points to Pharaoh, Hāmān, and their followers which has been mentioned in different Suras of the Qur’ān

However, keeping this statement in mind, the above four chastisements are sequentially for the four evil groups whose deviation, stray, and sins were referred to in previous two verses without mentioning their punishments

For an emphasis upon this fact that they got the result of their own deeds and reaped the product of the seed of which

p: ٥١٠

:they themselves had scattered, at the end of the verse, the Qur'ān says

and it was not Allah to do injustice to them, but they unto their own selves did ... “
” .injustice

Yes, the punishments in this world and the next world are some reactions and
embodiments of man's deeds when they close all the doors of improvement and
.return to the truth to them

.Allah is more just than He does the slightest injustice and transgression to any person

Like many other verses of the Qur'ān, this verse clearly strengthens the principle of
freedom of will in man, and makes this fact fully clear that making decision
everywhere and for everything belongs to man himself, and Allah has created him
free, and wanted him to be free. Therefore, the belief of the followers of the school of
fatalism, who also exist among Muslims, is made futile by this strong logic of the
.Qur'ān

(٤١) مَثَلُ الَّذِينَ اتَّخَذُوا مِنْ دُونِ اللَّهِ أَوْلِيَاءَ كَمَثَلِ الْعَنْكَبُوتِ اتَّخَذَتْ بَيْتًا وَإِنَّ أَوْهَنَ الْبُيُوتِ لَبَيْتُ الْعَنْكَبُوتِ لَوْ كَانُوا يَعْلَمُونَ

The parable of those who take guardians besides Allah is as the parable of the “ ٤١ . spider that makes for itself a house but verily the frailest of (all) houses is the house of ”.(the spider, if they but know (this

Commentary, verse: ٤١

To use parables is one of the best methods applied in education, and the best parable .is the parable which is tangible for all levels of people everywhere and in any time

Taking the name of ‘Ankabūt (spider) from this verse, the Sura under discussion has .been entitled ‘Ankabūt

It has been narrated from Plato who said that fly is the greediest insect which, for its livelihood, often sits on pickle, confectionery, a taint, and a wound, but a spider weaves in a corner and has continence. It is interesting that Allah has set the most active and the greediest insect as the prey of the most retiring insect. A fly goes .toward the spider and it hunts the fly by its webs

However, in the previous verses the painful and sad fate of the mischievous, arrogant, obstinate, unjust, and self-loving pagans was stated. In this relation, in this verse there has been stated an interesting parable for those who take objects of worship and guardian besides Allah for themselves, in a way that the more we :contemplate about this parable, the more points we gain from it. It says

The parable of those who take guardians besides Allah is as the parable of the spider “ that makes for itself a house

”(but verily the frailest of (all) houses is the house of the spider, if they but know (this

What an expressive and interesting parable, and what a comprehensive and minute simile it is

You can be careful that every animal and insect has a house or a nest for itself, but none of them is as weak as the spider’s house

In principle, a house must have walls, a roof, and a door and it protects its owner from bad events, and maintains his food and necessary things in it. Some houses have not ceiling but they have at least a wall, or they have not walls while they have ceilings. But the spider’s house, which is made of a few very thin webs that has neither any wall, nor any ceiling, nor any yard, nor any door. These are from one side. On the other side, its materials are so weak and unstable that they resist before no event, and if a mild wind blows, it will tear the webs entirely. If a few drops of rain fall on it, they destroy it wholly. The least flame of fire burns it. It will be torn up even with a little dust, and it will hang on the ceiling

The false objects of worship of this group have neither any profit nor harm, nor can remove any difficulty, nor can be a place of refuge for any one of them on the day of affliction

It is true that this house not only is a resting place for the spider, with its long legs, but also a snare for hunting insects and earning food, while comparing it with the houses of other animals and insects it is very weak and unstable. Those who choose a support other than Allah, their support is as the web of spider. The crown and throne of persons like Pharaoh, the endless wealth of individuals such as Korah, the castles and treasures of the kings all are like the webs of a spider: They are weak, unstable, unreliable and ephemeral before the storm of events

The history also shows that: verily none of these things can be the support of man, but those who rely on their faith and trust in Allah, they have relied on a firm and strong support.

It is also necessary to note that though the house of spider and its webs are used as a proverb for its weakness, that is one of the wonders of the world of creation and paying attention to it makes man more acquainted to the greatness of the Lord.

The webs of spider are made from some viscous liquid which is stored in some very small cavities as small as the needle-point located under its belly. This liquid has a special combination that when it is exposed to the weather it becomes hard and firm.

By its particular claws spider draws that liquid out from these cavities and makes its webs by it.

It is said that by this little liquid that it has, each spider is able to make about five hundred meters web.

Some commentators have said that the weakness of these webs is because of their extraordinary tenderness; else it is stronger than a steel string with the same thinness.

It is surprising that each of these webs sometimes comes out from a very small hole which is in its body. Now you may think that how tender, exact, and narrow every one of these secondary webs is produced.

Besides the wonderful materials which have been used in the structure of a spider's house, its structural shape is also interesting. If you look carefully at the sound houses of spiders, you will see an interesting scenery like a sun with its sunbeams that are built on some particular bases made of the same webs. This house, of course, is a suitable and ideal house for spider, but on the whole, there cannot be considered a house weaker than that; and the objects that they worship other than Allah are like that house.

Regarding the fact that spider is not only of one kind, and some scholars claim that more than twenty thousand sorts of spider have been known until now and each of them has some specialties, the greatness and power of Allah is made in the creation .of this small creature

However, the application of the Qur'ānic word /'auliyā'/ (the plural form of /waliy/) instead of /'aşnām/ (idols) may point to this fact that not only the man-made objects .of worship, but also the leaders of non-religious groups are in the same row

The sentence /lau kānū ya'lamūn/ (if they but know), that is mentioned at the end of the verse, is about the idols and false objects of worship, not about the weakness of spider's house, for its weakness is known to all. Thus, the concept of this sentence is: if they were aware of the weakness of the objects of worship and the position that they have chosen other than Allah, they would know well that these are like the web .of spider from the point of weakness

(٤٢) إِنَّ اللَّهَ يَعْلَمُ مَا يُدْعُونَ مِنْ دُونِهِ مِنْ شَيْءٍ وَهُوَ الْعَزِيزُ الْحَكِيمُ

(٤٣) وَتِلْكَ الْأَمْثَالُ نَضْرِبُهَا لِلنَّاسِ وَمَا يَعْقِلُهَا إِلَّا الْعَالِمُونَ

Verily, Allah knows whatever thing they call upon besides Him; and He is the “ .٤٢
”Mighty, the Wise

And such are the parables We set forth for mankind, but none understand them “ .٤٣
”.(but the learned (ones

Commentary, verses: ٤٢-٤٣

The man’s inclinations to other than Allah (s.w.t.) are in the knowledge of Allah, and we
:must make us ready to answer for it. The verse says

”... ;Verily, Allah knows whatever thing they call upon besides Him “

Instead of relying on other than Allah, which is as weak and baseless as the spider’s
house, we must rely on Allah, Who is the Mighty, the invincible. The verse continues
:saying

”.and He is the Mighty, the Wise ...“

However, in this verse the Qur’ān threatens and warns these negligent unaware
.polytheists, and implicitly says that Allah knows whatever they call other than Him

Neither their manifest polytheism nor their hidden one is concealed to Allah, and He is
the Mighty and the Absolute Wise. If He gives respite to them, it is not for the sake
that He does not know or His Power is finite, but His wisdom requires that He gives
enough respite to them so that He completes the argument to all, and those who are
.eligible for guidance, be guided

Some commentators have taken this sentence as an indication to the pretexts that
the polytheists sought for themselves. They

used to say that if they worshipped those idols, it would not be because of the idols themselves and they were, indeed, some symbols of stars of the sky and of their prophets and angels. They said, in fact, they prostrated for them and respected them, .and their ‘good and evil’, and their ‘benefit and harm’ are in their authority

The Holy Qur’ān implies that Allah knows what things the polytheists call. Whomever they may be and whatever they may be, they are like the web of spider comparing .the power of His command, and they have nothing to give them

The next verse may refer to the rejection of the enemies of the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) who pointed to these parables and said that how is it possible that Allah, Who is the Creator of the earth and heaven, brings forth parables to spider, fly, insects, and the :like? In answer to them, the Qur’ān says

And such are the parables We set forth for mankind, but none understand them but “ .(the learned (ones

The importance and tenderness of a parable is not in its being small or big, but it is in its fitness with the aim. Sometimes its being small is its most significant point of .strength

For example, when the words are mostly about the weak and baseless supports, the parable must be chosen from spider which can illustrate this weakness, instability and lack of resistance better than anything else. This is the identity of eloquence and .elegance

That is why it is said that only the learned ones can recognize the elegance and .elaborations of the Qur’ān

(٤٤) خَلَقَ اللَّهُ السَّمَاوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضَ بِالْحَقِّ إِنَّ فِي ذَلِكَ لَآيَةً لِّلْمُؤْمِنِينَ

Allah created the heavens and the earth with truth, verily in this is a sign for the “ .٤٤
”believers

Commentary, verse: ٤٤

.The creation of the world has an aim. Our look unto the world must have an aim, too

Materialists usually stop in recognizing the phenomena, but worshippers of Allah (theists) pass through phenomena and reach the recognition of Allah and Faith.

:Therefore, this verse announces

”... ,Allah created the heavens and the earth with truth “

There is no vanity and falsehood in His affair. If He brings forth parable to spider and its weak house, it is not undue; and if He has chosen a small creature for the parable, it is for stating the truth, else, He is the creator of the greatest galaxies and systems in .heaven

It is interesting that, at the end of these verses, the Qur’ān emphasizes on ‘Knowledge’ and ‘Faith’. In one place it says: “... if they but know”^(١), and in another place it says: “... but none understand them but the learned (ones).”^(٢) And here it :says

”verily in this is a sign for the believers ...“

This meaning points to this fact that the feature of the Truth is clear like the sunshine,
but it appears in receptive

p: ٥١٨

The current Sura, verse ٤١ –١

The verses under discussion, No. ٤٣ –٢

ones. It needs an aware and seeking heart, a vigilant and submissive spirit before Allah; and if these blind-hearted persons do not see the Divine beauty, it is not .because of its being hidden, but it is because of their blind eyes

The End of Part ۲۰

p: ۵۱۹

REFERENCES

Arabic, Persian Commentaries

- Tafsīr-i-Nemūneh, by A Group of Shī'ah Scholars with Ayatollah Makārim Shīrāzī, . ۱
Dār-ul-Kutub-il-Islāmiyyah, Qum, Iran, ۱۹۹۰/۱۴۱۰. – F
- Majma'ul-Bayān fī-Tafsīr-il-Qur'ān, by Shaykh Abū Ali al-Faḍl-ibn-il-Ḥusayn il- . ۲
Ṭabarsī, Dār-u-Ihyā'-it-Turāth-il-'Arabī, Beirut, Lebanon, ۱۹۶۰/۱۳۸۰ A.H. – A
- Al-Mīzān fī Tafsīr-il-Qur'ān by 'Allamah as-Sayyed Muhammad Ḥusayn at- . ۳
Ṭabāṭabā'ī, al-A'lamī lil-Matbu'āt, Beirut, Lebanon, ۱۹۷۲/۱۳۹۲ A.H. – A
- Atyab-ul-bayān fī Tafsīr-il-Qur'ān by 'Āyatullah Sayyed 'Abdul-Ḥusayn Ṭayyib, . ۴
Moḥammadī Publishing House, Isfahan, Iran, ۱۹۶۲/۱۳۸۲ A.H. – F
- Ad-Durr-ul-Manthūr fī-Tafsīr-il-Ma'thūr by Imam 'Abd-ur-Raḥmān Al-Suyūtī, Dār- . ۵
ul-Fikr, Beirut, Lebanon, ۱۹۸۳/۱۴۰۳ A.H. – A
- Al-Tafsīr-ul-Kabīr by Imam Fakhr-i-Rāzī, Dār-ul-kutub-il-'islmiyyah, Tehran, . ۶
۱۹۷۳/۱۳۵۳. – A
- Al-Jāmi' li-Aḥkām-il-Qur'ān (Tafsīr-ul-Qarṭabī) by Moḥammad-ibn-Aḥmad al- . ۷
Qurtabī, Dār-ul-Kutub-il Miṣriyyah, ۱۹۶۷/۱۳۸۷. – A
- Tafsīr-i-Nūr-uth-Thaqalayn by 'Abd-i-'Ali-ibn Jum'at-ul-'Arūsī al-Huweyzī, al- . ۸
Maṭba'atul-'ilmiyyah, Qum, Iran, ۱۹۶۳/۱۳۸۳ A.H. – A
- Tafsīr-i-Rūḥ-ul-Janān by Jamāl-ud-Dīn Abul-Futūḥ Rāzī, Dār-ul-kutub-il- . ۹
Islāmiyyah, Tehran, ۱۹۷۳/۱۳۹۳ A.H. – F
- Tafsīr-i-Ruḥ-ul-Bayān by Ismā'īl Haqqī al-Burūsawī; Dār-u-Ihyā'-ut-Turāth- . ۱۰
il-'Arabī, Beirut. – A

English Translations of the Qur'ān

The Holy Qur'ān, Text, Translation and Commentary by Abdullah

,Yusuf Ali, Publication of the Presidency of Islamic Courts Affairs

.State of Qatar, ١٩٤٦

,The Holy Qur'ān, Arabic Text by a Group of Muslim Brothers

.English Translation and footnotes by M. H. Shākir, Tehran, Iran

The Glorious Koran, Bi-lingual Edition with English Translation by

,Marmaduke Pickthall, printed in Great Britain by W. J. MacKay Ltd

.Chatham, Kent, London

p: ٥٢٠

Al-Mizān, An Exegesis of the Qur'ān

by Al-Allamah as-Sayyid Muḥammad Ḥusayn-at-Tabātabā'ī, Translated by

.Sa'yyid Sa'eed Akhtar Rizvi, Vol. ۱, Tehran, WOFIS, ۱۹۸۳

The Koran Translated with notes by N. J. Dawood, Penguin

.Books Ltd., New Yurk, U.S.A, ۱۹۷۸

,The Koran Interpreted, Translated by Arthur J. Arberry

.London, Oxford University Press, ۱۹۶۴

The Glorious Koran, Translated with Commentary of Divine

Lights by Ali Muhammad Fazil Chinoy, Printed at the Hyderabad Bulletin

.Press, Secanderabad-India, ۱۹۵۴

Holy Qur'ān, Shakir, M. H., Ansariyan Publications, Qum, Islamic

.Republic of Iran, ۱۹۹۳

The Holy Qur'ān with English

Translation of the Arabic Text and Commentary According to the Version of

the Holy Ahlul-Bayt

,by S. V. Mir Ahmad Ali, published by Tarike-Tarsile Qur'ān, Inc, New York

.۱۹۸۸

A Collection of Translation of the

,Holy Qur'ān

,supplied, corrected and compiled by Al-Balāq Foundation, Tehran, Iran

(unpublished)

Supporting Technical References

- Nahjul – Balāqah, by as – Sayyed ar – Raḍī, Dār – ul – Kitāb al

.Lubnānī, Beirut, Lebanon, ۱۹۸۲

- Sharḥ – i – Nahjul – Balāqah, by Ibn – i – Abil – Ḥadīd, Dār – u – Ihyā’ – il

.Kutub – il – ‘Arabiyyah, Egypt, ۱۹۵۹/۱۳۷۸ A.H

Nahj–ul–Balāqah of Amir al–Mu’mineen ‘Ali ibn Abī

Tālib, selected and compiled

by as–Sayyed Abul–Hassan ‘Ali ibn al–Ḥusayn ar–Raḍī al–Musawī, Translated

, (by Sayyed Ali Raza, World Organization For Islamic Services (WOFIS

.Tehran, Iran, ۱۹۸۰

Nahjul Balāghah – Ḥazrat Ali, Translated by Sheikh Hassan Sa‘eed, Chehel

.Sotoon Library Theological School, Tehran, Iran, ۱۹۷۷

Al–Kāfī by ash–Shaykh Abu Ja‘far Muhammad ibn Ya‘qūb ibn Ishāq al–Kulaynī

.ar–Rāzi, Translated and published by WOFIS, Tehran, Iran, ۱۹۸۲

Shī‘ah, by Allamah Sayyid Muḥammad Ḥusayn Tabātabā’ī, translated by

.Sayyid Hosein Nasr, Qum, Ansariyan Publications, ۱۹۸۱

,Williams Obstetrics, Pritchard, Jack A., ١٩٢١; MacDonald, Paul C

.Appleton-Century-Crofts, New York, U.S.A., ١٩٧٤, ١٩٣٠

,The Encyclopedia Americana, Americana Corporation, New York, Chicago

.Washington, D.C., U.S.A., ١٩٤٢

Compton's Encyclopedia and Fact-Index, F.E. Compton Company printed in U.S.A.,

.١٩٧٨

Webster's New Twentieth century Dictionary of the

English Language Unabridged, Second

Edition, by Noah Webster, Published by the World Publishing Company, Cleveland

.and New York, U.S.A., ١٩٥٣

Phraseological and Philological Sources

A Glossary of Islamic Technical Terms

.Persian-English, by M.T

,Akbari and others, Edited by B. Khorramshahi, Islamic Research Foundation

.Āstān - Quds - Razavī, Mashhad, Iran, ١٩٩١

Al-Mawrid, a Modern Arabic-English Dictionary, Third Edition, by Dr. Rohi Baalbaki,

Dār-el-‘Ilm

.Limalayin, Beirut, Lebanon, ١٩٩١

,Elias' Modern Dictionary, Arabic-English, by Elias A. Elias Ed. E. Elias, Beirut

.Lebanon, ١٩٨٠

An Introduction to Arabic Phonetics and the

Orthoepy of the Qur'ān, by

,Bahman Zandi, Islamic Research Foundation, 'Āstān – Quds – Razavī

.Mashhad, Iran, ۱۹۹۲

A Concise Dictionary of Religious Terms

Expressions (English–Persian Persian–English), by Ḥussein Vahīd Dastjerdī, Vahid

,Publications

.Tehran, Iran, ۱۹۸۸

,Arabic–English Lexicon, by Edward William Lane, Librarie Du Liban

.Beirut, Lebanon, ۱۹۸۰

,A Dictionary and Glossary, by Penrice B.A. Curzon Press Ltd., London

.Dublin, Reprinted, ۱۹۷۹

,Webster's New World Dictionary, Third College Edition, by David B. Guralnik

.Simon Schuster, New York, U.S.A., ۱۹۸۴

The New Unabridged English–Persian Dictionary, by Abbas Aryanpur (Kashani), Amir

Kabir

.Publication Organization, ۱۹۶۳

,The Larger Persian English Dictionary, by S. Haim, published in Farhang Mo'āser

.Tehran, Iran, ۱۹۸۵

p: ۵۲۲

A

Abūthar, P. ۱۷۷

Allāmah 'Amīnī, P. ۳۴۷

Allāmah Sayyid Sharaf-ud-Dīn Jabal 'Āmilī, P. ۴۲۳, ۴۵۵

Allāmah Tabātabā'ī, P. ۴۳۴, ۴۹۵

Ammār, P. ۱۷۶, ۱۷۷, ۴۲۷

Aqabah Golf, P. ۵۰۲

Āshūrā, P. ۲۲۴

Āyishah, P. ۵۵

Ayyāshī, P. ۱۷۷

Abūthar Qaffārī, P. ۴۵۵

Ād, P. ۱۸۶, ۳۵۳, ۵۰۲, ۵۰۶, ۵۰۹

The land of, P. ۳۵۳ –

The people of, P. ۵۱۰ –

Anas-ibn-Mālik, P. ۴۵۶

Āsif Burkhiyā: P. ۵۰, ۹۸, ۱۰۱, ۱۰۲

The knowledge of, p. ۱۰۲ –

Āsiyah, P. ۲۳۹, ۲۴۰, ۲۴۸

The triumph of, P. ۲۳۹ –

Pharaoh's wife, P. ۲۴۸ –

Aaron (Hārūn), P. ۳۰۵, ۳۰۷

Was older than Moses, P. ۳۰۵ –

Abbās, P. ۵۵, ۵۹, ۶۰

Abū Rāfi‘, P. ۴۵۵

Abū-‘Abdullah-Jabalī, P. ۲۰۰

Abūbakr: P. ۴۸, ۵۵, ۵۶, ۵۷, ۶۰

Abū-Hamzah Thābit-ibn-’Abī-Saffiyyih Dinār, P. ۲۲۴

Abūhāshim-ibn-Tihānī, P. ۴۵۵

Abūsa‘īd Khidry, P. ۱۰۲, ۴۵۵

Abū-Sa‘īd-il-Khudrī, P. ۲۲۶

Abūsufyān, P. ۳۴۹

Abūtālib, Ali's father, P. ۳۴۷, ۳۴۸, ۳۴۹

The Prophet went to visit him, P. ۳۴۷ –

Adam, P. ۱۶۴, ۲۵۵, ۳۸۳

Age of Ignorance, P. ۱۸۳

p: ۵۲۳

Ahl-ul-Bayt (a.s.): P. ۴۸, ۱۰۳, ۲۰۰, ۲۲۳, ۳۴۹, ۴۵۴

The government of, P. ۱۸۳ –

The Imams of, P. ۱۰۳, ۲۲۳ –

The narrations of, P. ۳۴۹ –

The virtue of: P. ۱۰۴, ۲۲۶ –

Ahqāf, P. ۳۵۳

Ahqāf, P. ۵۰۵

Ali-ibn-'Ibrāhīm, P. ۱۷۶

Ali-ibn-Fāriq, P. ۵۷, ۲۴۸

(Allah (s.w.t

His Name, P. ۵۲ –

Is the Judge, P. ۳۷۰ –

Is the Mighty, The Wise, P. ۳۲۰, ۳۴۷ –

The Benefactor, P. ۳۷۵ –

The Essence of, P. ۳۵۹, ۴۲۰, ۴۲۲ –

The Exalted Name of, P. ۱۰۰ –

The Grace of, P. ۱۴۴, ۱۶۶, ۲۶۸, ۲۷۷, ۳۲۳ –

The Mercy of, P. ۳۷۴ –

The Might of, P. ۳۵۰ –

The Most Generous, P. ۳۶۷ –

The Power of, P. ۱۸۳, ۳۶۸, ۳۹۶, ۴۶۹, ۵۰۸ –

The Will of, P. ۲۴۴ –

The Wrath of, P. ۳۱۶, ۳۷۷ –

Allāmah Majlisī, P. ۱۷۷, ۱۸۵, ۲۲۶

Amīr-ul-Mu'minīn Ali (a.s.), P. ۲۰۰

Ardeshīr Khurra: P. ۲۶

Ark, P. ۴۶۰

The event of, P. ۴۶۰ –

B

Babylon, P. ۴۸۱, ۴۸۵

The worshippers of, P. ۴۸۵ –

Bakr-ibn-'A'yan, P. ۱۸۵

Battle of Badr, P. ۱۵۹, ۱۷۲

Battle of Jamal, P. ۱۷۲

p: ۵۲۴

Bedouin, P. ۲۶

Bilqiys, P. ۷۳, ۸۴, ۹۵, ۱۰۴, ۱۰۸

Black Stone, P. ۱۴۵

Blast of Trumpet, P. ۱۹۳

Blast, P. ۱۹۴, ۵۱۰

Bushr-ibn-Qalib, P. ۳۱۹

Byzantine, P. ۷۹

C

Cairo, P. ۲۱۶

Children of Israel, P. ۴۱, ۴۴, ۱۶۴, ۱۶۶, ۱۸۴, ۲۱۶, ۲۱۷, ۲۱۸, ۲۲۲, ۲۲۸, ۲۳۴, ۲۳۸, ۲۴۵, ۲۴۸, ۲۵۳, ۲۵۵,
۲۵۷, ۲۶۲, ۳۲۳, ۳۲۴, ۳۸۱, ۳۸۸, ۳۹۱, ۳۹۵, ۴۱۲, ۵۱۰

A threat for, P. ۱۶۷ –

Pregnant women of, p. ۲۳۲ –

The boys of, P. ۲۳۶ –

The learned men of, P. ۳۹۳, ۳۹۹, ۴۰۱ –

The Oppressed ones of, P. ۲۲۱ –

Christ, P. ۳۶۲

Christian, P. ۳۳۸, ۳۴۱

Whom Najāshī sent to Mecca, P. ۵۳۸ –

Companions of the Cave, P. ۱۸۴

Coptic, P. 216, 217, 234, 248, 253, 265, 279, 304

Being killed by Moses, P. 254, 255 –

D

David, P. 17, 43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 52, 55, 56, 59, 115, 130, 136

Day of Hereafter, P. 359, 361, 409, 434, 479

Day of Judgment, P. 166

Day of retribution, P. 370

Divine forgiveness, P. 437

p: 525

E

Egypt, P. ۳۰, ۳۱, ۳۲, ۲۴۹, ۲۹۶, ۳۰۴, ۳۰۷, ۳۱۲, ۳۱۳, ۳۲۳, ۴۰۶, ۴۱۱

Moses was sent from, P. ۴۱۱ –

Moses' victory spread in, P. ۳۱۲ –

The capital of, P. ۲۱۶, ۲۵۱ –

The houses of, P. ۲۱۷ –

The people of, P. ۳۳۴ –

The Queen of, P. ۲۴۴, ۲۴۷, ۲۶۲ –

Egyptian, P. ۲۱۸, ۳۳۴

Ethiopia, P. ۳۳۸, ۳۴۶

Europe, P. ۴۰۰

Evangel, P. ۱۶۳

Exodus, P. ۲۹۶

F

Fadak, P. ۵۵, ۵۷

Faḍl-ibn-Shāthān, P. ۲۲۴

Fakhr-i-Rāzī, P. ۳۵۷

Fatimah (a.s.), P. ۵۵, ۵۷, ۵۹, ۶۰

The speech of, P. ۵۷ –

Fatimah-Bent-i-Asad, P. ۳۴۹

Fire, blazing, P. ۳۲۰

Flood of Noah, P. ۴۵۹

G

Gabriel, P. ۴۱۰

Gālileh, P. ۱۹۷

Genesis, P. ۴۵۹

God of Moses, P. ۳۱۳

p: ۵۲۶

Hākīm-i-Neyshābūrī, P. ۴۵۴

Hāmān, P. ۲۲۲

Hāmān, P. ۵۰۷, ۵۰۹, ۵۱۰

Hārūn (Aaron), P. ۳۰۵

Hassan-ibn-Mahbūb, P. ۲۲۴

Hassan-ibn-Solaymān Al-Hillī, P. ۲۲۶

Hathīfa Yamānī, P. ۴۵۵

Hathīfah, P. ۱۷۶

Hathifat-ibn-ʿAsbad Qafārī, P. ۴۵۵

Hell, P. ۲۰۱, ۲۲۹, ۳۱۷, ۳۳۷

The fire of, P. ۳۲۰, ۳۵۹ –

Hereafter, P. ۲۶, ۱۲۸, ۱۵۱, ۱۵۸, ۱۷۴, ۱۸۰, ۱۸۱, ۱۸۳, ۱۸۶, ۱۸۷, ۱۹۳, ۳۲۴, ۳۵۹, ۳۷۶, ۳۸۲, ۳۸۴, ۳۸۸, ۴۰۴,
۴۱۳

The Day of, P. ۱۰۰, ۱۶۶, ۱۷۴, ۲۰۱, ۳۱۷, ۳۵۹, ۳۶۵, ۳۶۶, ۴۳۳, ۴۴۵, ۴۶۰, ۴۸۰ –

The good abode of, P. ۴۰۸ –

The signs of, P. ۱۷۳ –

Al-Hidāyat-us-Sunniyyah, P. ۱۷۱

Hijāz, P. ۱۵۶, ۳۵۵

Hijr, P. ۵۰۵

Hirrā, P. ۴۱۵

Holy Mosque, P. ۱۴۶

Hurr ‘Āmelī, P. ۲۲۵, ۲۲۷

Narrated tradition about raj‘at, P. ۲۲۵ –

Husham-ibn-‘Abdul-Malik, P. ۲۵۸

Hussayn, Imam (a.s.), P. ۱۰۵, ۲۲۴, ۲۲۵, ۳۱۹, ۳۲۰

I

Īqāth, P. ۲۲۷’

Ithbāt-ur-Raj‘ah, P. ۲۲۵’

Ibn-‘Abbās, P. ۵۵, ۴۱۸, ۴۵۵

Ibn-’Abil-Hadīd Mu‘lazily, P. ۵۷

Imam Bāqir (a.s.), P. ۹۸, ۱۱۶, ۱۴۵, ۱۸۵, ۲۰۰, ۲۲۴, ۲۴۶, ۲۸۷, ۳۳۶, ۳۷۸, ۴۰۱

p: ۵۲۷

Imam Hādī, P. ٩٨, ١٠١

Imam Riḍā (a.s.), P. ٢٥٥, ٢٧٨, ٢٨٧, ٤٢٤, ٤٩١

Imam Sādiq (a.s.), P. ١٨, ٣٨, ٤١, ٧٠, ٨٩, ٩٣, ١٠٤, ١٠٥, ١٤٦, ١٧٦, ١٨٥, ١٨٦, ٢٠٩, ٢٢٥, ٢٦٠, ٢٨٨, ٣٣٦,
٤٠٢, ٤٠٣, ٤٠٧, ٤١٤, ٤٤٣, ٤٤٤, ٤٩١

Imam Sajjād (a.s.), P. ٢٢٣, ٢٥٨

Imrān, the Son of, P. ٤١١

J

Jābir, P. ٤١٣

Jābir-ibn-‘Abdullah Ansārī, P. ٤٥٥

Jacob, P. ٥٦, ٥٩

Jawād, Imam (a.s.), P. ١٠٥

Jesus, P. ١٦٤, ٣٦٢

Jews, P. ٣٣٨, ٣٤١

The deviated one of, P. ٣٤١ –

Jinns, P. ٣٦٢

Jordan, P. ٥٠٢

Judgment, P. ١٦٦

K

Ka‘bah, P. ١٤٥, ٣٥١, ٤١٠

Kanz-ud-Daqā’iq, P. ٧٠

Karbalā, P. ١٠٥, ٢٢٥

Kāzim, Imam (a.s.), P. ١٠٥

Kepernic, P. ١٩٧

Kashshāf, P. ٤٠٤

Khazifat-ibn-Thābit-Zū-Shahādatayn, P. ٤٥٤

Kheybar, P. ٥٥

Khidr, P. ٥٠

Khofo, P. ٢١٤

Kitāb-ul-Farā'id, P. ٥٥

Korah, P. ١٠٣, ٢٠٣, ٢١٠, ٣٧٩, ٣٨٠, ٣٨١, ٣٨٢, ٣٨٣, ٣٨٥, ٣٨٦, ٣٨٧, ٣٨٨, ٣٩٠, ٣٩٣, ٣٩٤, ٣٩٧, ٣٩٩, ٤٠٠, ٤٠١,
٤٠٤, ٤٠٥, ٥٠٧

p: ٥٢٨

In the place of, P. ۳۹۳ –

His ultimate impudence, P. ۳۹۴ –

The glorious rank of, P. ۳۹۸ –

Kūfah, P. ۲۲۵, ۴۱۴

Kulaynī, P. ۲۲۶

L

Lāt, an idol, P. ۴۷۸

Layā, the second daughter of Shu‘ayb, P. ۲۸۵

Lot, P. ۱۷, ۱۳۰, ۱۳۳, ۱۳۶, ۴۸۸, ۴۸۹, ۴۹۱, ۴۹۴, ۴۹۵, ۴۹۶, ۴۹۸

The deliverance of, P. ۴۹۹ –

The land of, P. ۴۹۲ –

The logic of, P. ۱۳۳, ۱۸۶ –

The people of, P. ۳۵۳, ۴۸۷ –

M

Al-Murāji‘āt, P. ۴۵۵

Madīnat-ur-Rasūl, P. ۴۱۱

Madyan, P. ۳۰, ۲۴۹, ۲۶۹, ۲۷۰, ۲۷۱, ۲۷۲, ۲۷۳, ۲۸۴, ۲۹۵, ۳۲۳, ۳۲۵, ۵۰۲

Moses went toward, P. ۲۶۹ –

The people of, P. ۳۲۵ –

Mahdī, Haḍrat (a.s.), P. ۱۴۵, ۱۴۶, ۱۷۸, ۱۸۲, ۲۲۳, ۲۲۴, ۲۲۶, ۲۲۷, ۴۵۹

The government of, P. ۲۲۴ –

Malik-ibn-‘Aṭiyyih, P. ۲۲۴

Marwah, P. ۱۷۳

Maryam, P. ۱۶۴

Mecca, P. ۱۲۴, ۲۰۳, ۲۰۴, ۲۰۵, ۳۳۸, ۳۵۱, ۳۵۳, ۴۱۰, ۴۱۱, ۴۱۲, ۴۲۷, ۴۲۸, ۴۳۰, ۴۳۹, ۴۴۷, ۴۴۸, ۴۸۴

As cure place, P. ۳۵۲ –

Mother of Cities, P. ۳۵۱ –

Pretext seekers of, P. ۳۵۶ –

The idolaters of, P. ۳۴۶ –

The pagans of, P. ۱۲۴, ۳۳۲, ۳۵۰ –

p: ۵۲۹

The pagans of, P. ۳۵۴ –

The people of, P. ۲۰۵, ۳۲۵, ۳۴۵, ۳۵۳ –

Medina, P. ۲۰, ۱۰۵, ۳۵۴, ۴۱۰

The pagans of, P. ۳۵۴ –

The people of, P. ۵۰۴ –

Moses, P. ۱۷, ۳۱, ۳۲, ۳۳, ۳۴, ۳۷, ۳۸, ۳۹, ۴۴, ۵۰, ۱۱۵, ۱۱۹, ۱۳۰, ۲۱۴, ۲۲۳, ۲۲۸, ۲۳۱, ۲۳۵, ۲۳۷, ۲۴۲, ۲۴۶, ۲۴۸, ۲۴۹, ۲۵۰, ۲۵۱, ۲۵۲, ۲۵۳, ۲۵۴, ۲۵۵, ۲۵۷, ۲۶۲, ۲۶۳, ۲۶۴, ۲۶۵, ۲۶۷, ۲۶۹, ۲۷۳, ۲۷۴, ۲۷۵, ۲۷۶, ۲۷۷, ۲۷۸, ۲۸۱, ۲۸۳, ۲۸۴, ۲۸۵, ۲۹۳, ۲۹۴, ۲۹۵, ۲۹۸, ۳۰۰, ۳۰۱, ۳۰۲, ۳۰۵, ۳۰۶, ۳۱۲, ۳۲۱, ۳۲۳, ۳۲۴, ۳۲۷, ۳۲۹, ۳۸۰

Heard the call of Allah, P. ۲۹۹ –

His Rod, P. ۳۴, ۱۷۶, ۱۷۸, ۳۳۲, ۴۲۷, ۴۴۹ –

His struggle against sorcerers, P. ۳۱۱ –

His wife, P. ۲۹۷ –

Mid-wife of, P. ۲۴۰ –

Mother's house of, P. ۲۳۳ –

Sister of, P. ۲۳۳, ۲۳۸, ۲۴۳ –

The advent of, P. ۲۱۷, ۳۲۶ –

The people of, P. ۱۲۰, ۲۲۵ –

Mosqalat-ibn-Hubarat-ish-Shaybānī, P. ۲۶

Mu'āwiyah, P. ۳۴۹

Mufid, Shaykh, P. ۲۲۶

Mufradāt, P. ۱۴۰, ۱۸۱, ۲۳۷, ۴۶۰

Muhaddith Jazā'irī, P. ۲۲۷

Muhammad-ibn-'Abdul-Wahāb, P. ۱۷۱

Muhammad-ibn-Muslim-Zuhārī, P. ۲۵۸

,Murtaḍā, the Late Sayyid, P. ۱۸۲, ۲۲۶

Murtaḍā, 'Alam-ul-Hudā, P. ۲۵۶

N

Najāshī, P. ۳۳۸

Najrān, P. ۳۳۸, ۳۴۶

Netherlands, P. ۱۹۷

Nile, river, P. ۲۳۸

p: ۵۳۰

The bank of, P. ۲۴۳ –

The waves of, P. ۳۳۶ –

Noah, P. ۳۰۸, ۴۵۷, ۴۵۸

Nudbah Supplication, P. ۴۲۴

Nūh, P. ۱۱۷

Numrūd, P. ۲۳۳, ۲۶۲

The fire of, P. ۲۳۳ –

O

Oppressed, P. ۲۶۸

Oppressor, P. ۲۳۰, ۲۶۸

P

Paradise, P. ۲۲۴, ۳۲۰, ۴۰۶

People of the Book, P. ۱۶۳, ۳۳۸, ۳۳۹, ۳۴۱, ۳۴۳, ۳۴۷, ۳۵۰

Persian language, P. ۱۲۷

Pharaoh, P. ۳۴, ۳۷, ۲۱۰, ۲۱۴, ۲۱۵, ۲۱۸, ۲۲۱, ۲۲۲, ۲۲۳, ۲۲۹, ۲۳۵, ۲۳۶, ۲۳۹, ۲۴۰, ۲۴۴, ۲۴۸, ۲۵۱, ۲۵۲, ۲۵۳,
۲۶۲, ۲۶۴, ۲۶۶, ۳۰۴, ۳۰۹, ۳۱۳, ۳۱۵, ۳۲۰, ۳۲۲, ۳۲۳, ۳۲۴, ۳۶۲, ۴۰۶, ۵۰۷, ۵۱۰

Palace of, P. ۲۳۵, ۲۴۵ –

Picked up Moses from the river, P. ۲۳۲ –

The court of, P. ۲۶۶ –

The government of, P. ۲۶۹ –

The men of, P. ۲۴۵ –

The people of, P. ۱۸۶, ۲۴۰, ۲۵۴, ۲۷۲, ۳۱۲, ۳۹۶ –

The wife of, P. ۲۳۸ –

Preserve Tablet, P. ۹۹

Prophet of Islam, P. ۳۲۶, ۳۲۸, ۳۳۳, ۳۳۸, ۳۴۱, ۴۱۰, ۴۱۱, ۴۱۵, ۴۵۸, ۴۹۴

Protected Table, P. ۱۶۱

Pyramid, P. ۲۱۶

p: ۵۳۱

Q

Qā'im, P. ۲۲۴

Qarūn, P. ۱۰۳

Qur'ar-ul-Hikam, P. ۲۶

Al-Qadīr, P. ۳۴۸

Qurtabī, P. ۳۵, ۵۶

Qadir-i-Khum, P. ۴۵۵

Queen of Sheba, P. ۳۳, ۷۳, ۷۸, ۸۱, ۸۲, ۸۳, ۸۴, ۸۵, ۸۷, ۹۲, ۹۵, ۹۷, ۹۹, ۱۰۶, ۱۰۸, ۱۰۹, ۱۱۱, ۱۱۲, ۱۱۳

Arrived the yard of the castle, P. ۱۱۰ –

Gave the suggestion of Marriage, P. ۱۱۴ –

Left Yemen, P. ۹۰ –

Read the letter for her people, P. ۸۳ –

The magnificent throne, P. ۷۳ –

The throne of, P. ۹۶, ۱۰۲, ۱۰۳, ۱۰۶ –

Was a wise intelligent one, P. ۸۴ –

Was informed of the content of the letter, P. ۸۲ –

Was sitting among her people, P. ۸۱ –

Qawāmud-Dīn Washnuwī, P. ۴۵۵

R

Raj'at, P. ۱۸۰, ۲۲۵, ۲۲۶, ۲۲۷, ۴۱۳

Traditions about, P. ۲۲۷ –

Rāqib, P. ۱۴۰, ۱۸۱, ۲۳۷, ۴۶۰

Resurrection, P. ۱۴۹, ۱۵۰, ۱۵۶, ۱۶۲, ۱۷۳, ۱۷۴, ۱۸۳, ۱۸۴, ۱۸۷, ۳۱۹, ۴۶۶, ۴۶۸, ۴۷۵, ۵۰۲

The scenes of, P. ۳۶۱ –

The deniers of, P. ۱۵۶ –

The threshold of, P. ۱۷۹, ۱۹۳, ۱۹۶ –

The signs of, ۱۸۱ –

Rod, P. ۱۷۶

Rome, king of, P. ۲۱۵

p: ۵۳۲

Sa‘d-ibn-’Abī-Waqqās, P. ۴۲۷

Sadūm,, P. ۳۵۳, ۵۰۱

The land of, P. ۳۵۳ –

Sadūq, Shaykh, P. ۲۲۶

Safā, P. ۱۷۳

Safūrā (Safūrah), P. ۲۸۵

Sahīfah Sajjādiyah, P. ۴۹۲

Sajjād, Imam (a.s.), P. ۱۰۵

Sālih, P. ۱۷, ۱۱۵, ۱۱۶, ۱۱۹, ۱۲۴, ۱۳۰

A group attested his invitation, P. ۱۱۵ –

Disbelievers told, P. ۱۱۸ –

The people of, P. ۱۱۶ –

Salmān-i-Fārsī, P. ۴۵۵

Samerī, P. ۳۸۰

Satan, P. ۴۴, ۳۶۲, ۵۰۶

As sacred being, P. ۳۶۲ –

Seal of prophets, P. ۳۱۸

Sebtian, P. ۲۱۶

Shebā, P. ۶۳, ۷۱, ۷۳, ۷۶, ۷۸

How it was governed, P. ۷۳ –

Solomon was not aware of, P. ۷۶ –

The country of, P. ۸۲, ۱۰۶ –

Shu‘ayb, P. ۲۷۱, ۲۷۵, ۲۷۷, ۲۷۸, ۲۸۰, ۲۸۱, ۲۸۳, ۲۸۴, ۲۹۳, ۲۹۶, ۵۰۳

Decided to thank Moses, P. ۲۷۵ –

The qualified learner of, P. ۲۷۷ –

Sinai, P. ۳۲۳

Sodomy, P. ۱۳۰, ۱۳۶

The sexual deviation of the people of Lot, P. ۱۳۰ –

Solomon, P. ۱۷, ۴۳, ۴۴, ۴۸, ۴۹, ۵۰, ۵۵, ۵۶, ۵۹, ۶۲, ۶۳, ۶۴, ۶۶, ۶۸, ۷۰, ۷۱, ۷۴, ۷۶, ۷۹, ۸۷, ۸۸, ۹۰, ۹۱, ۹۳,
۹۴, ۹۶, ۹۷, ۹۹, ۱۰۳, ۱۰۶, ۱۰۷, ۱۰۸, ۱۰۹, ۱۱۱, ۱۱۲, ۱۱۵, ۱۳۰, ۱۳۶

His legate, p. ۱۰۱ –

Rejected the presents, P. ۹۰ –

p: ۵۳۳

The grandeur of, P. ۱۰۸ –

The letter of, P. ۸۴ –

The minister of, P. ۹۸ –

The power of, P. ۸۶ –

The religion of, P. ۹۶ –

The signer of, P. ۱۷۶, ۱۷۸ –

Straight path, P. ۲۱, ۱۶۹

Syria, P. ۱۷, ۶۳, ۹۰, ۱۰۶, ۲۶۹, ۳۲۳, ۳۵۳, ۴۸۷

Madyan was in the south of, P. ۲۶۹ –

The Children of Israel came toward, P. ۳۲۳ –

T

Ṭā'if, P. ۶۳

Tabarsī, P. ۳۴, ۱۸۲, ۲۲۶, ۲۴۳

Says about Raj'at, P. ۲۲۶ –

Says minority of Shī'ah do not believe in Raj'at, P. ۱۸۲ –

Tahthīb, P. ۲۲۷

Tanzīl-ul-'Anbiyā, P. ۲۵۶

Taqiyyah (precautionary concealment), P. ۲۶۶

Tarmathī, P. ۴۵۴

Thamūd, P. ۱۸۶, ۳۵۳, ۵۰۵, ۵۰۶

The people of, P. ۱۸۶ –

The land of, P. ۳۵۳ –

Torah, P. ۱۵۳, ۲۹۶, ۳۳۳, ۳۸۰, ۴۵۹

The matters of, P. ۳۸۰ –

The readers of, P. ۳۹۹ –

:(.Traditions narrated from the Immaculate (a.s

:(.The holy Prophet (p.b.u.h

The loser is one whose yearning is for other than Allah.”, P. ۲۵“

A loser is he who neglects improving the affairs of (his) Resurrection.”, P. ۲۵“

He is my brother Ali-ibn-Abi-Tālib’ (a.s.)”, P. ۱۰۲“

The atonement of ill omen is reliance in Allah.”, P. ۱۲۱“

p: ۵۳۴

Ill omen is infidelity and it is not from us, but reliance in Allah abolishes it.”, P. ۱۲۱“

O Allah! There is no omen but Your omen, no goodness but Your goodness, and no “
god but You (Allah). O Allah! No one gives rewards but You, and no one wipes the
faults but You, and there is no power except in Allah, the Exalted, the Great.” P. ۱۲۱

By Allah, in Whose hand is the soul of Muhammad, you are not a better hearer (than“
them).”, P. ۱۷۲

About Dābbat-ul-ʿArḍ said: “(He is so strong that) no one can reach him nor any one
can flee from him. He puts a sign on the forehead of every believer and writes
‘believer’ between his eyes, and puts a sign on the forehead of every disbeliever and
writes ‘disbeliever’ between his eyes; and he has the Rod of Moses and the Signer of
Solomon.”, P. ۱۷۶

Get up O’ moving creature of Allah!”. One of the companions asked the Messenger of“
Allah (p.b.u.h.) whether they are right to call each other by that name, and the Prophet
(p.b.u.h.) said: “No. this name is specialized to Ali, and he is /dābbat-ul-ʿarḍ/ about
whom Allah has said in the Qurʾān: ‘And when the word is fulfilled against them We
shall bring forth for them a moving creature from the earth that shall speak unto
them, because people did not believe in Our revelations’.” Then he (p.b.u.h.) said: “O’
Ali! On the last day, Allah will restore you to life in the best form and there will be a
means in your hand by which you will mark the enemies.”, P. ۱۷۷, ۱۷۸

Verily Allah has respected Mecca (since the first day until the Hereafter).”, P. ۲۰۳“

The one who recites Sura Al-Qaṣaṣ will be given ten rewards as many as the number“
of all those who assented Moses and those who rejected him, and there is no angel in
the heavens and the earth but he will attest to his rightfulness in Hereafter.”, P. ۲۰۹

At the time of Mahdī, my Ummah will be favoured a bounty the like of which they had“
never been favoured. The sky will gradually send (bounties) down on them and the
earth will not restrain anything of its plants but it brings them out.”, P. ۲۲۶

Mahdī (a.s.) will come out while there will be a cloud above his head in which a caller“

will call: ‘This is Mahdī, the viceroy of Allah; then do follow him’.”, P. ۲۲۶

p: ۵۳۵

The hour of negligence is between sunset and the evening supper.”, P. ۲۵۷“

Allah, Almighty and Glorious, says: ‘By My Honour (and Glory) I will certainly take vengeance from the unjust in this world and the next; and take vengeance from the one who sees an oppressed and he can help him but he does not help him.”, P. ۲۵۹

The Wrath of Allah is violent on the one who is unjust upon whom that finds no helper“ save Allah.”, P. ۲۶۰

Whoever breaks the oath of allegiance, or establishes an aberration, or hides a knowledge, or occupies one’s property unjustly, or helps an oppressor in his oppression while he knows that he is surely an oppressor, he has certainly refused Islam.”, P. ۲۶۰

When people see an oppressor (who is committing cruelty) and do not take his hands“ (do not hinder him of it) it will be nigh that Allah inflicts a punishment upon them.”, P. ۲۶۰

There have been written three words on the fourth door of the doors of Hell: Allah“ abases the one who disgraces Islam; Allah abases the one who disgraces Ahl-ul-Bayt; Allah abases the one who helps the oppressors in their injustice upon people.”, P. ۲۶۱

Allah likes that whoever does a thing, he does it well.”, P. ۲۸۶“

Here is the tool of job, but you must strive yourself.”, P. ۲۸۷“

Marriage causes the sustenance to be increased.” Also he said: “He who abandons“ marriage because of the fear of poverty is not of us, and has thought ill of Allah.”, P. ۲۸۹

If a person came to solicit your daughter in marriage and you approved his religion“ and trustworthiness, you should not refuse him, else you will get into a great disturbance and decadence.”, P. ۲۹۰

Avoid the plants grown in ruins.” He was asked: “What are the plants grown in ruins?”“

He said: "A beautiful lady who has been grown up in a corrupt family.", P. ٢٩٠

The best women of my Ummah are the most beautiful ones and have the least
dower.", P. ٢٩١

Whoever recites Sura 'Ankabūt will have ten good rewards as the number of all
believers and hypocrites.", P. ٤٢٥

Once someone came to him and said: "Whom should I do goodness to?" He (p.b.u.h.)
:answered: "To your mother." Again the man asked

p: ٥٣٦

Next to her?" He (p.b.u.h.) said: "To your mother." For the third time he asked: "Next to her?" Against he (p.b.u.h.) said: "To your mother." And in the fourth time, he (p.b.u.h.) recommended him to do goodness to his father and them other relatives according to their nearness to the man., P. ۴۴۲

Paradise is under the feet of the mothers." And it is only by the way of humility and veneration in front of them that a person can enter Paradise., P. ۴۴۲, ۴۴۳

Whoever obeys the command of Allah concerning parents, two doors of Paradise will be opened to him, and if he fulfils the command of Allah unto one of them then one door will be opened.", P. ۴۴۳

The servant who is obedient to his parents and to his Lord: (on the Hereafter Day) he will be in the highest rank (in Paradise).", P. ۴۴۳

He who performs pilgrimage rite for his parents, or pays their debt, on Resurrection Day Allah will rouse him with the righteous.", P. ۴۴۳

He who likes to have a long lifetime and his sustenance increases, he should do good to his parents and visit his him.", P. ۴۴۳

Do good to your parents so that your children do good to you; renounce the women of people so that your women be chaste (and others renounce your women).", P. ۴۴۳

The affectionate look of the progeny to his parents is worship.", P. ۴۴۴

Whoever visits the graves of his parents or one of them once every Friday Allah forgives him and writes him among the righteous.", P. ۴۴۴

Whoever establishes a bad traditions the sin of that tradition and the sin of those who commit it is upon him without that anything can be decreased from the sin of the person who performs it.", P. ۴۵۲

Whoever establishes a good tradition and others follow him there will be for him his own reward and from the reward of those who follow him without that their rewards be decreased anything, and whoever establishes and evil tradition and others follow

him there will be for him his own sin and from the sins of those who follow him without that their sins be decreased anything.”, P. ۴۵۳

Verily I leave behind me two weighty (very worthy and important) things: the Book of Allah (i.e. the Qur’ān) and my progeny, my Ahlul-Bayt. Never, never will these two get separated from each other until

p: ۵۳۷

they meet me at the Hauḍ of Kauthar (the Pond of Abundance). ...”, P. ۴۵۳-۴۵۴

The thing I fear for my Ummah most of all is the act of the people of Lot (Sodomy).”,
P. ۴۹۱

If you find someone who does the act of the people of Lot do know that is“
punishment in Islam is execution.”, P. ۴۹۱

:(Imam Amir-ul-Mu’mineen Ali (a.s

He who has reckoned his own self has gained, and he who has neglected it has lost.”,
P. ۲۶

How much a loser is he who has no (good) share in Hereafter!” , P. ۲۶“

The utmost loser among people is he who has ability of saying the Truth, but he does “
not say.”, P. ۲۶

I have come to know concerning you a matter which if you have done it you have“
displeased your Allah and disobeyed your Imam. You are distributing among the
Arabs (Bedouins) of your kin who tend towards you the property of the Muslims which
they collected by dint of their spears and horses and on which their blood was shed. ...
and do not reform your world by ruining your religion, since then you will be among
losers by the way of (your) deeds. ...”, P. ۲۶

Verily Allah taught us the birds’ speech as He taught Solomon, son of David, as well“
as the speech of every living creature in the land and sea.”, P. ۵۵

The value of) man is hidden under his tongue.”, P. ۷۵)“

Your messenger is the interpreter of your intelligence while your letter is more“
eloquent in expressing your true self.”, P. ۸۹

Make the corpse of Ka‘b-ibn-Sur sit!” Then he (a.s.) told him, while he had been killed:“
“Woe be to you that did not enjoy your knowledge and Satan caused you go astray
and sent you to Hell.”, P. ۱۷۲

The world will bend towards us after having been refractory as the biting she-camel“ bends towards its young.” Then Amir-ul-Mu’minin (a.s.) recited the verse: “And We have intended to bestow (Our) favour upon those who were oppressed in the earth, and to make them leaders (in faith) and make them heirs.”, P. ۲۲۳

They are the progeny of Muhammad (p.b.u.h.). Allah will raise their Mahdī after their“ trouble (and pressure they receive); then He will give them honour and make their enemies despised.”, P. ۲۲۳

I asked the Messenger of Allah: ‘O’ Messenger of Allah! Is Mahdī from us, the“ progeny of Muhammad, or from other than us?’ Then the Messenger of Allah said: ‘But he is of us with whom Allah will end the religion as He began it with us, and by us people will be delivered from disturbances the same as they were delivered from polytheism; and by us they will be brethren after the sedition of the enemy as they became brethren after the enmity of polytheism.”, P. ۲۲۵

Avoid tyranny because verily a tyrant will never smell the smell of Paradise.”, P. ۲۵۹“

Be enemy of the oppressor and the helper of the oppressed. ...”, P. ۲۶۰ ...“

The most vicious of people is the one who helps (the oppressor) against the“ oppressed.”, P. ۲۶۱

say about a group of hypocrites: “... they have continued after the holy Prophet. They gained positions with the leaders of misguidance and callers towards Hell through falsehood and slandering. So, they put them in high posts and made them officers over the heads of the people. ...”, P. ۳۲۰

Verily Allah sent Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) when none among the Arabs read a (heavenly)“ Book or claimed prophethood. He guided the people till he took them to their (correct) position and reached them their salvation.”, P. ۳۲۸

If one sees through it (the world), it would bestow him sight, but if one has his eye ...“ on it, it would blind him.” And Korah was a person who had the power of performing a lot of social good affairs with those abundant properties he had; what was use of it when his pride did not let him see the facts?”, P. ۳۸۲-۳۸۳

O’ son of Adam! Whatever you earn beyond your basic needs you will only keep vigil“ over it for others.”, P. ۳۸۳

do not forget your portion in this world, ..." said: "Do not forget your health and... strength, and your opportunity, and your youth, and your mirth, and by means of these (five bounties) seek out the Hereafter.", P. ۳۸۳

p: ۵۳۹

That abode of the Hereafter, we assign it for those who do not intend to exalt“ themselves in the earth nor (to make) mischief and the good end is for the pious ones.”, then he (a.s.) usually said: “This verse has revealed about the just and humble rulers and also other powerful ones among people.”, P. ۴۰۷

By Allah, Who sent the Prophet with Faith and truth, you will be severely subverted,“ bitterly shaken as in sieving and fully mixed as by spooning in a cooking pot till your low persons become high and high ones become low, ...”, P. ۴۳۲

The purpose of /liqā’allah/ is the Hereafter Day”, P. ۴۳۳“

There should be no obedience for anyone in disobeying Allah”, P. ۴۴۱“

The reality (and essence) of man is known in the change of circumstances.”, P. ۴۴۶“

:(.Fātimat-uz-Zahrā’ (a.s

O ’Abūbakr! Is the matter in the Book of Allah that your daughter inherits from you“ but I do not inherit from my father?” ’Abūbakr wept and shed tears. Then he came down of the pulpit, and wrote a later indicating that Fadak was turned back to Fatimah (a.s.). At this time ‘Umar entered and said: “What is this?” ’Abūbakr said: “I wrote a letter to return the inheritance of Fatimah from her father to her.’ ‘Umar said: “If you do this, where from do you obtain the expenditure of the fight with the enemies, now that Arabs have stood against you?” Then ‘Umar caught the letter and tore it.”, P. ۵۷

:(.Imam Hassan (a.s

Choose a pious bridegroom so that if he loves your daughter, he will respect her, and“ if he does not love her, because of his piety he will not do unjustly to her.”, P. ۲۹۰

:(.Imam Husayn (a.s

I give you glad tidings of Paradise. By Allah, after we become martyr, we will remain“ (in the bounty of Allah) how long He desires. Then Allah will bring you and us out at the time of the advent of Our Qā’im. Then he will take vengeance from the oppressors.

Then you and I

p: 54.

will see them in chains, yokes, and kinds of punishment and tortures.”, P. ۲۲۴

He is the seventh son of my son, Muhammad-ibn-Ali, Al-Bāqir, and he is Allah’s proof, ‘the son of Hassan-ibn-Ali-ibn-Muhammad-ibn-Ali-ibn-Mūsa-ibn-Ja‘far-ibn-Muhammad-ibn-Ali my son, and he is the one who will be absent for a long time, then he will reappear and fill the earth with equity and justice as it was filled with tyranny and injustice.”, P. ۲۲۴

I am the first person to whom the earth will cleave and I will come out of it and this is contemporary with the return of Amir-ul-Mu‘minīn and the raising up of our Qā’im.”, P.

۲۲۵

A leader invites to guidance and a group accept him, and a leader invites to misguidance and a group accept him, too. The former are in Heaven and the latter are in Hell Fire, and this is the meaning of the word of Allah Who says: “... (When) some ,” will be in the Paradise and some in the blazing Fire

P. ۳۱۹-۳۲۰

:(Imam Sajjād, Zaynul-‘Ābidīn Ali-ibn-il-Hussayn (a.s

By the One Who raised Muhammad (p.b.u.h.) legitimately as the giver of glad tidings and warner, verily the righteous of us Ahl-ul-Bayt and their followers are like Moses and his followers. ... (Finally we will be victorious and they will be destroyed and the government of the truth and justice will be ours.)”, P. ۲۲۳

Did they not invite you to their own group and did they not form a center by you that the mill of their oppression turns around its axis? Did they not set you as a bridge for their passing unto their afflictions, as a ladder for their aberrations, an emissary for their misguidance, and a follower for their shameful path? They create doubt the scholars by you, and through you they entrap the hearts of ignorant simple-minded ones. What a little price they gave you for that which they took from you, and instead of what they ruined from you, how little they built!” , P. ۲۵۸

p: ۵۴۱

The great name of the Allah contains seventy three letters and 'Āsif-ibn-Burkhiyā' knew only one letter of it, by the power of which he did such a surprising thing.", P. ٩٨

A group attested the invitation of Haḍrat Ṣālih but another group rejected it.", P. ١١٤

By Allah, as if I see Mahdī (a.s.) who has leaned against the Black Stone (of Ka'bah) and calls Allah by his legitimacy ..." Then he said: "By Allah, he is the distressed one in the Book of Allah in the verse which says: 'Or Who answers the distressed one when he calls on Him, and removes the distress, ...'", P. ١٤٥

Verily the Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) and Ali (a.s.) will return to life.", P. ١٨٥

Whoever brings good, for him shall be better than it, and they shall be secure from "terror on that Day." He answered: "Yes, may I be your ransom, O' Amir-ul-Mu'minīn!" Imam said: "Good is cognition of mastership and the love of us, Ahl-ul-Bayt; and sin is the denial of mastership and enmity against us, Ahl-ul-Bayt.", P. ٢٠٠

The night before 'Āshūrā Imam Husayn (a.s.) delivered a great sermon for his companions and informed them that whoever was with him would become martyr and he (a.s.) let them go out of that land and would rescue themselves if they desired. Some of them said earnestly that they might never separate from him. Then he delivered a sermon again and said: "I give you glad tidings of Paradise. By Allah, after we become martyr, we will remain (in the bounty of Allah) how long He desires. Then Allah will bring you and us out at the time of the advent of Our Qā'im. Then he will take vengeance from the oppressors. Then you and I will see them in chains, yokes, and kinds of punishment and tortures.", P. ٢٢٤

Verily the Messenger of Allah (p.b.u.h.) and Ali (a.s.) will return (to this world).", P. ٢٢٥

It did not last longer than three days that Allah returned the baby to his mother.", P. ٢٤٤

He who is lazy in his worldly work, is also lazy in his hereafter work.", P. ٢٨٧

And from this nation there will also be chosen its Imam.”, P. ۳۷۸“

The world is a good help for obtaining the Hereafter.”, P. ۴۰۱“

:(Imam Sādiq (a.s

Whoever recites the triple suras which begin with Tā Seen (Sura Ash-Shu‘arā, An-Naml, and Qaṣaṣ) in the night before Friday, he will be one of the friends of Allah and he will be nigh to Him and he will be involved in His Grace and support.”, P. ۱۸

The purpose of /min qayri sū’/ (without harm) it that this whiteness of the hand was“ not because of sickness of leprosy.”, P. ۳۸

That is something that one denies while he knows that it is surely the truth which has“ been proved with him”, P. ۴۱

Why did Solomon ask only about hoopoe among all birds?” The Imam (a.s.) said: “Its“ reason is for the fact that a hoopoe sees the existence of water inside the earth, the same as we see oil in a crystal container.”, P. ۷۰

One’s letter is an evidence for the standard of his wisdom and the situation of his“ insight, and his messenger is an indication to the level of his understanding and his intellect.”, P. ۸۹

Answering a letter is obligatory in the same manner that answering a salutation is“ obligatory.”, P. ۸۹

With Allah, and with His prophets and saints, the world is smaller than that they“ become happy for something of it or they become sad (for losing it). Thus, it is not suitable for any knowledgeable or intelligent one to be happy for the ephemeral material of the world.”, P. ۹۳

The knowledge of the one with whom was the knowledge of a part of the Book“ comparing Ali’s knowledge is like the amount of water which is on the wing of a fly with respect to a sea.”, P. ۱۰۴

And with us, by Allah, is the knowledge of the Book utterly.”, P. ۱۰۵“

This verse has been revealed concerning Mahdī from the progeny of Muhammad“ (p.b.u.h.). By Allah he is the distressed one, when he keeps up two units prayer in the station of Abraham and offers a petition unto the presence of Allah, Almighty and Glorious, He answers him and removes the distress and makes him successor in the earth.”, P. ۱۴۶

p: ۵۴۳

Once a man told ‘Ammār Yāsir that there is a verse in the Qur’ān which has disturbed“ his mind and caused him to be doubtful. ‘Ammār asked which verse it was and he answered the verse which says: “And when the word is fulfilled against them We shall bring forth for them a moving creature from the earth that shall speak unto them, because people did not believe in Our revelations”, P. ١٧٤

The first one to whom the earth (grave) will be cleft and he will return to the world is“ Husayn-ibn-Ali (a.s.)”, P. ١٨٥

There will come with Ghā’im (a.s.) twenty seven men from behind Kūfah; fifteen“ persons of them are from the people of Moses (a.s.), those who used to guide (others) to the Truth and to call (them) to it; and seven persons of the Companions of Kahf; and Yūsha‘-ubnu-Nūn, Salmān, ‘Abū-Dujānat-il-’Ansārī, Miqdād, and Mālik-i-’Ashtar will be his helpers and governors.”, P. ١٨٤

Verily /raj‘at/ (return to life) is not general but it is informal, because only a group will“ return to life that have pure faith or pure infidelity.”, P. ١٨٤

The one who recites suras Al-Qaṣaṣ, An-Naml, and Ash-Shu‘arā by the night before“ Friday, he will be of the friends of Allah, will be nigh to Him, and will be supported by Him; and in this world he will not encounter a sever poverty, insecurity and disquiet, and in Hereafter Allah will bestow on him so much merits that he will be pleased and even more than being pleased.”, P. ٢٠٩

The first person to whom the earth (grave) will cleave and he returns to the world is“ Husayn-ibn Ali (a.s.)”, P. ٢٢٥

Accompany with Qā’im, there will come out twenty seven persons from behind“ Kūfah, fifteen ones of them are from the people of Moses (a.s.), those who used to guide (to the Truth) and called (people) to justice. ...”, P. ٢٢٥

The oppressor, the one who helps him, and he who is content of it all three are the“ associates of the oppression.”, P. ٢٤٠

No oppression is more serious than oppressing the one who finds no helper for it“

except Allah.”, P. ۲۶۰

Once Imam Şādiq (a.s.) was asked which girl went after Moses (a.s.). He answered:
“The one who became his wife.” They asked him which

p: ۵۴۴

term of the two terms Moses finished. Imam answered the longer and more complete one, (that is, ten years). They asked whether Moses wedded his wife before ten years or after it. He answered: "Before ten years". They asked him whether a man can marry a woman and makes a condition with her father to be hired for two months for him. He answered: "Moses knew that he would finish this condition." They asked: "How did he know it?" Imam (a.s.) said: "He knew that he would remain alive and act according to the condition.", P. ۲۸۸

What do you want to do with this wealth of the world?" The man answered: "I want to supply the expenditure of myself and my household, help my relatives, spend in the way of Allah, and perform pilgrimage (Hajj) and lesser pilgrimage (Umrah)." Imam Sādiq (a.s.) said: "This is not to seek the world, this is to seek the Hereafter.", P. ۴۰۲-۴۰۳

The needlessness that hinders you from injustice (and violating others' right) is better than the poverty that makes you commit sin.", P. ۴۰۳

By Allah! With this verse, all of the hopes have entirely perished," and it is difficult to gain the good abode of Hereafter., P. ۴۰۷

By Allah, the world will not end until the holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) and Amir-ul-Mu'minīn Ali (a.s.) meet each other in Thuwīyah. They will build a mosque there the doors of which will be numerous.", P. ۴۱۴

The best deeds are prayer at its (proper) time, doing kindness to the parents, and struggle on the way of Allah.", P. ۴۴۳

What hinders a person among you that he does good to his parents when they are alive or dead by praying for them, giving alms for them, doing pilgrimage rites for them, and observing the fast for them, because if does such, the parents will be rewarded, and he, too, will be rewarded the same amount. Moreover, Allah (Almighty, and Glorious) gives him much goodness for his goodness and his prayer (Salāt).", P. ۴۴۴

If the act of Sodomy were lawful, the men would be needless of women, and the generation (of mankind) might be cat, women remained without husband, and there

would exist many corruptions in the authorization of sodomy. And Allah created women for men so that they associate with them and gain tranquility by them, and women are the site of men's lust and mothers of their children.”, P. ۴۹۱

p: ۵۴۵

:(.Imam Ali-ibn-Mūs-ar-Riḍā (a.s

The purpose of the Qur'ānic sentence: "... this is of the Satan's doing; ..." is the "conflict of those two with each other which was considered as a Satanic act, not the act of Moses (a.s.); and the purpose of the sentence: "My Lord! Verily I have done harm to myself! ..." is that I put myself in a place where I should not put. I should not come into this city; and the purpose of the phrase: "...Do You then forgive me! ..." is that You do cover me from Your enemies so that they do not find me.", P. ۲۵۵

Haḍrat Shu'ayb asked her daughter: 'How did you recognize the trustworthiness of this youth that you called him faithful?' She said: 'When I conveyed your invitation to him, he told me to guide him from his behind in order that he might not look at my stature.", P. ۲۷۸

A believer must divide his busy time into four parts: a part for working, a part for worship, a part for friends and dealing with social affairs. Otherwise, man will turn to be a greedy person who deserves all critics which are about greed.", P. ۲۸۷

The prophet of Allah and His Authorities on the earth are /wajhullāh/ by whom Allah, "religion, and His cognition are paid attention to.", P. ۴۲۴

The reason of banning men for men and women for women is the structure of women and the nature of men (That each of them has been created for the opposite sex), and that going men to men and women to women causes the cut of generation (of mankind) and disturbance of the order of management (in the society) and wasting the world.", P. ۴۹۱

:(.Imam Ali-ibn-Muhammad-al-Hādī (a.s

It is narrated from Imam Hādī (a.s.) that the one with whom was some knowledge (of a part) of the Divine Book was 'Āsif Burkhiyā, Solomon's minister and his sister's son., P. ۹۸

It might be for the sake that 'Āsif was Solomon's legate, and Solomon wanted to introduce him to all in that sensitive time. And, there is a detailed tradition narrated

-from the tenth Imam, Ali-ibn-Muhammad

p: ۵۴۶

il-Hādī, cited in the commentary of ‘Ayyāshī, by which he (a.s.) gave the same answer to Yahy-ibn-’Aktham., P. ۱۰۱

Trumpet, P. ۱۹۳

Tūr, the land of, P. ۳۰۱

Tūs, P. ۱۰۵

Tūsī, Shaykh, P. ۲۲۶, ۲۲۷

U

Umar, P. ۵۷۶

Uyūn-ul-’Akhabār, P. ۲۵۵۶

Uzayr, P. ۱۸۳۶

Uzzā, P. ۴۷۸, ۴۷۹۶

Umayyads, P. ۲۵۸۲

Umm-i-Hānī, P. ۴۸۸۲

Umm-us-Salamah, P. ۱۰۵, ۱۷۲۲

V

Vain beliefs, P. ۱۲۰

Vain words, P. ۱۲۰

Vicegerent of Allah, P. ۱۸۷

Of the prophets, P. ۳۱۸, ۳۲۸ –

The immaculate ones, P. ۳۳۵ –

Victorious state of 'Āsiyah, P. ۲۳۹

Victory of Moses against sorcerers, P. ۳۱۲

W

Wād-il-Qurā, P. ۳۵۳

Wretchedness, P. ۲۳

Will of Allah, P. ۲۳۲

Weakness, P. ۲۱۴

p: ۵۴۷

Y

Yahya, P. ۵۶, ۵۷

Yahy-ibn-Salām, P. ۲۸۱

Yamānī, P. ۴۵۵

Yāsir, P. ۱۷۶, ۴۲۷

Yathrib, P. ۴۱۱

Yemen, P. ۱۷, ۶۳, ۹۰, ۹۲, ۳۵۳, ۵۰۵

Near 'Ahqāf, P. ۳۵۳ –

Yūnus, P. ۱۶۶

Yūsuf, P. ۳۰۸, ۳۰۹

Circulated the religion of Abraham, P. ۳۰۹ –

Z

Zakāt, P. ۱۹, ۲۰, ۳۹۴

Of Korah's property, P. ۳۹۴ –

Zayn-ul-Ābidīn, Imam (a.s.), P. ۲۲۳, ۲۵۸

Ziyd-ibn-Thābit, P. ۴۵۶

Zechariah, P. ۵۶, ۵۹

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

يَا أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ قَدْ جَاءَكُمْ بُرْهَانٌ مِنْ رَبِّكُمْ وَأَنْزَلْنَا إِلَيْكُمْ نُورًا مُبِينًا (سوره نساء ٤ آيه ١٧٤)

O mankind! Verily there has come to you a convincing proof (the Messenger and the“
Qur’ān) from your Lord: for We have sent unto you a light (that is) manifest.” (Holy
(Qur’ān, ٤: ١٧٤)

إِنَّا نَحْنُ نَزَّلْنَا الذِّكْرَ وَإِنَّا لَهُ لَحَافِظُونَ (سوره الحجر ١٥ آيه ٩)

We have, without doubt, sent down the Message and We will assuredly Guard it“
((from corruption).” (Holy Qur’ān, ١٥: ٩)

وَمَنْ أَعْرَضَ عَن ذِكْرِي فَإِنَّ لَهُ مَعِيشَةً ضَنْكًا وَنَحْشُرُهُ يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ أَعْمَى (سوره طه ٢٠ آيه ١٢٤)

But whosoever turns away from My Message (the Qur’ān), verily for him is a “
straitened toilsome life, and We shall raise him up blind on the Day of Judgment.”
((Holy Qur’ān, ٢٠: ١٢٤)

وَنُنزِّلُ مِنَ الْقُرْآنِ مَا هُوَ شِفَاءٌ وَرَحْمَةٌ لِّلْمُؤْمِنِينَ (سوره اسراء ١٧ آيه ٨٢)

And We send down (stage by stage) of the Qur’ān that which is a healing and a mercy“
(to those who believe ...” (Holy Qur’ān, ١٧: ٨٢)

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

قَالَ اللَّهُ تَعَالَى: " يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ ءَامَنُوا أَطِيعُوا اللَّهَ وَأَطِيعُوا الرَّسُولَ وَأُولَى الْأَمْرِ مِنْكُمْ "

سوره النساء ۴- الآیه ۵۹

In The Name of Allah, The Beneficent, The Merciful

O you who have faith! Obey Allah, and obey the Apostle, and those charged with " (authority among you ...)" (Sura Nisa, No. ۴, Verse ۵۹

Those charged with authority' are only the twelve sinless Imams (a.s.) and, at the ' time of occultation, Sources of Imitation, who are learned, pious, and just, should be (referred to

فِي إِكْمَالِ الدِّينِ فِي حَدِيثٍ عَنْ جَابِرِ الْجُعْفِيِّ عَنْ جَابِرِ بْنِ عَبْدِ اللَّهِ الْأَنْصَارِيِّ قَالَ: قُلْتُ: يَا رَسُولَ اللَّهِ عَرَفْنَا اللَّهَ وَرَسُولَهُ، فَمَنْ أَوْلُوا الْأَمْرَ الَّذِينَ قَرَنَ اللَّهُ طَاعَتَهُمْ بِطَاعَتِكَ؟ فَقَالَ (ص) هُمْ خُلَفَائِي يَا جَابِرُ، وَائِمَّةُ الْمُسْلِمِينَ مِنْ بَعْدِي؛ أَوْلَهُمْ عَلِيُّ بْنُ أَبِي طَالِبٍ، ثُمَّ الْحَسَنُ وَالْحُسَيْنُ، ثُمَّ عَلِيُّ بْنُ الْحُسَيْنِ، ثُمَّ مُحَمَّدُ بْنُ عَلِيٍّ الْمَعْرُوفُ فِي التَّوْرَةِ بِالْبَاقِرِ، وَسَتَدْرِكُهُ يَا جَابِرُ، فَإِذَا لَقَيْتَهُ فَأَقْرِئْهُ مِنِّي السَّلَامَ، ثُمَّ الصَّادِقُ جَعْفَرُ بْنُ مُحَمَّدٍ، ثُمَّ مُوسَى بْنُ جَعْفَرٍ، ثُمَّ عَلِيُّ بْنُ مُوسَى، ثُمَّ مُحَمَّدُ بْنُ عَلِيٍّ، ثُمَّ عَلِيُّ بْنُ مُحَمَّدٍ، ثُمَّ الْحَسَنُ بْنُ عَلِيٍّ، ثُمَّ سَيِّدِي وَكَنِيي حُجَّجَهُ اللَّهُ فِي أَرْضِهِ، وَبَقِيَّتُهُ فِي عِبَادِهِ ابْنُ الْحَسَنِ بْنِ عَلِيٍّ، ذَاكَ الَّذِي يَفْتَحُ اللَّهُ تَعَالَى ذِكْرَهُ عَلَيَّ يَدَيْهِ مَشَارِقَ الْمَارِضِ وَمَغَارِبِهَا، ذَاكَ الَّذِي يَغِيبُ عَنْ شَيْعَتِهِ وَأَوْلِيَائِهِ غَيْبَةً لَا يَثْبُتُ فِيهَا عَلَيَّ اللَّهُ فَهَلْ مَنْ امْتَحَنَ اللَّهَ قَلْبَهُ لِلْإِيمَانِ. قَالَ جَابِرٌ: فَقُلْتُ لَهُ: يَا رَسُولَ اللَّهِ، فَهَلْ يَقَعُ لِشَيْعَتِهِ الْإِنْتِفَاعُ بِهِ فِي غَيْبَتِهِ، فَقَالَ أَيْ وَالَّذِي بَعَثَنِي بِالْبُيُوتِ أَنَّهُمْ يَسْتَنْصِفُونَ بِنُورِهِ وَيَنْتَفِعُونَ بِوِلَايَتِهِ فِي غَيْبَتِهِ كَانْتِفَاعِ النَّاسِ بِالشَّمْسِ وَإِنْ تَجَلَّلَهَا سَحَابٌ ...

اكمال الدين جلد ۱، صفحه ۲۵۳

In 'Ikmāl-ud-Din' a tradition, through 'Jābir-il-Ju'fī', is narrated from 'Jābir-ibn-'Abdillāh' thus: " I said: ' O Messenger of Allah, we have known Allah and His Apostle; then who is 'Ulul-'Amr, those that Allah has made their obedience the same as your obedience?' Then, the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) said: 'O Jābir! they are, after me, my successors and the Guides of Muslims; the first of them is Ali-ibn-Abītālib; then (Imam) Hassan, and (Imam) Hussayn; then Ali-ibn-il-Hussayn; then Mohammad-ibn-Ali; known in the Turah as Bāqir, whom you will see. O Jābir! when you visit him, give my regards to him. After him, there is Sādiq, – Ja'far-ibnMuhammad; and after him Mūsa-ibn-Ja'far; then Ali-ibn-Mūsā; then Muhammad-ibn-Ali; then Ali-ibn-Muhammad, then Hassan-ibn-Ali; and after him (there comes) Al-Ghā'im, whose name and sir-name is the same as mine. He is Allah's Authority on the Earth and His .(Remainder amongst His servants. He is the son of (Imam) Hassan-ibn-Ali (al-'Askari

This is the very personality by whose hands Allah will open the Easts and the Wests of the worlds, and this is the very personality who will be absent from his followers and his lovers in which his mastership can not be proved by a statement of anyone except
 ".for the one whose heart Allah tests for Faith

Jābir said: " I asked him: 'O' Messenger of Allah! Will his followers avail of him during his occultation?' He answered: 'Yes. By the One Who appointed me to prophethood, they will seek brightness from his light and will avail by devotion in his absence the
 "...same as the availing of people from the (glow of) sun when clouds cover it

Ikmal-ud-Din, Vol. ۱, p. ۲۵۳' with nearly similar meaning in Yanābī'-ul-Mawaddah, p.)
 (۱۱۷

قَالَ اللَّهُ تَعَالَى: " وَمَا يَنْطِقُ عَنِ الْهَوَىٰ ۗ إِنْ هُوَ إِلَّا وَحْيٌ يُوحَىٰ "

سوره النجم (۵۳) – الآیه ۳ و ۴

Nor does he (the Apostle) speak out of desire. It is naught but revelation that is "
 "revealed

(Sura An-Najm, No. ۵۳, verses ۳,۴)

قَالَ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ (ص):

”أَتَى تَارِكُ فَيْكُمْ الثَّقَلَيْنِ كِتَابَ اللَّهِ وَعِترَتِي، كِتَابَ اللَّهِ حَبْلٌ مَمْدُودٌ مِنَ السَّمَاءِ إِلَى الْأَرْضِ وَعِترَتِي أَهْلُ بَيْتِي وَإِنَّ اللَّطِيفَ الْخَبِيرَ أَخْبَرَنِي أَنَّهُمَا لَنْ يَفْتَرِقَا حَتَّى يَرِدَا عَلَيَّ الْحَوْضَ فَأَنْظُرُوا بِمَاذَا تَخْلُقُونِي“

قَالَ النَّبِيُّ (ص): وَ فِي حَدِيثٍ آخَرَ: ”تَضَلُّوا مَا إِنْ تَمَسَّكْتُمْ بِهِمَا“

معانى الاخبار، صفحه ٩٠ و مسند احمد بن حنبل، جلد ٣ صفحه ١٧

The Prophet (p.b.u.h.) said: “ I leave behind me two weighty (very worthy and important) things: The Book of Allah (i.e. the Qur’ān), which is a stretched string from the heaven to the earth, and my progeny, my Ahl-ul-Bayt; for verily Allah, The Merciful, The Aware, informed me that never, never, will these two get separated from each other until they meet me at the Houd of Kauthar (the Pond of Abundance). Therefore, be careful and contemplate on how you will treat them (after me).” And, in another tradition it is added: “Never, never, shall you get astray if you attach yourselves to these TWO

Ma‘ānī-ul-Akhabār, p. ٩٠, tradition ٢, Musnad Aḥmad-ibn-Ḥanbal, vol. ٣, p. ١٧, and other) books from the Sunnite school and Shi‘ah school mentioned in Iḥqāq-ul-Haqq, vol. ٩, (p. ٣٠٩ to p. ٣٧٥

قال الامام الرضا عليه السلام:

رحم الله عبداً احيا امرنا فقلت له و كيف يحيى امركم قال يتعلم علومنا و يعلمها الناس فانهم لو عملوا محاسن كلامنا لا تبعونا

معانى الاخبار صفحه ٨٠- عيون اخبار الرضا جلد ١ صفحه ٢٠٧

:Abul-Hassan-ir-Riḍā (a.s.) said

May the Mercy of Allah be upon the servant who Keeps alive our commandment.” I“ asked him (a.s.) how the one could keep your commandment alive. He (a.s.) said: “He (can) learn our sciences and teach them to people. In fact, if people knew (the merits) ”.and goodnesses of our speech, surely they would follow us

(Ma‘ānī-ul-Akhbār, p. ۸۰; ‘Uyūn-i-Akhbār-ur-Riḍā, vol. ۱, p. ۲۰۷)

p: ۵۵۲

The Rank and Importance of the Qur'ān

قَالَ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ (ص): فَضْلُ الْقُرْآنِ عَلَى سَائِرِ الْكَلَامِ كَفَضْلِ اللَّهِ عَلَى خَلْقِهِ

The holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) said: “The superiority of the Qur’ān unto other words is like
”.the superiority of Allah (s.w.t.) unto His creatures

جامع الاخبار و الاثار جلد اول صفحه ۱۸۲

قَالَ الْحَسَنُ ابْنُ عَلِيٍّ (ع): إِنَّ هَذَا الْقُرْآنَ فِيهِ مَصَابِيحُ النُّورِ وَ شِفَاءُ الصُّدُورِ

Imam Hassan-ibn-Ali (a.s.) said: “Verily in this Qur’ān there are some bright lights (of
”.(guidance) and also a healing (remedy) for the hearts (minds

جامع الاخبار و الاثار جلد اول صفحه ۱۶۴

قَالَ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ (ص): خَيْرُكُمْ مَنْ تَعَلَّمَ الْقُرْآنَ وَ عَلَّمَهُ

The holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) said: “The best of you is the one who learns the Qur’ān and
”.teaches it

بحار الانوار جلد ۹۲ صفحه ۱۷۷

قَالَ النَّبِيُّ (ص): عَلَيْكُمْ بِالْقُرْآنِ فَإِنَّهُ الشِّفَاءُ النَّافِعُ وَ الدَّوَاءُ الْمُبَارَكُ وَ عِضْمَةٌ لِمَنْ تَمَسَّكَ بِهِ وَ نَجَاهٌ لِمَنْ تَبِعَهُ

The holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) said: “Be aware of the Qur’ān! Verily it is a useful healing,
and an auspicious remedy; and it is the protector of the person who holds fast to it,
”.and a rescue for the one who follows it

جامع الاخبار و الاثار جلد اول صفحه ۴۹۲

قَالَ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ (ص):

عَلَيَّ مَعَ الْحَقِّ وَالْقُرْآنِ، وَ الْحَقُّ وَالْقُرْآنُ مَعَ عَلِيٍّ، وَلَنْ يَفْتَرِقَا حَتَّى يَرِدَا عَلَيَّ الْحَوْضِ

:The holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) said

Ali (a.s.) is with the truth and the Qur'ān, and the truth and the Qur'ān are with Ali. " They will never get separated from each other until they meet me at the Houd of [\(Kauthar \(the Pond of Abundance\)\)." \(1\)](#)

قَالَ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ (ص):

عَلَيَّ يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ عَلَيَّ الْحَوْضِ لَا يَدْخُلُ الْجَنَّةَ إِلَّا مَنْ جَاءَ بِجِوَارِ مِنْ عَلِيٍّ بْنِ أَبِي طَالِبٍ

:The holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) said

On the Day of Resurrection, Ali (a.s.) will guard the Houd of Kauthar (the Pond of " Abundance). None will enter Paradise except the one who comes with the [\(admissibility of 'Ali-ibn-'Abīṭālib \(a.s.\)." \(2\)](#)

p: ۵۵۴

a- Tārīkh-i-Dameshq, by Ibn 'Asākir, part Imam Ali, vol. ۳, p. ۱۵۳, No. ۱۱۷۲ b- – ۱ Manāqib-i-Khārazmī, p. ۱۷۶, No. ۲۱۴ c- Farā'id-us-Samṭayn, Vol. ۱, p. ۱۷۷, No. ۱۴۰, narrated from 'Umm-us-Salamah. d- Rabī'ul-Abrād by Zamakhsharī, vol. ۱, p. ۸۲۸. e- Yanābī'ul-Mawaddah, chapter ۲۰, vol. ۱, p. ۲۶۹

a- Manāqib-i-Ibn-Maqāzily, p. ۱۱۹, narrated by Ibn-'Abbās. b- 'Arjaḥ-ul-Maṭālib, p. –۲ ۵۵۰. c- Musnad-Aḥmad-Ḥanbal, vol. ۴, p. ۱۶۵. d- Sunan-i-Tarmathī, No. ۳۷۱۹. e- Sunan-i-IbnMājih, No. ۱۱۹. f- Mu'jam-i-Kabīr, by Tabarānī, vol. ۴, pp. ۱۹, ۲۰. g- 'Aqānī, by Abul-Faraj, vol. ۱۸, p. ۳۹. h- Al-Firdous Diylamī, vol. ۳, p. ۶۱, No. ۴۱۷۲, narrated from 'Umm-us-Salamah. i- Khnūz-ul-Ḥāqayiq, by Manāwī, p. ۹۸. Jesus- Miftāḥ-un-Najāt, by Badakhshī, p. ۶۱, (the index of 'Iḥqāq-ul-Ḥaqq, v. ۷, p. ۲۹۹). K- Al-Manāqib-ul-Murtazawiyah, by Muhammad Salih Tarmathī, p. ۱۱۳, printed in Bambay. L- Yanābī'ul-Mawaddah pp. ۱۸۰ and ۲۳۷, narrated from 'Umm-us-Salamah, and p. ۲۵۷ narrated from Ibn-'Abbās, printed in Istambul; and also printed by 'Uswah, Qum, vol. ۲, pp. ۷۸

,and ۲۴۵, and vol. ۲

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

وَعِدَ اللَّهُ الَّذِينَ ءَامَنُوا مِنكُمْ وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ لَيَسِّرَنَّ لَهُمْ فِي الْأَرْضِ كَمَا اسَّيَّرَ اللَّهُ الَّذِينَ مِن قَبْلِهِمْ وَلَيُنزِّلَنَّ لَهُمْ دِينَهُمُ الَّذِي ارْتَضَى لَهُمْ وَلَيُبَدِّلَنَّهُم مِّن بَعْدِ خَوْفِهِمْ أَمْنًا يَعْبُدُونَنِي لَا يُشْرِكُونَ بِي شَيْئًا وَمَن كَفَرَ بَعْدَ ذَلِكَ فَأُولَٰئِكَ هُمُ الْفَاسِقُونَ

(Sura An-Nūr, No. ٢٤, verse ٥٥)

.The Reformer of the world, Mahdī (a.s.) will come

Allah has promised those of you who believe and do righteous deeds, that He will“ certainly appoint them successors in the earth as He appointed successors those before them; and that He will certainly establish for them their religion which He has chosen for them; and that certainly He will, after their fear, give them security in exchange. They will do worship Me (alone) and not associate aught with Me; and
”.whoever disbelieves after this, then these are they that are evil-doers

It is certain that after the domination of the government of Monotheism and establishment of the religion of Allah when any sort of anxiety, insecurity and infidelity, those who disbelieve are the true mischief-makers. The verse continues
:saying

”.and whoever disbelieves after this, then these are they that are evil-doers ...“

However, it is understood from the whole verse that Allah gives three glad tidings to a group of the Muslims who are qualified with these two qualifications; ‘Faith’ and
:‘Righteous deed’, which are as follows

١-Appointing them the successors in the earth

The spread of the religion of the truth everywhere in a fundamental form, (which is ٢-
./emerged from the word /tamkīn

Vanishing all means of fear, terror, horror, and insecurity. And as the result of these –۲ affairs they will worship Allah in utmost freedom and submit His commands while they will associate no partner nor compeer with Him so that they spread the pure Monotheism in all places

No doubt the verse encompasses the first Muslims, and no doubt the government of Mahdī (a.s.), which, according to the belief of all Muslims irrespective of Shī‘ah and Sunni, will fill the world thoroughly with justice and equity after that cruelty and injustice are spread everywhere, and it is the full example of this verse. Yet, it does not hinder the generality and vastness of the concept of the verse

Consequently, in ages, the bases of Faith and Righteous deed will be strengthened among Muslims and they will possess a deep influential government. However, the complete example of sovereignty of Monotheism and perfect security, and worship, free from any polytheism, will practically come into being when Haḍrat Mahdī, the progeny of prophets and the son of the holy Prophet (p.b.u.h.) appears. He (a.s.) is the same one about whom the Muslims have narrated this tradition from the Prophet (p.b.u.h.) who said: “If remains but one day from (the lifetime of) the world Allah will prolong that day so lasting that a man from my progeny, whose name is as my name, will govern over the earth and will fill it with justice and equity the like that it has been filled with injustice and cruelty

There are cited one hundred and twenty three traditions with the same meaning in the book entitled ‘Muntakhab-ul-’Athar’, (page ۲۴۷ on). They have been narrated from different Islamic sources, especially from Sunnite sources. It is interesting that the Late Tabarsī, in the explanation following the above mentioned verse says that there is a tradition from the progeny (Ahl-ul-Bayt) of the

Prophet (p.b.u.h.) indicating that this verse is about Mahdī from the progeny of
(Muhammad (p.b.u.h.))

However, there have been written a great deal of books about the traditions concerning the rising of Mahdī by both scholars of the Sunnites and Shī‘ites. These traditions are in such a manner that no Islamic researcher, who is the follower of every one of groups and school of religious law, can deny ‘the wide scale, of them. Up to now, there have been published many books in this regard by the Sunnites whose authors have accepted the veracity of the tradition about the worldly reformer, i.e. :Mahdī (may Allah hasten his glad advent). Among them are

Abū Na‘īm in ‘Akhhbār-ul-Mahdī’; Ibn-Hajar Hiythamī, in ‘Al-Qaul-ul-Mukhtaṣar Fī ‘Alāmāt-il-Mahdī Al-Muntazar’; Shaukānī, in ‘At-Tauḍīh Fī Tawātur-i-Mājā’a Fil-Muntazar Wad-Dajjāl Wal-Masīh’; ‘Idrīs-i-‘Arāqī Maqribī, in the book ‘Al-Mahdī’; ‘Abul-‘Abbās-ibn-‘Abd-ul-Mu’min Al-Maqribī, in the book ‘Al-Wahm-ul-Maknūn Fir-Radd-i-‘Ali-ibn-Khaldūn; As-Sakhāwī, in the book ‘Fath-ul-Maqīth’; Muhammad-ibn-Ahmad Safāwīnī, in ‘Sharh-ul-‘Aqīdah’; ‘Abul-Hassan ‘Uyarī, in ‘Manāqib-ush-Shāfi‘ī’; ‘Ibn-i-Tīmuyyah, in his book ‘of pronouncements: ‘Suyūṭī’; Al-Ḥāwy-ul-Fatāwī; ‘Idrīs ‘Arāqī, in his book about Mahdī (a.s.); Shaukānī, in the book: ‘At-Tauḍīh Fī Tawātur-i-Mā jā’a Fil-Muntazar; Muhammad Ja‘far Kanānī, in ‘Nazmut-Tanāsūr’; Abul-‘Abbās-... ,ibn-‘Abdul-Mu’min, in Al-Wahmul-Maknūn

In any case, a group of the notables and scholars of Islam, irrespective of those in Shi‘ites and Sunnites, old and new, have also mentioned in their records that the traditions upon the subject of Mahdī are inside the limit of unbroken transmission,
(And they are never deniable at all

p: ۵۵۷

Languages Which Each Title Is In: A = Arabic; F = Farsi

Tafsīr-i-Shubbar (A Commentary of the Holy Qur'ān) – A .1

Ma'ālim-ut-Touhīd fī Qur'ān-il-Karīm (The Unity of Allah in the Holy Qur'ān) – A .2

Kholāṣi-ye-'Abaqāt-ul-'Anwār (A summary of a Tradition on Imamate) – A .3

Khuṭūṭ-i-Kullī-yi-'Iqtisād-dar Qur'ān wa Riwayāt (Main Points of Economy in the .4
Qur'ān and Traditions) – F

Al-Imam Mahdī (a.s.) 'inda Ahl-us-Sunnah, Vol. 1-2 (Imam Mahdī (a.s.) Accordint to .5
traditions) – A

Ma'ālim-ul-Ḥukūmah-fī-Qur'ān-il-Karīm (Lessons on Government in the Holy .6
Qur'ān) – A

Al-Imam-iṣ-Ṣādiq wal Mathāhib-il-'Arba'ah (Imam Sādiq and Muslims' Issues) – A .7

Ma'ālim-un-Nubuwwah fī Qur'ān-il-Karīm, Vol. 1-3 (Prophethood in the Holy Qur'ān) .8
– A

Ash-Shu'ūn-il-Eqtisād fī-Qur'ān was-Sunnah (Ways of Economy in the Qur'ān and .9
Tradition) – A

Al-Kāfī fī Fiqh by Abiṣ-Ṣalāh al-Ḥalabī (Subjects on Jurisprudence and Ordinances) .10
– A

Asn-al-Maṭālib fī Manāqib-i-'Ali-ibn-Abī-Ṭālib by Shams-ud-Dīn al Juzarī ash- .11
Shāfi'ī (The Merits of Imam 'Ali (a.s.): the Successor of the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.)) –
A

Nuzul-ul-Abrār bimā Saḥha min Manāqib-i-Ahlul-Bayt-il-Aṭhār by Ḥafīz .12

- Mohammad al-Badakhshani (Subjects on the Successors of the Prophet of Islam (p.b.u.h.)) – A
- Ba'z-i-Mu'allifāt by Shahīd-ash-Shaykh Murtaḍā Muṭahharī (Some works on . ۱۳ Islamic Education) – F
- Al-Qaybat-il-Kubrā (The Greater Occultation of Hazrat Mahdī (a.s.)) – A . ۱۴
- Yaum-ul-Mau'ūd (The Promised Rise of Hazrat Mahdī (a.s.)) – A . ۱۵
- Al-Qaybat-iş-Şuqrā (The Lesser Occultation and the Deputies of Hazrat Mahdi . ۱۶ (a.s.)) – A
- Mukhtalaf-al-Shī'ah by 'Allāmah al-Ḥillī (Judgement through Jurisprudence in . ۱۷ Islam) – A
- Ar-Rasā'il-il-Mukhtārah by 'Allāmah ad-Dawānī wal-Muḥaqqiq Mīrdāmād (A Book . ۱۸ on the Theoloty and Philosophy of Islam) – A
- Aş-Şahīfat-ul-Khāmisat-us-Sajjādiyyah (The Psalms of Islam as Stated by the . ۱۹ Fourth Imam (a.s.)) – A
- Nimūdārī az Ḥukūmat-i-'Ali (a.s.) (An Outine on the Government of Hazrat 'Ali (a.s.)) . ۲۰ – A
- Manshūrhā-yi Jāvīd-i-Qur'ān (The Eternal Lights of the Qur'ān; An Objective . ۲۱ Commentary) – F
- Mahdī-yi-Muntaẓar (a.s.) dar Nahjul-Balāqah (The Awaited Mahdi (Guide) in Peaks . ۲۲ of Eloquence) – F
- Sharh-il-Lum'at-id-Damishqiyyah, ۱۰ Vols. (Some Subjects on Islamic . ۲۳ Jurisprudence and Ordinances) – A
- Tarjamah wa Sharḥ-i-Nahjul-Balāqah, ۴ Vols. (Translation and Explanation of the . ۲۴ Statement of Imam 'Ali (a.s.)) – F

Fī Sabīl-il-Wahdat-il-Eslāmiyyah (The Need of Islamic Unity) – A .۲۵

Nazarāt-un-fī-Kutub-il-Khālidah (Opinions on Islamic Matters) – A .۲۶

Kitāb-al-Wāfī, ۳۰ Vols. (Traditions on Different Subjects) – A .۲۷

Dah Risālah by Feyḍ-i-Kāshānī (Ten Articles on Islamic Education) – F .۲۸

Majmoo‘ih Test-hāy-i-Bīnesh wa Ma‘ārif Islāmī (A Collection of Test Questions on
Islamic Knowledge and Culture) – F .۲۹

Darīcheh-ī bar ‘Aḥkām (Elementary Religious Questions for the Coming
Generation) – F .۳۰

An Enlightening Commentary into the Light of the Holy Qur’ān – English .۳۱

A Bundle of Flowers from the Garden of Traditions of the Prophet Ahlul-Bayt (a.s.) – .1
Arabic – English

There are ۲۷۲ Arabic/Farsi Commentaries (Tafsir) Available at the Imam Ali (a.s.) Public
Library as Sources for This Commentary

:Among Them are the Following

Tafsir – ul – Qur’ān – il – Karīm by ‘Allāmah as – Sayyid ‘Abdullāh Shubbar, Dār-u- .1
Iḥyā’-it-Turāth-il-‘Arabī. Beirut, Lebanon –A

Tafsir-ul-Qummī by Abil-Hassan ‘Alī ibn Ibrāhīm-il-Qummī, Dār-ul-Kitāb, Qum, . ۲
Iram, ۱۹۶۸/۱۳۸۷ A.H. –A

Fī-Zilāl, Sayyid-i-Quṭb; Dār-u-Iḥyā’-it-Turāth-il-‘Arabī, Beirut, Lebanon, ۱۹۶۷/۱۳۸۶ –A .۳

At-Tafsir-ul-Kāshif by Muhammad Jawād Muḥniyah, Dār-ul- ‘ilm lil-Malāyīn, Beirut, .۴
Lebanon, ۱۹۷۰ –A

Tafsir-iṣ-Ṣāfi by al-Fayḍ-il-Kāshānī, al-A‘lamī lil-Maṭbu‘āt, Beirut, Lebanon, . ۵
۱۹۷۹/۱۳۹۹–A

Manhaj-uṣ-Ṣādiqīn by Fathullāh Kāshānī, ‘Ilmiyyah Islāmiyyah Bookshop, Tehran, .۶
Iran –F

Tafsir-i-Abulfutūh Rāzī by Ash-Shaykh Abulfutūh Rāzī, Islamiyyah Bookshop, . ۷
Tehran, Iran, ۱۹۷۳/۱۳۹۳ A.H. –F

Tafsir-i-Rūḥ-ul-Ma‘ānī by al-’Ālūsī al-Baqdādī, Dār-u-Iḥyā’-it-Turāth-il-‘Arabī, . ۸
Beirut, Lebanon ۱۹۸۵/۱۴۰۵ –A

Tafsir – i – al – Manār (Tafsir – ul – Qur’ān – il – Ḥakīm), by Mohammad Rashīd Riḍā, .۹
Dār-ul-Ma‘rifat, Beirut, Lebanon –A

Tafsir-ut-Ṭabarī (Jāmi‘-ul-Bayān fī Tafsir-il-Qur’ān) by Mohammad-ibn-Jarīr at- . ۱۰
Tabarī, Dār-ul-Fikr, Al-Qāhirah, Egypt, ۱۹۸۸/۱۴۰۸ –A

- Nafaḥāt-ur-Raḥmān fī Tafsīr-il-Qur'ān by ash-Shaykh Muhammad an-Nahāwandī, .11
Iran, 1937/1357 –A
- At-Tafsīr-ul-Ḥadīth by Mohammad 'Izzat Darūzat; Dār-u-Ihyā'-il-Kutub . 12
Al-'Arabiyyah, al-Qāhirah, Egypt, 1962/1381 –A
- At-Tebyān fī Tafsīr-il-Qur'ān by Mohammad-ibn-il-Ḥassan Ṭūsī, Dār-u-Ihyā'-it- .13
Turāth Al-'Arabī, Beirut, Lebanon –A
- Ālā'-ur-Raḥmān fī Tafsīr-il-Qur'ān by Muhammad Jawād Albalāqī, Wijdānī' .14
Bookshop, Qum, Iran –A
- Al-Isra'īliyyāt fī-Tafsīr wal Ḥadīth by Dr. Muḥammad Husayn Al-Thahabī, Dār-ul- . 15
Īmān, Damascus, 1985/1405 –A
- Al-Bayān fī Tafsīr-il-Qur'ān by Sayyid Abulqāsim Khuṭī, al-Maṭba'at-ul-'ilmiyyah, . 16
Qum Iran, 1966/1385 –A
- At-Tafsīr wal-Mufassirūn by Muhammad Ḥusayn Al-Thahabī, Dār-ul-Maktab Al- . 17
Ḥadīthah, al Qāhirah, Egypt, 1976/1396 A.H. –A
- Al-Jawāhir fī Tafsīr-il-Qur'ān-il-Karīm, by Ṭanṭāwī Juharī, Mustafā Bāb-il-Halabī . 18
Printing Office, Egypt, 1930/1350 –A
- Fathul-Qadīr by Muhammad-ibn-'Ali al-Shoukānī; 'Ilmul Kutub; Beirut, Lebanon, . 19
1981/1401 –A
- Al-Mabādi'-ul-'Āmmah li Tafsīr-il-Qur'ān by Dr. Muhammad Ḥusain-'Ali-al-Saqīr; . 20
Maktab-ul-A'lām-il-Islāmiyyah, Qum, Iran, 1993/1413 –A
- Tafsīr-ul-Baqawī (Ma'alim-ut-Tanzīl fī Tafsīr wat-Ta'wīl) by Husayn-ibn Mas'ūd al- . 21
Baqawī ash-Shāfi'ī; Dār-ul-Fikr, al-Qāhirah, Egypt 1985/1405 A.H. –A

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

أُدْعُ إِلَى سَبِيلِ رَبِّكَ بِالْحُكْمِ وَالْمَوْعِظَةِ

الْحَسَنَةِ وَجَادِلْهُمْ بِالَّتِي هِيَ أَحْسَنُ إِنَّ رَبَّكَ

هُوَ أَعْلَمُ بِمَنْ ضَلَّ عَنْ سَبِيلِهِ وَهُوَ أَعْلَمُ

بِالْمُهْتَدِينَ

In the Name of Allah, the Beneficent, The Merciful

Invite (all) to the Way of your Lord with wisdom and beautiful exhortation; and debate with them in a way which is the best; surely your Lord knows best who have strayed from His path and knows best who are (rightly) guided

(.Sura Nahl (the Bee), No. ١٦, verse ١٢٥)

p:٥٦٠

About center

In the name of Allah

هَلِيسَتْوَ يَالَّذِيَتَعْلَمُونَ وَالَّذِيَتَلَا يَعْلَمُونَ

?Are those who know equal to those who do not know

al-Zumar: ٩

:Introduction

Ghaemiyeh Computer Research Institute of Isfahan, from ٢٠٠٧, under the authority of Ayatollah Haj SayyedHasanFaqihImami (God blesses his soul), by sincere and daily efforts of university and seminary elites and sophisticated groups began its activities .in religious, cultural and scientific fields

:Manifesto

Ghaemiyeh Computer Research Institute of Isfahan in order to facilitate and accelerate the accessibility of researchers to the books and tools of research, in the field of Islamic science, and regarding the multiplicity and dispersion of active centers in this field and numerous and inaccessible sources by a mere scientific intention and far from any kind of social, political, tribal and personal prejudices and currents, based on performing a project in the shape of (management of produced and published works from all Shia centers) tries to provide a rich and free collection of books and research papers for the experts, and helpful contents and discussions for the educated generation and all classes of people interested in reading, with various formats in the .cyberspace

:Our Goals are

(propagating the culture and teachings of Thaqalayn (Quran and Ahlulbayt p.b.u.t- encouraging the populace particularly the youth in investigating the religious issues- replacing useful contents with useless ones in the cellphones, tablets and computers- providing services for seminary and university researchers- spreading culture study in the public-

paving the way for the publications and authors to digitize their works–

:Policies

acting according to the legal licenses–

relationship with similar centers–

avoiding parallel working–

merely presenting scientific contents–

mentioning the sources–

.It's obvious that all the responsibilities are due to the author

:Other activities of the institute

Publication of books, booklets and other editions–

Holding book reading competitions–

Producing virtual, three dimensional exhibitions, panoramas of religious and tourism–
places

.Producing animations, computer games and etc–

Launching the website with this address: www.ghaemiyeh.com–

Fabricating dramatic and speech works–

Launching the system of answering religious, ethical and doctrinal questions–

Designing systems of accounting, media and mobile, automatic and handy systems,–
web kiosks

Holding virtual educational courses for the public–

Holding virtual teacher–training courses–

Producing thousands of research software in three languages (Persian, Arabic and–
English) which can be performed in computers, tablets and cellphones and available
and downloadable with eight international formats: JAVA, ANDROID, EPUB, CHM, PDF,
HTML, CHM, GHB on the website

Also producing four markets named “Ghaemiyeh Book Market” with Android, IOS,–
WINDOWS PHONE and WINDOWS editions

:Appreciation

We would appreciate the centers, institutes, publications, authors and all honorable
.friends who contributed their help and data to us to reach the holy goal we follow

:Address of the central office

Isfahan, Abdorazaq St, Haj Mohammad JafarAbadei Alley, Shahid Mohammad
HasanTavakkoly Alley, Number plate ۱۲۹, first floor

Website: www.ghbook.ir

Email: Info@ghbook.ir

Central office Tel: ۰۳۱۳۴۴۹۰۱۲۵

۰۲۱ - Tehran Tel: ۸۸۳۱۸۷۲۲

Commerce and sale: ۰۹۱۳۲۰۰۰۱۰۹

Users' affairs: ۰۹۱۳۲۰۰۰۱۰۹

Introduction of the Center – Ghaemiyeh Digital Library

Center of Computer

Researches



Ghaemiyeh

Isfahan



For Getting Other Professional Libraries,
refer to the Center Address Please:

www.Ghaemiyeh.com

www.Ghaemiyeh.net

www.Ghaemiyeh.org

www.Ghaemiyeh.ir

For Order, Connect us:

0913 2000 109

